

TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

# COMMUNITY CENTER RENOVATION AND ADDITION

FOR



**Sidock Group, Inc.**

ENGINEERS • ARCHITECTS • CONSULTANTS • PROJECT MANAGERS

**T A B L E O F C O N T E N T S****DIVISION 0**

|        |                           |
|--------|---------------------------|
| 000001 | Title Sheet               |
| 000003 | Table of Contents         |
| 000004 | List of Drawings          |
| 001113 | Advertisement for Bids    |
| 002113 | Instructions to Bidders   |
| 004113 | Bid Form – Stipulated Sum |
| 004313 | Bid Security Forms        |
| 006000 | Project Forms             |

**DIVISION 1 - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

|        |                                            |
|--------|--------------------------------------------|
| 011000 | Summary of Work                            |
| 012500 | Substitution Procedures                    |
| 012600 | Contract Modification Procedures           |
| 012900 | Payment Procedures                         |
| 013100 | Project Management and Coordination        |
| 013200 | Construction Progress Documentation        |
| 013300 | Submittal Procedures                       |
| 014000 | Quality Requirements                       |
| 014200 | References                                 |
| 015000 | Temporary Facilities and Controls          |
| 016000 | Product Requirements                       |
| 017300 | Execution                                  |
| 017419 | Construction Waste Management and Disposal |
| 017700 | Closeout Procedures                        |
| 017823 | Operation and Maintenance Data             |
| 017839 | Project Record Documents                   |
| 017900 | Demonstration and Training                 |

**DIVISION 2 – EXISTING CONDITIONS**

|        |                      |
|--------|----------------------|
| 024119 | Selective Demolition |
|--------|----------------------|

**DIVISION 4 - MASONRY**

|        |                |
|--------|----------------|
| 042000 | Unit Masonry   |
| 047300 | Cultured Stone |

**DIVISION 5 - METALS**

Not Used

**DIVISION 6 – WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES**

|        |                 |
|--------|-----------------|
| 061000 | Rough Carpentry |
|--------|-----------------|

|        |                                              |
|--------|----------------------------------------------|
| 064116 | Plastic Laminate-Clad Architectural Cabinets |
| 066100 | Solid Surface Fabrications                   |

**DIVISION 7 - THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION**

|        |                                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------|
| 072100 | Thermal Insulation                              |
| 072600 | Vapor Retarders                                 |
| 074113 | Standing Seam Metal Roof Panels                 |
| 074293 | Soffit Panels                                   |
| 074646 | Fiber Cement Siding                             |
| 075323 | Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing |
| 076200 | Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim                   |
| 077200 | Roof Accessories                                |
| 079200 | Joint Sealants                                  |

**DIVISION 8 - OPENINGS**

|        |                                               |
|--------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 081113 | Hollow Metal Doors and Frames                 |
| 081416 | Flush Wood Doors                              |
| 084113 | Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts     |
| 085113 | Aluminum Windows                              |
| 087100 | Door Hardware                                 |
| 088000 | Glazing                                       |
| 088856 | Ballistic Resistance Glazing (Alternate No 1) |

**DIVISION 9 - FINISHES**

|        |                                |
|--------|--------------------------------|
| 092216 | Non-Structural Metal Framing   |
| 092900 | Gypsum Board                   |
| 093013 | Ceramic Tiling                 |
| 095113 | Acoustic Tile Ceilings         |
| 096513 | Resilient Base and Accessories |
| 096519 | Resilient Tile Flooring        |
| 096813 | Tile Carpeting                 |
| 099113 | Exterior Painting              |
| 099123 | Interior Painting              |

**DIVISION 10 - SPECIALTIES**

|           |                                      |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|
| 101423    | Room Identification Panel Signage    |
| 102113.19 | Plastic Toilet Compartments          |
| 102239    | Folding Panel Partitions             |
| 102600    | Wall and Door Protection             |
| 102800    | Toilet, Bath and Laundry Accessories |
| 104413    | Fire Protection Cabinets             |
| 104416    | Fire Extinguishers                   |

**DIVISION 11 - EQUIPMENT**

Not Used

**DIVISION 12 - FURNISHINGS**

Not Used

**DIVISION 21 FIRE SUPPRESSION**

|        |                                                          |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 210517 | Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression            |
| 210518 | Escutcheons for Fire Suppression Piping                  |
| 210553 | Identification for Fire Suppression Piping and Equipment |
| 211313 | Wet Pipe Sprinkler Systems                               |

**DIVISION 22 PLUMBING**

|           |                                                        |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| 220517    | Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping           |
| 220518    | Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping                        |
| 220519    | Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping                   |
| 220523    | General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping                |
| 220529    | Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment |
| 220553    | Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment       |
| 220719    | Plumbing Insulation                                    |
| 221116    | Domestic Water Piping                                  |
| 221119    | Domestic Water Piping Specialties                      |
| 221316    | Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping                         |
| 221319    | Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties                      |
| 221323    | Sanitary Waste Interceptors                            |
| 221413    | Facility Storm Drainage Piping                         |
| 221423    | Storm Drainage Piping Specialties                      |
| 224213.13 | Commercial Water Closets                               |
| 224213.16 | Commercial Urinals                                     |
| 224216.13 | Commercial Lavatories                                  |
| 224216.16 | Commercial Sinks                                       |
| 226313    | Natural Gas Piping Systems                             |

**DIVISION 23 HEATING, VENTILATION AND AIR CONDITIONING**

|        |                                                       |
|--------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 230500 | Basic Mechanical Materials and Methods                |
| 230501 | Motors                                                |
| 230553 | Mechanical Identification                             |
| 230593 | Testing, Adjusting and Balancing                      |
| 230700 | Mechanical Insulation                                 |
| 233113 | Metal Ducts                                           |
| 233300 | Duct Accessories                                      |
| 233416 | Centrifugal Fans                                      |
| 233713 | Diffusers, Registers and Grilles                      |
| 237413 | Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units |

**DIVISION 26 ELECTRICAL AND LIGHTING**

|        |                                                              |
|--------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| 260519 | Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables           |
| 260523 | Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables                      |
| 260526 | Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems                 |
| 260529 | Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems                  |
| 260533 | Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems                    |
| 260543 | Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems        |
| 260544 | Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling |
| 260553 | Identification for Electrical Systems                        |
| 260923 | Lighting Control Devices                                     |
| 262416 | Panelboards                                                  |
| 262726 | Wiring Devices                                               |
| 262813 | Fuses                                                        |
| 262816 | Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers                       |
| 265119 | LED Interior Lighting                                        |
| 265213 | Emergency and Exit Lighting                                  |
| 265619 | LED Exterior Lighting                                        |

END OF SECTION 00003

LIST OF DRAWINGS

**COMMUNITY CENTER RENOVATION AND ADDITION**

**GENERAL**

CS-001 COVER SHEET / SHEET INDEX / PROJECT LOCATION

CS-002 ABBREVIATIONS / SYMBOLS / MOUNTING HEIGHTS

LS-100 LIFE SAFETY PLAN

PH-100 PHASE PLAN

**CIVIL**

C-100 EXISTING TOPOGRAPHY PLAN

**ARCHITECTURE**

AS-100 ARCHITECTURAL SITE PLAN - DEMOLITION

AS-101 ARCHITECTURAL SITE PLAN – NEW WORK

L-100 LANDSCAPE PLAN

AD-110 DEMOLITION ARCHITECTURAL FLOOR PLAN

AD-120 DEMOLITION ROOF PLAN

AD-130 DEMOLITION EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS

A-110 FLOOR PLAN – NEW WORK

A-111 ENLARGED FLOOR PLAN

A-120 COMPOSITE ROOF PLAN

A-121 ROOF DETAILS

A-200 EXTERIOR ELEVATIONS – NEW WORK

A-300 ENLARGED PLAN DETAILS

A-400 INTERIOR ELEVATIONS

A-401 MILLWORK DETAILS

A-510 OVERALL REFLECTED CEILING PLAN

A-600 BUILDING SECTIONS

A-700 WALL SECTIONS

A-701 WALL SECTIONS

A-702 WALL SECTIONS

A-703 WALL SECTIONS

A-704 SECTION DETAILS

A-900 DOOR FINISH SCHEDULE

A-901 ROOM FINISH SCHEDULE

A-902 DOOR AND WINDOW DETAILS

A-903 OVERALL FLOOR FINISH PLAN

## **STRUCTURAL**

S-000 STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES

S-001 STRUCTURAL GENERAL NOTES

S-110 OVERALL STRUCTURAL DEMOLITION PLAN

S-201 PARTIAL FOUNDATION PLAN

S-211 PARTIAL FRAMING PLAN

S-801 STRUCTURAL DETAILS

S-802 STRUCTURAL DETAILS

S-803 STRUCTURAL DETAILS

S-804 STRUCTURAL DETAILS

S-805 STRUCTURAL DETAILS

## **MECHANICAL**

MD-110 MECHANICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN

M-200 MECHANICAL FLOOR PLAN

List of Drawings

00004-2

M-210 MECHANICAL ROOF PLAN

M-900 MECHANICAL SCHEDULES

**PLUMBING & PIPING**

P-200 PLUMBING & PIPING FLOOR PLAN

**ELECTRICAL**

ED-100 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION FLOOR PLAN

ED-101 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION ROOF PLAN

ED-600 ELECTRICAL DEMOLITION ONE-LINE DIAGRAM

EL-200 ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FLOOR PLAN

EL-600 ELECTRICAL LIGHTING FIXTURE SCHEDULE AND SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS

EP-200 ELECTRICAL POWER AND AUXILIARY SYSTEMS FLOOR PLAN

EP-201 ELECTRICAL POWER ROOF PLAN

EP-600 ELECTRICAL ONE-LINE DIAGRAM

EP-601 ELECTRICAL PANEL SCHEDULES



## DOCUMENT 001113 - ADVERTISEMENT FOR BIDS

1. Sealed Bids for the Brownstown Charter Township Community Center Renovation and Addition for Brownstown Michigan will be received by Brownstown City Clerk, 21313 Telegraph Rd, Brownstown Twp, MI 48313, 2:00 pm local time, on Friday, January 31, 2024. Deliveries after the cut-off time will not be accepted. Bids will be privately opened.
2. The principal items of work consist of the following: Renovation and addition to the Brownstown Community Center, including associated site work.
3. Bidders may contact Trenton Printing Inc. at (734) 675-3255 to purchase sets. Bid Documents will be available on the following plan room sites:
  - Builders Exchange of Michigan, [www.grbx.com](http://www.grbx.com)
  - Construction Association of Michigan, <https://buildwithcam.com>
  - MITN Purchasing Group, [www.bidnetdirect.com](http://www.bidnetdirect.com)
4. There is a pre-bid walk-through scheduled for 10 a.m., Tuesday January 14, 2025.
5. Questions will be accepted until 5:00 pm, Tuesday, January 21, 2025, and should be directed IN WRITING to Kim Nye at Sidock Group, Inc. email: [knye@sidockgroup.com](mailto:knye@sidockgroup.com).
6. The intent of the Owner is to award one (1) Contract for the entire project.
7. Proposals must be accompanied by a bid guarantee which may be in the form of cash or a cashier's check in an amount not less than 5% of the bid, payable to "Brownstown Charter Township," or an approved Performance Bond or Bid Bond for not less than 5% of the bid.
8. Bids shall remain firm and shall not be withdrawn for a period of ninety (90) calendar days after bid opening.
9. Brownstown Charter Township reserves the right to accept, reject or negotiate any or all bids to waive or not waive informalities or irregularities in the bids or bidding procedures and to accept any bid determined by the Owner to be in the best interest of the Owner, regardless of price.

END OF DOCUMENT 001113

## 002113 - INSTRUCTIONS TO BIDDERS

### 1.1 GENERAL

A. Sealed Proposals will be received from Contractors for:

1. #24361.A “BROWNSTOWN CHARTER TOWNSHIP COMMUNITY CENTER RENOVATION AND ADDITION” in accordance with these Instructions.

B. Proposals shall be submitted in a sealed opaque envelope bearing the name of the Bidder and the name of the Project. Submit in duplicate on Proposal Forms provided. Envelopes shall be addressed and labeled as follows:

- 1 Addressed as follows: Brownstown Charter Township Clerk Department 21313 Telegraph Road Brownstown, Michigan 48183
- 2 Labeled as follows: “SEALED BID – BROWNSTOWN CHARTER TOWNSHIP COMMUNITY CENTER RENOVATION AND ADDITION.”

C. No oral, telephone, or telegraphic proposals will be considered. Proposals shall be signed by the Bidder, giving business address and stating whether an individual, partnership, or corporation. If the latter, under the laws of what state.

D. Proposals must be accompanied by a bid guarantee which may be in the form of cash or a cashier’s check in an amount not less than 5% of the bid, payable to “Brownstown Charter Township” or an approved Bid Bond for not less than 5% of the bid.

E. The successful bidder will be required to submit Labor and Material Performance and Payment Bond in accordance with Division 1 requirements.

### 1.2 BIDDER’S REPRESENTATIONS

A. By submitting a Proposal for this Work, the Bidder represents that:

- 1 The Bidder has read and understands the Bidding Documents to the extent that they relate to the Work for which the Bid is submitted.
- 2 The Bid is made in compliance with the Bidding Documents.
- 3 The Bidder has visited the site and has become familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed.
- 4 The Bid is based on the materials, equipment and systems proposed by the Bidding Documents, as specified and detailed therein.

### 1.3 BIDDING DOCUMENTS

#### A. Copies Furnished:

- 1 Bidders may obtain Bidding Documents from the resources designated in the Advertisement for Bids, in the quantity and for purchase as stipulated therein.
- 2 Bidders are encouraged to use complete sets of Bidding Documents in preparing Bids; neither the Owner nor Architect assume responsibility for errors or misinterpretations resulting from the use of incomplete sets of Bidding Documents.
- 3 The Owner and Architect are making copies of the Bidding Documents available on the above terms for the purpose of obtaining Bids on the Work. No license or grant of use is conferred by issuance of copies of the Bidding Documents.

#### B. Interpretation of Contract Documents:

- 1 Should the Bidder find discrepancies in, or omission from, the Drawings or Construction Documents or should he be in doubt as to their meaning, he shall at once notify the Architect who will send written instructions in the form of Addenda to all bidders. Notification shall be no later than seven (7) days prior to the date set for receipt of bids. Neither the Owner nor the Architect will be responsible for any oral instructions.
- 2 Any Addenda to Specifications issued during the time of bidding are to be considered covered in the Proposal and in closing a contract they will become a part thereof. It shall be the Bidder's responsibility to ascertain prior to bid time the Addenda issued and to see that his bid includes any changes thereby required.
- 3 All Addenda shall be acknowledged by the Bidder(s) on the Form of Proposal. However, even if not acknowledged, by submitting a bid, the Bidder has certified that he has reviewed all issued Addenda and has included all costs associated within the bid.

#### C. Substitutions:

- 1 The materials, products and equipment described in the Bidding Documents establish a standard of required function, dimension, appearance and quality to be met by any proposed substitutions.
- 2 No substitution will be considered prior to receipt of Bids unless written request for approval has been received by the Architect at least ten (10) days prior to the date for receipt of Bids. Such requests shall include the name of the material or equipment for which it is to be substituted and a complete description of the proposed substitution including drawings, performance and test data, and other information necessary for an evaluation. A statement setting forth changes in other materials, equipment or other portions of the Work, including changes in the work or other contracts that incorporation of the proposed substitution would require, shall be included. The burden of proof of the merit of the proposed substitution is upon the proposer. The Architect's decision of approval or disapproval of a proposed substitution shall be final.
- 3 If the Architect approves a proposed substitution prior to receipt of Bids, such approval will be set forth in an Addendum. Bidders shall not rely upon approvals made in any other manner.
- 4 No substitutions will be considered after the Contract award unless specifically provided for in the Contract Documents.

#### D. Addenda:

- 1 Addenda will be transmitted to all who are known by the issuing office to have received a complete set of Bidding Documents.
- 2 Copies of Addenda will be made available for inspection wherever Bidding Documents are on file for that purpose.
- 3 Addenda will be issued no later than four days prior to the date for receipt of Bids except an Addendum withdrawing the request for Bids or one which includes postponement of the Bid due date.
- 4 Each Bidder will be responsible to verify that they have received all Addenda and shall acknowledge same in their Bid.

#### 1.4 REQUIREMENTS FOR SIGNING BIDS

- A. Bids which are not signed by individuals making them shall have attached thereto a Power of Attorney evidencing authority to sign the bid in the name of the person for whom it was signed. Bids which are signed for a partnership should be signed by all of the partners or by an Attorney-in-Fact. If signed by an Attorney-in-Fact, there should be attached to the Bid a Power of Attorney evidencing authority to sign the bid, executed by the partners. Bids which are signed for a corporation should have the correct corporate name thereof and the signature of the president or other authorized officer of the corporation manually written below the corporate name following the word "by", together with the stamp of the corporate seal. If such a bid is manually signed by an official other than the president of the corporation, a certified copy of the resolution of the Board of Directors evidencing the authority of such official to sign the bid should be attached to it. Such bid should also bear the attesting signature of the secretary of the corporation and the impression of the corporate seal.

#### 1.5 WHEN THE AWARD IS EFFECTUAL

- A. The Contract shall be deemed as having been awarded when formal Notice of Award shall have been duly served upon the intended awardee, i.e., the Bidder to whom the Owner contemplates awarding the Contract, by some officer or agent of the Owner duly authorized to give such notice.

#### 1.6 NUMBER OF COUNTERPARTS OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. There will be required three (3) executed counterparts of the Contract Documents, including Drawings, Specifications and Contracts.

#### 1.7 WITHDRAWAL OF BIDS

- A. Any Bidder may withdraw his bid at any time prior to the scheduled time for the receipt of bids. No bid may be withdrawn after the scheduled closing time for receipt of bids for at least ninety (90) days. The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all bids and waive any informalities when in the best interests of the Owner it is deemed advisable.

#### 1.8 TIME SCHEDULE

- A. Bids are due Friday, January, 31, 2025 at 2:00 pm  
B. Contract Commencement is within ten (10) days after the Contract is signed by all parties.  
C. Construction must be substantially complete no later than the schedule set on the Proposal Form.

END OF SECTION

DOCUMENT 004113 - BID FORM

1.1 BID INFORMATION

- A. Bidder: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. Project Name: Brownstown Charter Township Community Center Renovation and Addition.
- C. Project Location: Brownstown, Michigan.
- D. Owner: Brownstown Charter Township.
- E. Architect: Sidock Group, Inc..
- F. Architect Project Number: 24361.A.

1.2 CERTIFICATIONS AND BASE BID

- A. Base Bid, Single-Prime (All Trades) Contract: The undersigned Bidder, having carefully examined the Procurement and Contracting Requirements, Conditions of the Contract, Drawings, Specifications, and all subsequent Addenda, as prepared by Sidock Group, Inc. and Architect's consultants, having visited the site, and being familiar with all conditions and requirements of the Work, hereby agrees to furnish all material, labor, equipment and services, including all scheduled allowances, necessary to complete the construction of the above-named project, according to the requirements of the Procurement and Contracting Documents, for the stipulated sum of:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars

(\$\_\_\_\_\_).

1.3 BID GUARANTEE

- A. The undersigned Bidder agrees to execute a contract for this Work in the above amount and to furnish surety as specified within 10 days after a written Notice of Award, if offered within 90 days after receipt of bids, and on failure to do so agrees to forfeit to Owner the attached cash, cashier's check, certified check, U.S. money order, or bid bond, as liquidated damages for such failure, in the following amount constituting five percent (5%) of the Base Bid amount above:

\_\_\_\_\_ Dollars

(\$\_\_\_\_\_).

- B. In the event Owner does not offer Notice of Award within the time limits stated above, Owner will return the bid guarantee to the undersigned.

#### ITEMIZED BID BREAKDOWN

- A. The undersigned Bidder hereby submits the following cost breakdown by Division. These values shall be submitted for informational and bid comparison purposes. Upon notification of being one of the Low Bidders for further consideration, a formal Schedule of Values will be requested which will be used in part for the evaluation of Application for Contract Payments. General Contract bidders shall request that their proposed subcontractors itemize their respective bids to clearly illustrate the following Division of Bid:

| DIVISION                                            | COST BREAKDOWN    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 General Requirements                              | \$ _____          |
| 2 Existing Conditions                               | \$ _____          |
| 3 Concrete                                          | \$ _____          |
| 4 Masonry                                           | \$ _____          |
| 5 Metals                                            | \$ _____          |
| 6 Woods, Plastics, and Composites                   | \$ _____          |
| 7 Thermal and Moisture Protection                   | \$ _____          |
| 8 Openings                                          | \$ _____          |
| 9 Finishes                                          | \$ _____          |
| 10 Specialties                                      | \$ _____          |
| 11 Equipment                                        | \$ _____          |
| 12 Furnishings                                      | \$ _____          |
| 13 Special Construction                             | \$ _____          |
| 14 Conveying Equipment                              | \$ _____          |
| 21 Fire Suppression                                 | \$ _____          |
| 22 Plumbing                                         | \$ _____          |
| 23 Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning (HVAC) | \$ _____          |
| 26 Electrical                                       | \$ _____          |
| 27 Communications                                   | \$ _____          |
| 28 Electronic Safety and Security                   | \$ _____          |
| 31 Earthwork                                        | \$ _____          |
| 32 Exterior Improvements                            | \$ _____          |
| 33 Utilities                                        | \$ _____          |
|                                                     | Subtotal \$ _____ |

Contingency/OH&P \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
TOTAL STIPULATED SUM BASE BID \$ \_\_\_\_\_ \*

\* must match Base Bid Amount shown Article 1.2, A.

Alternate No. 1 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Alternate No. 2 \$ \_\_\_\_\_

#### 1.5 SUBCONTRACTORS AND SUPPLIERS

A. The following companies shall execute subcontracts for the portions of the Work indicated:

- 1 Concrete Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Masonry Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Roofing Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Plumbing Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 HVAC Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Electrical Work: \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 Earth Work: \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 1.6 TIME OF COMPLETION

A. The undersigned Bidder proposes and agrees hereby to commence the Work of the Contract Documents on a date specified in a written Notice to Proceed to be issued by Architect, and shall fully complete the Work within \_\_\_\_\_ calendar days.

#### 1.7 ACKNOWLEDGEMENT OF ADDENDA

A. The undersigned Bidder acknowledges receipt of and use of the following Addenda in the preparation of this Bid:

- 1 Addendum No. 1, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Addendum No. 2, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Addendum No. 3, dated \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 Addendum No. 4, dated \_\_\_\_\_.

#### 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S LICENSE

A. The undersigned further states that it is a duly licensed contractor, for the type of work proposed, in the State of Michigan, and that all fees, permits, etc., pursuant to submitting this proposal have been paid in full.

SUBMISSION OF BID

A. Respectfully submitted this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 2025.

B. Submitted By: \_\_\_\_\_(Name of bidding firm or corporation).

C. Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_(Handwritten signature).

D. Signed By: \_\_\_\_\_(Type or print name).

E. Title: \_\_\_\_\_(Owner/Partner/President/Vice President).

F. Witness By: \_\_\_\_\_(Handwritten signature).

G. Attest: \_\_\_\_\_(Handwritten signature).

H. By: \_\_\_\_\_(Type or print name).

I. Title: \_\_\_\_\_(Corporate Secretary or Assistant Secretary).

J. Street Address: \_\_\_\_\_.

K. City, State, Zip: \_\_\_\_\_.

L. Phone: \_\_\_\_\_.

M. License No.: \_\_\_\_\_.

N. Federal ID No.: \_\_\_\_\_(Affix Corporate Seal Here).

END OF DOCUMENT 004113



DOCUMENT 004313 - BID SECURITY FORMS

1.1 BID FORM SUPPLEMENT

- A. A completed bid bond form is required to be attached to the Bid Form.

1.2 BID BOND FORM

- A. AIA Document A310, "Bid Bond," is the recommended form for a bid bond. A bid bond acceptable to Owner, or other bid security as described in the Instructions to Bidders, is required to be attached to the Bid Form as a supplement.
- B. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from The American Institute of Architects; [www.aia.org/contractdocs/purchase/index.htm](http://www.aia.org/contractdocs/purchase/index.htm); email: [docspurchases@aia.org](mailto:docspurchases@aia.org); (800) 942-7732.

END OF DOCUMENT 004313

DOCUMENT 006000 - PROJECT FORMS

1.1 FORM OF AGREEMENT AND GENERAL CONDITIONS

- A. The following form of Owner/Contractor Agreement and form of the General Conditions shall be used for Project:

1. AIA Document A101, "Standard Form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor, Stipulated Sum."

- a. The General Conditions for Project are AIA Document A201, "General Conditions of the Contract for Construction."

1.2 ADMINISTRATIVE FORMS

- A. Administrative Forms: Additional administrative forms are specified in Division 01 General Requirements.

- B. Copies of AIA standard forms may be obtained from the American Institute of Architects; <http://www.aia.org/contractdocs/purchase/index.htm>; [docspurchases@aia.org](mailto:docspurchases@aia.org); (800) 942-7732.

- C. Preconstruction Forms:

1. Form of Performance Bond and Labor and Material Bond: AIA Document A312, "Performance Bond and Payment Bond."
2. Form of Certificate of Insurance: AIA Document G715, "Supplemental Attachment for ACORD Certificate of Insurance 25-S."

- D. Information and Modification Forms:

1. Change Order Form: AIA Document G701, "Change Order."
2. Form of Change Directive: AIA Document G714, "Construction Change Directive."

- E. Payment Forms:

1. Schedule of Values Form: AIA Document G703, "Continuation Sheet."
2. Payment Application: AIA Document G702/703, "Application and Certificate for Payment and Continuation Sheet."
3. Form of Consent of Surety: AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."

END OF DOCUMENT 006000

## SECTION 011000 - SUMMARY

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1 Project information.
  - 2 Work covered by Contract Documents.
  - 3 Work under separate contracts.
  - 4 Owner-furnished products.
  - 5 Access to site.
  - 6 Specification and Drawing conventions.
  - 7 Miscellaneous provisions.

## 1.3 PROJECT INFORMATION

- A. Project Identification: Northland Area Federal Credit Union Headquarters Facility.
  - 1. Project Location: Brownstown Community Center, 21311 Telegraph Road, Brownstown MI, 48183
- B. Owner mailing address: 21313 Telegraph Road, Brownstown Township Michigan, 48183. Attn: Sue Trussell
- C. Architect: Sidock Group, Inc.,, Novi, Michigan, 48193.
  - 1. Architect's Representative: Kimberly Nye, Project Lead. Kim can be reached by email at knye@sidockgroup.com.

## 1.4 WORK COVERED BY CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

- A. The Work of Project is defined by the Contract Documents and consists of the following:
  - 1. The work includes renovation of, and addition to, existing 14,573 sf (approximately), 1-story facility. Renovation entails 11,249 sf with nearly 3,640 sf of new construction. The work includes sitework, structural, utilities and MEP systems to support approximately 16,796 square feet of enclosed space, and other Work indicated in the Contract Documents.
- B. Type of Contract:
  - 1. Project will be constructed under a single prime contract.

## 1.5 WORK UNDER SEPARATE CONTRACTS

- A. General: Cooperate fully with separate contractors so work on those contracts may be carried out smoothly, without interfering with or delaying Work under this Contract or other contracts. Coordinate the Work of this Contract with work performed under separate contracts.

- B. Concurrent Work: Owner has awarded separate contract(s) for the following construction operations at Project site. Those operations will be conducted simultaneously with work under this Contract.

- 1. Security Systems: To Security Corp. to furnish and install security and monitoring equipment. To the extent possible, ceiling mounted devices have been coordinated with other Work in the Contract. Where discrepancies are found, or where devices are found to be co-located, contractor shall submit a proposed solution to the Architect for review and acceptance prior to installation.

#### 1.6 OWNER-FURNISHED PRODUCTS

- A. Owner will furnish products indicated. The Work includes receiving, unloading, handling, storing, protecting, and installing Owner-furnished products and making building services connections.
- B. Owner-Furnished Products: NA

#### 1.7 ACCESS TO SITE

- A. General: Contractor shall have full use of Project site for construction operations during construction period. Contractor's use of Project site is limited only by Owner's right to perform work or to retain other contractors on portions of Project.
- B. Condition of Existing Grounds: Maintain portions of existing grounds, landscaping, and hardscaping affected by construction operations throughout construction period. Repair damage caused by construction operations.

#### 1.8 WORK RESTRICTIONS

- A. Work Restrictions, General: Comply with restrictions on construction operations.
  - 1. Comply with limitations on use of public streets and with other requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.9 SPECIFICATION AND DRAWING CONVENTIONS

- A. Specification Content: The Specifications use certain conventions for the style of language and the intended meaning of certain terms, words, and phrases when used in particular situations. These conventions are as follows:
  - 1 Imperative mood and streamlined language are generally used in the Specifications. The words "shall," "shall be," or "shall comply with," depending on the context, are implied where a colon (:) is used within a sentence or phrase.
  - 2 Specification requirements are to be performed by Contractor unless specifically stated otherwise.
- B. Division 01 General Requirements: Requirements of Sections in Division 01 apply to the Work of all Sections in the Specifications.
- C. Drawing Coordination: Requirements for materials and products identified on Drawings are described in detail in the Specifications. One or more of the following are used on Drawings to identify materials and products:
  - 1. Terminology: Materials and products are identified by the typical generic terms used in the individual Specifications Sections.
  - 2. Abbreviations: Materials and products are identified by abbreviations published as part of the U.S. National CAD Standard and scheduled on Drawings.

3. Keynoting: Materials and products are identified by reference keynotes referencing Specification Section numbers found in this Project Manual.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 011000

## SECTION 012500 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2 Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3 Section 016000 "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1 Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2 Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor or Owner.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit three copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Substitution Request Form: Use facsimile of form provided in Project Manual.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation method cannot be provided, if applicable.
    - b. Coordination of information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
    - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitutions with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes, such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
    - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
    - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.

- f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
    - g. List of similar installations for completed projects, with project names and addresses as well as names and addresses of architects and owners.
    - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency, indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
    - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from ICC-ES.
    - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitutions with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
    - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
    - l. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents, except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials and is appropriate for applications indicated.
    - m. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.
  - 3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.
- 1.6 PROCEDURES
- A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.
- 1.7 SUBSTITUTIONS
- A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.
    - 1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
      - a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
      - b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
      - c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
      - d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.

- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within 60 days after commencement of the Work. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect.
1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
  - b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
  - c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
  - d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
  - e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
  - f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  - h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
  - i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
  - j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012500



## SECTION 012600 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling requests for substitutions made after the Contract award.

#### 1.3 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

- A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time in writing.

#### 1.4 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

- A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.
  - 1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
  - 2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    - a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    - b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    - c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    - d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
    - e. Quotation Form: Use forms acceptable to Architect.

B. Contractor-Initiated Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

- 1 Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
- 2 Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
- 3 Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
- 4 Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
- 5 Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
- 6 Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.
- 7 Proposal Request Form: Use form acceptable to Architect.

#### 1.5 ADMINISTRATIVE CHANGE ORDERS

A. Allowance Adjustment: See Section 012100 "Allowances" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect actual costs of allowances.

B. Unit-Price Adjustment: See Section 012200 "Unit Prices" for administrative procedures for preparation of Change Order Proposal for adjusting the Contract Sum to reflect measured scope of unit-price work.

#### 1.6 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Work Change Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012600

## SECTION 012900 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 012100 "Allowances" for procedural requirements governing the handling and processing of allowances.
  - 2 Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures" for administrative procedures for handling changes to the Contract.
  - 3 Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for administrative requirements governing the preparation and submittal of the Contractor's construction schedule.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Schedule of Values: A statement furnished by Contractor allocating portions of the Contract Sum to various portions of the Work and used as the basis for reviewing Contractor's Applications for Payment.

## 1.4 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 1 Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2 Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date, but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.
- B. Format and Content: Use Project Manual table of contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.
  - 1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:
    - a. Project name and location.
    - b. Name of Architect.
    - c. Architect's Project number.
    - d. Contractor's name and address.
    - e. Date of submittal.
  - 2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703.
  - 3. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.
  - 4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.

## a. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.

5. Allowances: Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each allowance. Show line-item value of unit-cost allowances, as a product of the unit cost, multiplied by measured quantity. Use information indicated in the Contract Documents to determine quantities.
6. Overhead Costs: Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each line item.
7. Schedule of Values Revisions: Revise the schedule of values when Change Orders result in a change in the Contract Sum. Include at least one separate line item for each Change Order.

## 1.5 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

- A. Each Application for Payment following the initial Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.
- B. Payment Application Times: Submit Application for Payment to Architect by the fifteenth of the month. The period covered by each Application for Payment is one month, ending on the last day of the month.
  1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment seven days prior to due date for review by Architect.
- C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as form for Applications for Payment.
- D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.
  1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
  2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
  3. Include amounts of Change Orders issued before last day of construction period covered by application.
  4. Indicate separate amounts for work being carried out under Owner-requested project acceleration.
- E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.
  1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment for stored materials.
  2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
  3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    - a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applications for Payment.
    - b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    - c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.
- F. Transmittal: Submit three signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 48 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar

attachments if required.

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.
- G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: With each Application for Payment, submit waivers of mechanic's lien from subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, and suppliers for construction period covered by the previous application.
- 1 Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
  - 2 When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full waivers.
  - 3 Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
  - 4 Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
  - 5 Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.
- H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:
- 1 List of subcontractors.
  - 2 Schedule of values.
  - 3 Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
  4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
  5. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
  6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
  7. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
  8. Copies of building permits.
  9. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
  10. Initial progress report.
  11. Report of preconstruction conference.
  12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies, if not already provided.
  13. Performance and payment bonds, if not already provided.
  14. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance, if not already provided.
- I. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.
- 1 Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 2 This application shall reflect Certificate(s) of Substantial Completion issued previously for Owner occupancy of designated portions of the Work.
- J. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:
- 1 Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
  - 2 Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
  - 3 Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
  - 4 Consent of Surety to Final Payment.

- 5 Evidence that claims have been settled.
- 6 Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
- 7 Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 012900

## SECTION 013100 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1 General coordination procedures.
  - 2 Coordination drawings.
  - 3 RFIs.
  - 4 Digital project management procedures.
  - 5 Project meetings.
- B. Each contractor shall participate in coordination requirements. Certain areas of responsibility are assigned to a specific contractor.
- C. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2 Section 017300 "Execution" for procedures for coordinating general installation and field-engineering services, including establishment of benchmarks and control points.
  - 3 Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BIM: Building Information Modeling.
- B. RFI: Request for Information. Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information required by or clarifications of the Contract Documents.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1 Name, address, telephone number, and email address of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  - 2 Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  - 3 Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
- B. Key Personnel Names: Within 15 days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.

1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and in prominent location in built facility. Keep list current at all times.

## 1.5 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1 Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2 Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3 Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Coordination: Each contractor shall coordinate its construction operations with those of other contractors and entities to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Each contractor shall coordinate its own operations with operations included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1 Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2 Coordinate installation of different components with other contractors to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3 Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- C. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.
  1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.
- D. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1 Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2 Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3 Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4 Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5 Progress meetings.
  - 6 Preinstallation conferences.
  - 7 Project closeout activities.
  - 8 Startup and adjustment of systems.

## 1.6 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

- A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in individual Sections, and additionally where installation is not completely indicated on Shop Drawings, where limited space availability necessitates coordination, or if coordination is required to facilitate integration of products and materials fabricated or installed by more than one entity.
  - 1 Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sections,



- elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
  - b. Coordinate the addition of trade-specific information to coordination drawings in a sequence that best provides for coordination of the information and resolution of conflicts between installed components before submitting for review.
  - c. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
  - d. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
  - e. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
  - f. Indicate required installation sequences.
  - g. Indicate dimensions shown on Drawings. Specifically note dimensions that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternative sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.
- B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:
- 1 Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
  - 2 Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling, raised access floor, and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within plenums to accommodate layout of light fixtures and other components indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
  - 3 Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire-protection, fire-alarm, and electrical equipment.
  - 4 Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
  - 5 Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
  - 6 Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    - a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    - b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    - c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
  - 7 Electrical Work: Show the following:
    - a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) in diameter and larger.
    - b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other fire-alarm locations.
    - c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor-control center locations.
    - d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.
  - 8 Fire-Protection System: Show the following:
    - a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.
  - 9 Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that in general the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make suitable modifications and resubmit.
  - 10 Coordination Drawing Prints: Prepare coordination drawing prints according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."

- C. Coordination Digital Data Files: Prepare coordination digital data files according to the following requirements:
- 1 File Preparation Format: Same digital data software program, version, and operating system as original Drawings.
  - 2 File Submittal Format: Submit or post coordination drawing files using PDF format.

## 1.7 REQUEST FOR INFORMATION (RFI)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information, clarification, or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified.
- 1 Architect will return without response those RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
  - 2 Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
  12. Contractor's signature.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.
- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form with substantially the same content as indicated above, acceptable to Architect.
1. Attachments shall be electronic files in PDF format.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow seven working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
1. The following Contractor-generated RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
    - d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.

- f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
  - g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
- 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt by Architect of additional information.
- 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."
  - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit a tabular log of RFIs organized by the RFI number. Submit log weekly. Include Software log with not less than the following:
  - 1 Project name.
  - 2 Name and address of Contractor.
  - 3 Name and address of Architect.
  - 4 RFI number including RFIs that were returned without action or withdrawn.
  - 5 RFI description.
  - 6 Date the RFI was submitted.
  - 7 Date Architect's response was received.
  - 8 Identification of related Minor Change in the Work and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
  - 9 Identification of related Field Order and Proposal Request, as appropriate.
- F. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

## 1.8 DIGITAL PROJECT MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES

- A. PDF Document Preparation: Where PDFs are required to be submitted to Architect, prepare as follows:
  - 1 Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.
  - 2 Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
  - 3 Certifications: Where digitally submitted certificates and certifications are required, provide a digital signature with digital certificate on where indicated.

## 1.9 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1 Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times a minimum of 10 working days prior to meeting.
  - 2 Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
  - 3 Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record significant discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to everyone concerned, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.
- B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 15 days after execution of the Agreement.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
  - a. Responsibilities and personnel assignments.
  - b. Tentative construction schedule.
  - c. Phasing, if any.
  - d. Critical work sequencing and long lead items.
  - e. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
  - f. Lines of communications.
  - g. Use of web-based Project software.
  - h. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
  - i. Procedures for RFIs.
  - j. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
  - k. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
  - l. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - m. Submittal procedures.
  - n. Preparation of Record Documents.
  - o. Use of the premises.
  - p. Work restrictions.
  - q. Working hours.
  - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
  - t. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
  - u. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
  - v. Construction waste management and recycling.
  - w. Parking availability.
  - x. Office, work, and storage areas.
  - y. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
  - z. First aid. aa. Security. bb. Progress cleaning.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity when required by other sections and when required for coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:
  - a. Contract Documents.
  - b. Options.
  - c. Related RFIs.
  - d. Related Change Orders.
  - e. Purchases.
  - f. Deliveries.
  - g. Submittals.
  - h. Review of mockups.
  - i. Possible conflicts.
  - j. Compatibility requirements.
  - k. Time schedules.
  - l. Weather limitations.
  - m. Manufacturer's written instructions.

- n. Warranty requirements.
- o. Compatibility of materials.
- p. Acceptability of substrates.
- q. Temporary facilities and controls.
- r. Space and access limitations.
- s. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- t. Testing and inspecting requirements.
- u. Installation procedures.
- v. Coordination with other work.
- w. Required performance results.
- x. Protection of adjacent work.
- y. Protection of construction and personnel.

- 3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
- 4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
- 5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner and Architect, but no later than 60 days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.

- 1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
- 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
- 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
  - a. Preparation of Record Documents.
  - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
  - c. Procedures for completing and archiving web-based Project software site data files.
  - d. Submittal of written warranties.
  - e. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
  - f. Requirements for delivery of material samples, attic stock, and spare parts.
  - g. Requirements for demonstration and training.
  - h. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
  - i. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
  - j. Submittal procedures.
  - k. Coordination of separate contracts.
  - l. Owner's partial occupancy requirements.
  - m. Installation of Owner's furniture, fixtures, and equipment.
  - n. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
- 4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes.

E. Progress Meetings: Conduct progress meetings at weekly intervals.

- 1. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
- 2. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

3. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
  - a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
  - b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
    - 1) Review schedule for next period.
    - 1) Interface requirements.
    - 2) Sequence of operations.
    - 3) Resolution of BIM component conflicts.
    - 4) Status of submittals.
    - 5) Deliveries.
    - 6) Off-site fabrication.
    - 7) Access.
    - 8) Site use.
    - 9) Temporary facilities and controls.
    - 10) Progress cleaning.
    - 11) Quality and work standards.
    - 12) Status of correction of deficient items.
    - 13) Field observations.
    - 14) Status of RFIs.
    - 15) Status of Proposal Requests.
    - 16) Pending changes.
    - 17) Status of Change Orders.
    - 18) Pending claims and disputes.
    - 19) Documentation of information for payment requests.
4. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
  - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013100 SECTION

## SECTION 013200 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1 Startup construction schedule.
  - 2 Contractor's Construction Schedule.
  - 3 Construction schedule updating reports.
  - 4 Weekly construction reports.
  - 5 Material location reports.
  - 6 Site condition reports.
  - 7 Unusual event reports.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction Project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
  - 1 Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
  - 2 Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
  - 3 Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1 Working electronic copy of schedule file, where indicated.
  - 2 Two paper copies, of sufficient size to display entire period or schedule, as required.
- B. Startup construction schedule.
  - 1. Submittal of cost-loaded, startup construction schedule will not constitute approval of schedule of values for cost-loaded activities.
- C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
- D. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
- E. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- F. Material Location Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.

- G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
- H. Unusual Event Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Contractor's Construction Schedule with the schedule of values, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
  - 1 Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
  - 2 Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

## 1.6 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

- A. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.
- B. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for commencement of the Work to date of final completion.
  - 1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
- C. Activities: Treat each floor or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
  - 1 Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
  - 2 Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's Construction Schedule with submittal schedule.
  - 3 Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
  - 4 Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days for completion of punch list items and final completion.
- D. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
  - 1. Work by Owner: Include a separate activity for each portion of the Work performed by Owner.
  - 2. Products Ordered in Advance: Include a separate activity for each product. Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  - 3. Owner-Furnished Products: Include a separate activity for each product. Include delivery date. Delivery dates indicated stipulate the earliest possible delivery date.
  - 4. Work Restrictions: Show the effect of the following items on the schedule:
    - a. Seasonal variations.
    - b. Environmental control.
  - 5. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Subcontract awards.
    - b. Submittals.
    - c. Purchases.



- d. Fabrication.
  - e. Sample testing.
  - f. Deliveries.
  - g. Installation.
  - h. Tests and inspections.
  - i. Adjusting.
  - j. Curing.
6. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
- a. Structural completion.
  - b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
  - c. Permanent space enclosure.
  - d. Completion of mechanical installation.
  - e. Completion of electrical installation.
  - f. Substantial Completion.
- E. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and final completion.
- F. Cost Correlation: Superimpose a cost correlation timeline, indicating planned and actual costs. On the line, show planned and actual dollar volume of the Work performed as of planned and actual dates used for preparation of payment requests.
- 1. See Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for cost reporting and payment procedures.
- G. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
- 1 Unresolved issues.
  - 2 Unanswered Requests for Information.
  - 3 Rejected or unreturned submittals.
  - 4 Notations on returned submittals.
  - 5 Pending modifications affecting the Work and the Contract Time.
- H. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At weekly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule at each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
- 1 Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
  - 2 Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
  - 3 As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
- I. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.
- J. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.

- 1 Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.
- 2 When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

## 1.7 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for commencement of the Work.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

## 1.8 GANTT-CHART SCHEDULE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Gantt-Chart Schedule: Submit a comprehensive, fully developed, horizontal, Gantt-chart-type, Contractor's Construction Schedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of the Work.
  1. Base schedule on the startup construction schedule and additional information received since the start of Project.
- B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line.
  1. For construction activities that require three months or longer to complete, indicate an estimated completion percentage in 10 percent increments within time bar.

## 1.9 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
  3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  4. Equipment at Project site.
  5. Material deliveries.
  6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
  7. Testing and inspection.
  8. Accidents.
  9. Meetings and significant decisions.
  10. Unusual events.
  11. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
  12. Meter readings and similar recordings.
  13. Emergency procedures.
  14. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
  15. Change Orders received and implemented.
  16. Services connected and disconnected.
  17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
  18. Partial completions and occupancies.
  19. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
- 1 Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
  - 2 Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
  - 3 Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
- C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.
- D. Unusual Event Reports: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, responses by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.
1. Submit unusual event reports directly to Owner within one day of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013200

## SECTION 013300 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1 Submittal schedule requirements.
  - 2 Administrative and procedural requirements for submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 012900 "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment and the schedule of values.
  - 2 Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for submitting coordination drawings and subcontract list and for requirements for web-based Project software.
  - 3 Section 013200 "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 4 Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for submitting test and inspection reports, and schedule of tests and inspections.
  - 5 Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting closeout submittals and maintenance material submittals.
  - 6 Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 7 Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
  - 8 Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "action submittals."
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as "informational submittals."

#### 1.4 SUBMITTAL SCHEDULE

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit, as an action submittal, a list of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal Category: Action; informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
    - g. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
    - h. Scheduled date of fabrication.
    - i. Scheduled dates for installation.
    - j. Activity or event number.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL FORMATS

- A. Submittal Information: Include the following information in each submittal:
1. Project name.
  2. Date.
  3. Name of Architect.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  6. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  7. Unique submittal number, including revision identifier. Include Specification Section number with sequential alphanumeric identifier; and alphanumeric suffix for resubmittals.
  8. Category and type of submittal.
  9. Submittal purpose and description.
  10. Number and title of Specification Section, with paragraph number and generic name for each of multiple items.
  11. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  12. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  13. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  14. Other necessary identification.
  15. Remarks.
  16. Signature of transmitter.

- B. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.
- C. Deviations and Additional Information: On each submittal, clearly indicate deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations; include relevant additional information and revisions, other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals. Indicate by highlighting on each submittal or noting on attached separate sheet.
- D. Paper Submittals:
  - 1 Place a permanent label or title block on each submittal item for identification; include name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
  - 2 Provide a space approximately 6 by 8 inches (150 by 200 mm) on label or beside title block to record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  - 3 Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
  - 4 Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 5 Additional Copies: Unless additional copies are required for final submittal, and unless Architect observes noncompliance with provisions in the Contract Documents, initial submittal may serve as final submittal.
  - 6 Transmittal for Submittals: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using an approved transmittal form.
- E. PDF Submittals: Prepare submittals as PDF package, incorporating complete information into each PDF file. Name PDF file with submittal number.

## 1.6 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Email: Prepare submittals as PDF package, and transmit to Architect by sending via email. Include PDF transmittal form. Include information in email subject line as requested by Architect.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as a digital Project Record Document file.
  - 2. Paper: Prepare submittals in paper form, and deliver to Architect.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
  - 1 Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  - 2 Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  - 3 Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  - 4 Coordinate transmittal of submittals for related parts of the Work specified in different Sections so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- C. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be

authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

- 1 Initial Review: Allow 15 days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  - 2 Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  - 3 Resubmittal Review: Allow 15 days for review of each resubmittal.
- D. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 1 Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2 Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3 Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- E. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.
- F. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## 1.7 SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are unsuitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
  3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams that show factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.
    - d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
  5. Submit Product Data before Shop Drawings, and before or concurrent with Samples.
- B. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data.
1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.

- d. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Paper Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size Drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 24 by 36 inches.
    - a. Two opaque (bond) copies of each submittal. Architect will return one copy.
- C. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other materials.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Permanently attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Project name and submittal number.
    - b. Generic description of Sample.
    - c. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - d. Sample source.
    - e. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
    - f. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
  3. Email Transmittal: Provide PDF transmittal. Include digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.
  4. Paper Transmittal: Include paper transmittal including complete submittal information indicated.
  5. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples that may be incorporated into the Work are indicated in individual Specification Sections. Such Samples must be in an undamaged condition at time of use.
    - b. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  6. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  7. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.



- a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain two Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
  - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
  - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- D. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  - 1 Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
  - 2 Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  - 3 Number and name of room or space.
  - 4 Location within room or space.
- E. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.
- F. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information indicating compliance with indicated performance and design criteria in individual Specification Sections. Include list of assumptions and summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Number each page of submittal.
- G. Certificates:
  - 1 Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Submit a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity. Provide a notarized signature where indicated.
  - 2 Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
  - 3 Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
  - 4 Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 5 Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  - 6 Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- H. Test and Research Reports:
  1. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
  2. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
  3. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements

in the Contract Documents.

4. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
5. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
6. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - a. Name of evaluation organization.
  - b. Date of evaluation.
  - c. Time period when report is in effect.
  - d. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - e. Description of product.
  - f. Test procedures and results.
  - g. Limitations of use.

#### 1.8 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are insufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF file and three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.

1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.9 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Contractor's Approval: Indicate Contractor's approval for each submittal with a uniform approval stamp. Include name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

1. Architect will not review submittals received from Contractor that do not have Contractor's review and approval.

#### 1.10 ARCHITECT'S REVIEW

- A. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it.
  - 1 PDF Submittals: Architect will indicate, via markup on each submittal, the appropriate action.
  - 2 Paper Submittals: Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
- B. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- C. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- D. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review.
- E. Architect will discard submittals received from sources other than Contractor.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents will be returned by Architect without action.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 013300

## SECTION 014000 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspection services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 1 Specific quality-assurance and quality-control requirements for individual work results are specified in their respective Specification Sections. Requirements in individual Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 2 Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and quality-control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 3 Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and quality-control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
  - 4 Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" unless otherwise further described means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- C. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, assembly, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) according to 29 CFR 1910.7, by a testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP), or by a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Tests: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source; for example, plant, mill, factory, or shop.

- G. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- H. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.
- I. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Contractor's quality-control services do not include contract administration activities performed by Architect.

#### 1.4 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

#### 1.5 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conflicting Standards and Other Requirements: If compliance with two or more standards or requirements are specified and the standards or requirements establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for direction before proceeding.
- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

#### 1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For mockups.
  - 1 Include plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 2 Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components.
  - 3 Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

#### 1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.

- C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:
  - 1 Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 2 Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
- D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- E. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following:
  - 1 Specification Section number and title.
  - 2 Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3 Description of test and inspection.
  - 4 Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5 Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6 Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7 Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8 Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9 Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.
- F. Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports and documents as specified.
- G. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's record, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.8 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.
- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1 Contractor-performed tests and inspections including Subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.

- 2 Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
  - 3 Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.
- E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.9 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:
1. Date of issue.
  2. Project title and number.
  3. Name, address, telephone number, and email address of testing agency.
  4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  8. Complete test or inspection data.
  9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspection.
  11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.
- B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
- 1 Name, address, telephone number, and email address of technical representative making report.
  - 2 Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3 Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4 Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5 Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6 Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7 Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
- C. Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports: Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
- 1 Name, address, telephone number, and email address of factory-authorized service representative

- making report.
- 2 Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
- 3 Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
- 4 Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
- 5 Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

#### 1.10 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units. As applicable, procure products from manufacturers able to meet qualification requirements, warranty requirements, and technical or factory-authorized service representative requirements.
- C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
- D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, applying, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
- E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspection indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
- J. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:
  - 1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:



- a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
  - b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
  - c. Provide sizes and configurations of test assemblies, mockups, and laboratory mockups to adequately demonstrate capability of products to comply with performance requirements.
  - d. Build site-assembled test assemblies and mockups using installers who will perform same tasks for Project.
  - e. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
  - f. When testing is complete, remove test specimens and test assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract Documents.

### 1.11 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
  - 1 Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspection they are engaged to perform.
  - 2 Payment for these services will be made from testing and inspection allowances, as authorized by Change Orders.
  - 3 Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities, whether specified or not, to verify and document that the Work complies with requirements.
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform quality-control services.
    - a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.
  3. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspection will be performed.
  4. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
  5. Testing and inspection requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

- C. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
  - 1 Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  - 2 Determine the locations from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  - 3 Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  - 4 Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
  - 5 Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  - 6 Do not perform duties of Contractor.
- E. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
- F. Manufacturer's Technical Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- G. Associated Contractor Services: Cooperate with agencies and representatives performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
  - 1 Access to the Work.
  - 2 Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  - 3 Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspection. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  - 4 Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  - 5 Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  - 6 Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  - 7 Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspection equipment at Project site.
- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and quality-control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspection.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents as a component of Contractor's quality-control plan. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's Construction Schedule. Update as the Work progresses.
  1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, Architect, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1 Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2 Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3 Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4 Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.
  1. Submit log at Project closeout as part of Project Record Documents.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspection, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 014000

## SECTION 014200 - REFERENCES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.
- B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.
- C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."
- D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."
- E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.
- F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.
- G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.
- H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.
- I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

## 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

#### 1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."
- B. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.
  - 1. AABC - Associated Air Balance Council; [www.aabc.com](http://www.aabc.com).
  - 2. AAMA - American Architectural Manufacturers Association; [www.aamanet.org](http://www.aamanet.org).
  - 3. AAPFCO - Association of American Plant Food Control Officials; [www.aapfco.org](http://www.aapfco.org).
  - 4. AASHTO - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials; [www.transportation.org](http://www.transportation.org).
  - 5. AATCC - American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists; [www.aatcc.org](http://www.aatcc.org).
  - 6. ABMA - American Bearing Manufacturers Association; [www.americanbearings.org](http://www.americanbearings.org).
  - 7. ABMA - American Boiler Manufacturers Association; [www.abma.com](http://www.abma.com).
  - 8. ACI - American Concrete Institute; (Formerly: ACI International); [www.concrete.org](http://www.concrete.org).
  - 9. ACPA - American Concrete Pipe Association; [www.concrete-pipe.org](http://www.concrete-pipe.org).
  - 10. AEIC - Association of Edison Illuminating Companies, Inc. (The); [www.aeic.org](http://www.aeic.org).
  - 11. AF&PA - American Forest & Paper Association; [www.afandpa.org](http://www.afandpa.org).
  - 12. AGA - American Gas Association; [www.aga.org](http://www.aga.org).
  - 13. AHAM - Association of Home Appliance Manufacturers; [www.aham.org](http://www.aham.org).
  - 14. AHRI - Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute (The); [www.ahrinet.org](http://www.ahrinet.org).
  - 15. AI - Asphalt Institute; [www.asphaltinstitute.org](http://www.asphaltinstitute.org).
  - 16. AIA - American Institute of Architects (The); [www.aia.org](http://www.aia.org).
  - 17. AISC - American Institute of Steel Construction; [www.aisc.org](http://www.aisc.org).
  - 18. AISI - American Iron and Steel Institute; [www.steel.org](http://www.steel.org).
  - 19. AITC - American Institute of Timber Construction; [www.aitc-glulam.org](http://www.aitc-glulam.org).
  - 20. AMCA - Air Movement and Control Association International, Inc.; [www.amca.org](http://www.amca.org).
  - 21. ANSI - American National Standards Institute; [www.ansi.org](http://www.ansi.org).
  - 22. AOSA - Association of Official Seed Analysts, Inc.; [www.aosaseed.com](http://www.aosaseed.com).
  - 23. APA - APA - The Engineered Wood Association; [www.apawood.org](http://www.apawood.org).
  - 24. APA - Architectural Precast Association; [www.archprecast.org](http://www.archprecast.org).
  - 25. API - American Petroleum Institute; [www.api.org](http://www.api.org).
  - 26. ARI - Air-Conditioning & Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
  - 27. ARI - American Refrigeration Institute; (See AHRI).
  - 28. ARMA - Asphalt Roofing Manufacturers Association; [www.asphaltroofing.org](http://www.asphaltroofing.org).
  - 29. ASCE - American Society of Civil Engineers; [www.asce.org](http://www.asce.org).
  - 30. ASCE/SEI - American Society of Civil Engineers/Structural Engineering Institute; (See ASCE).
  - 31. ASHRAE - American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers;

- [www.ashrae.org](http://www.ashrae.org).
32. ASME -ASME International; (American Society of Mechanical Engineers); [www.asme.org](http://www.asme.org).
  33. ASSE - American Society of Safety Engineers (The); [www.asse.org](http://www.asse.org).
  34. ASSE - American Society of Sanitary Engineering; [www.asse-plumbing.org](http://www.asse-plumbing.org).
  35. ASTM - ASTM International; [www.astm.org](http://www.astm.org).
  36. ATIS - Alliance for Telecommunications Industry Solutions; [www.atis.org](http://www.atis.org).
  37. AWEA - American Wind Energy Association; [www.awea.org](http://www.awea.org).
  38. AWI - Architectural Woodwork Institute; [www.awinet.org](http://www.awinet.org).
  39. AWMAC -Architectural Woodwork Manufacturers Association of Canada; [www.awmac.com](http://www.awmac.com).
  40. AWPA - American Wood Protection Association; [www.awpa.com](http://www.awpa.com).
  41. AWS - American Welding Society; [www.aws.org](http://www.aws.org).
  42. AWWA - American Water Works Association; [www.awwa.org](http://www.awwa.org).
  43. BHMA - Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association; [www.buildershardware.com](http://www.buildershardware.com).
  44. BIA - Brick Industry Association (The); [www.gobrick.com](http://www.gobrick.com).
  45. BICSI - BICSI, Inc.; [www.bicsi.org](http://www.bicsi.org).
  46. BIFMA -BIFMA International; (Business and Institutional Furniture Manufacturer's Association); [www.bifma.org](http://www.bifma.org).
  47. BISSC - Baking Industry Sanitation Standards Committee; [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
  48. BWF -Badminton World Federation; (Formerly: International Badminton Federation); [www.bissc.org](http://www.bissc.org).
  49. CDA - Copper Development Association; [www.copper.org](http://www.copper.org).
  50. CE - Conformite Europeenne; <http://ec.europa.eu/growth/single-market/ce-marking/>
  51. CEA - Canadian Electricity Association; [www.electricity.ca](http://www.electricity.ca).
  52. CEA - Consumer Electronics Association; [www.ce.org](http://www.ce.org).
  53. CFFA - Chemical Fabrics and Film Association, Inc.; [www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com](http://www.chemicalfabricsandfilm.com).
  54. CFSEI - Cold-Formed Steel Engineers Institute; [www.cfsei.org](http://www.cfsei.org).
  55. CGA - Compressed Gas Association; [www.cganet.com](http://www.cganet.com).
  56. CIMA - Cellulose Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.cellulose.org](http://www.cellulose.org).
  57. CISCA - Ceilings & Interior Systems Construction Association; [www.cisca.org](http://www.cisca.org).
  58. CISPI - Cast Iron Soil Pipe Institute; [www.cispi.org](http://www.cispi.org).
  59. CLFMI - Chain Link Fence Manufacturers Institute; [www.chainlinkinfo.org](http://www.chainlinkinfo.org).
  60. CPA - Composite Panel Association; [www.pbmdf.com](http://www.pbmdf.com).
  61. CRI - Carpet and Rug Institute (The); [www.carpet-rug.org](http://www.carpet-rug.org).
  62. CRRC - Cool Roof Rating Council; [www.coolroofs.org](http://www.coolroofs.org).
  63. CRSI - Concrete Reinforcing Steel Institute; [www.crsi.org](http://www.crsi.org).
  64. CSA - CSA Group; [www.csa.ca](http://www.csa.ca).
  65. CSA - CSA International; (Formerly: IAS -International Approval Services); [www.csa-international.org](http://www.csa-international.org).
  66. CSI - Construction Specifications Institute (The); [www.csinet.org](http://www.csinet.org).
  67. CSSB - Cedar Shake & Shingle Bureau; [www.cedarbureau.org](http://www.cedarbureau.org).
  68. CTI - Cooling Technology Institute; (Formerly: Cooling Tower Institute); [www.cti.org](http://www.cti.org).
  69. CWC - Composite Wood Council; (See CPA).
  70. DASMA - Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association; [www.dasma.com](http://www.dasma.com).
  71. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute; [www.dhi.org](http://www.dhi.org).
  72. ECA - Electronic Components Association; (See ECIA).
  73. ECAMA - Electronic Components Assemblies & Materials Association; (See ECIA).
  74. ECIA - Electronic Components Industry Association; [www.eciaonline.org](http://www.eciaonline.org).
  75. EIA - Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
  76. EIMA - EIFS Industry Members Association; [www.eima.com](http://www.eima.com).
  77. EJMA - Expansion Joint Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.ejma.org](http://www.ejma.org).
  78. ESD - ESD Association; (Electrostatic Discharge Association); [www.esda.org](http://www.esda.org).
  79. ESTA - Entertainment Services and Technology Association; (See PLASA).
  80. ETL - Intertek (See Intertek); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
  81. EVO - Efficiency Valuation Organization; [www.evo-world.org](http://www.evo-world.org).

82. FCI - Fluid Controls Institute; [www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org](http://www.fluidcontrolsinstitute.org).
83. FIBA -Federation Internationale de Basketball; (The International Basketball Federation); [www.fiba.com](http://www.fiba.com).
84. FIVB -Federation Internationale de Volleyball; (The International Volleyball Federation); [www.fivb.org](http://www.fivb.org).
85. FM Approvals - FM Approvals LLC; [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
86. FM Global - FM Global; (Formerly: FMG - FM Global); [www.fmglobal.com](http://www.fmglobal.com).
87. FRSA -Florida Roofing, Sheet Metal & Air Conditioning Contractors Association, Inc.; [www.floridarooft.com](http://www.floridarooft.com).
88. FSA - Fluid Sealing Association; [www.fluidsealing.com](http://www.fluidsealing.com).
89. FSC - Forest Stewardship Council U.S.; [www.fscus.org](http://www.fscus.org).
90. GA - Gypsum Association; [www.gypsum.org](http://www.gypsum.org).
91. GANA - Glass Association of North America; [www.glasswebsite.com](http://www.glasswebsite.com).
92. GS - Green Seal; [www.greenseal.org](http://www.greenseal.org).
93. HI - Hydraulic Institute; [www.pumps.org](http://www.pumps.org).
94. HI/GAMA - Hydronics Institute/Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association; (See AHRI).
95. HMMA - Hollow Metal Manufacturers Association; (See NAAMM).
96. HPVA - Hardwood Plywood & Veneer Association; [www.hpva.org](http://www.hpva.org).
97. HPW - H. P. White Laboratory, Inc.; [www.hpwhite.com](http://www.hpwhite.com).
98. IAPSC - International Association of Professional Security Consultants; [www.iapsc.org](http://www.iapsc.org).
99. IAS - International Accreditation Service; [www.iasonline.org](http://www.iasonline.org).
100. IAS - International Approval Services; (See CSA).
101. ICBO - International Conference of Building Officials; (See ICC).
102. ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
103. ICEA - Insulated Cable Engineers Association, Inc.; [www.icea.net](http://www.icea.net).
104. ICPA - International Cast Polymer Alliance; [www.icpa-hq.org](http://www.icpa-hq.org).
105. ICRI - International Concrete Repair Institute, Inc.; [www.icri.org](http://www.icri.org).
106. IEC - International Electrotechnical Commission; [www.iec.ch](http://www.iec.ch).
107. IEEE - Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (The); [www.ieee.org](http://www.ieee.org).
108. IES - Illuminating Engineering Society; (Formerly: Illuminating Engineering Society of North America); [www.ies.org](http://www.ies.org).
109. IESNA - Illuminating Engineering Society of North America; (See IES).
110. IEST - Institute of Environmental Sciences and Technology; [www.iest.org](http://www.iest.org).
111. IGMA - Insulating Glass Manufacturers Alliance; [www.igmaonline.org](http://www.igmaonline.org).
112. IGSHPA -International Ground Source Heat Pump Association; [www.igshpa.okstate.edu](http://www.igshpa.okstate.edu).
113. ILI - Indiana Limestone Institute of America, Inc.; [www.ili.ai.com](http://www.ili.ai.com).
114. Intertek -Intertek Group; (Formerly: ETL SEMCO; Intertek Testing Service NA); [www.intertek.com](http://www.intertek.com).
115. ISA -International Society of Automation (The); (Formerly: Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society); [www.isa.org](http://www.isa.org).
116. ISAS - Instrumentation, Systems, and Automation Society (The); (See ISA).
117. ISFA -International Surface Fabricators Association; (Formerly: International Solid Surface Fabricators Association); [www.isfanow.org](http://www.isfanow.org).
118. ISO - International Organization for Standardization; [www.iso.org](http://www.iso.org).
119. ISSFA - International Solid Surface Fabricators Association; (See ISFA).
120. ITU - International Telecommunication Union; [www.itu.int/home](http://www.itu.int/home).
121. KCMA - Kitchen Cabinet Manufacturers Association; [www.kcma.org](http://www.kcma.org).
122. LMA - Laminating Materials Association; (See CPA).
123. LPI - Lightning Protection Institute; [www.lightning.org](http://www.lightning.org).
124. MBMA - Metal Building Manufacturers Association; [www.mbma.com](http://www.mbma.com).
125. MCA - Metal Construction Association; [www.metalconstruction.org](http://www.metalconstruction.org).
126. MFMA - Maple Flooring Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.maplefloor.org](http://www.maplefloor.org).
127. MFMA - Metal Framing Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.metalframingmfg.org](http://www.metalframingmfg.org).
128. MHIA - Material Handling Industry of America; [www.mhia.org](http://www.mhia.org).

129. MIA - Marble Institute of America; [www.marble-institute.com](http://www.marble-institute.com).
130. MMPA - Moulding & Millwork Producers Association; [www.wmmpa.com](http://www.wmmpa.com).
131. MPI - Master Painters Institute; [www.paintinfo.com](http://www.paintinfo.com).
132. MSS -Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.; [www.mss-hq.org](http://www.mss-hq.org).
133. NAAMM -National Association of Architectural Metal Manufacturers; [www.naamm.org](http://www.naamm.org).
134. NACE -NACE International; (National Association of Corrosion Engineers International); [www.nace.org](http://www.nace.org).
135. NADCA - National Air Duct Cleaners Association; [www.nadca.com](http://www.nadca.com).
136. NAIMA - North American Insulation Manufacturers Association; [www.naima.org](http://www.naima.org).
137. NBGQA - National Building Granite Quarries Association, Inc.; [www.nbgqa.com](http://www.nbgqa.com).
138. NBI - New Buildings Institute; [www.newbuildings.org](http://www.newbuildings.org).
139. NCAA - National Collegiate Athletic Association (The); [www.ncaa.org](http://www.ncaa.org).
140. NCMA - National Concrete Masonry Association; [www.ncma.org](http://www.ncma.org).
141. NEBB - National Environmental Balancing Bureau; [www.nebb.org](http://www.nebb.org).
142. NECA - National Electrical Contractors Association; [www.necanet.org](http://www.necanet.org).
143. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association; [www.nelma.org](http://www.nelma.org).
144. NEMA - National Electrical Manufacturers Association; [www.nema.org](http://www.nema.org).
145. NETA - InterNational Electrical Testing Association; [www.netaworld.org](http://www.netaworld.org).
146. NFHS - National Federation of State High School Associations; [www.nfhs.org](http://www.nfhs.org).
147. NFPA - National Fire Protection Association; [www.nfpa.org](http://www.nfpa.org).
148. NFPA - NFPA International; (See NFPA).
149. NFRC - National Fenestration Rating Council; [www.nfrc.org](http://www.nfrc.org).
150. NHLA - National Hardwood Lumber Association; [www.nhla.com](http://www.nhla.com).
151. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority; [www.nlga.org](http://www.nlga.org).
152. NOFMA - National Oak Flooring Manufacturers Association; (See NWFA).
153. NOMMA - National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association; [www.nomma.org](http://www.nomma.org).
154. NRCA - National Roofing Contractors Association; [www.nrca.net](http://www.nrca.net).
155. NRMCA - National Ready Mixed Concrete Association; [www.nrmca.org](http://www.nrmca.org).
156. NSF - NSF International; [www.nsf.org](http://www.nsf.org).
157. NSPE - National Society of Professional Engineers; [www.nspe.org](http://www.nspe.org).
158. NSSGA - National Stone, Sand & Gravel Association; [www.nssga.org](http://www.nssga.org).
159. NTMA - National Terrazzo & Mosaic Association, Inc. (The); [www.ntma.com](http://www.ntma.com).
160. NWFA - National Wood Flooring Association; [www.nwfa.org](http://www.nwfa.org).
161. PCI - Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute; [www.pci.org](http://www.pci.org).
162. PDI - Plumbing & Drainage Institute; [www.pdionline.org](http://www.pdionline.org).
163. PLASA -PLASA; (Formerly: ESTA -Entertainment Services and Technology Association); <http://www.plasa.org>.
164. RCSC - Research Council on Structural Connections; [www.boltcouncil.org](http://www.boltcouncil.org).
165. RFCI - Resilient Floor Covering Institute; [www.rfci.com](http://www.rfci.com).
166. RIS - Redwood Inspection Service; [www.redwoodinspection.com](http://www.redwoodinspection.com).
167. SAE - SAE International; [www.sae.org](http://www.sae.org).
168. SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers; [www.scte.org](http://www.scte.org).
169. SDI - Steel Deck Institute; [www.sdi.org](http://www.sdi.org).
170. SDI - Steel Door Institute; [www.steeldoor.org](http://www.steeldoor.org).
171. SEFA - Scientific Equipment and Furniture Association (The); [www.sefalabs.com](http://www.sefalabs.com).
172. SEI/ASCE -Structural Engineering Institute/American Society of Civil Engineers; (See ASCE).
173. SIA - Security Industry Association; [www.siaonline.org](http://www.siaonline.org).
174. SJI - Steel Joist Institute; [www.steeljoist.org](http://www.steeljoist.org).
175. SMA - Screen Manufacturers Association; [www.smainfo.org](http://www.smainfo.org).
176. SMACNA -Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association; [www.smacna.org](http://www.smacna.org).
177. SMPTE - Society of Motion Picture and Television Engineers; [www.smpte.org](http://www.smpte.org).
178. SPFA - Spray Polyurethane Foam Alliance; [www.sprayfoam.org](http://www.sprayfoam.org).



179. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau; [www.spib.org](http://www.spib.org).
180. SPRI - Single Ply Roofing Industry; [www.spri.org](http://www.spri.org).
181. SRCC - Solar Rating & Certification Corporation; [www.solar-rating.org](http://www.solar-rating.org).
182. SSINA - Specialty Steel Industry of North America; [www.ssina.com](http://www.ssina.com).
183. SSPC - SSPC: The Society for Protective Coatings; [www.sspc.org](http://www.sspc.org).
184. STI - Steel Tank Institute; [www.steeltank.com](http://www.steeltank.com).
185. SWI - Steel Window Institute; [www.steelwindows.com](http://www.steelwindows.com).
186. SWPA - Submersible Wastewater Pump Association; [www.swpa.org](http://www.swpa.org).
187. TCA - Tilt-Up Concrete Association; [www.tilt-up.org](http://www.tilt-up.org).
188. TCNA - Tile Council of North America, Inc.; [www.tileusa.com](http://www.tileusa.com).
189. TEMA - Tubular Exchanger Manufacturers Association, Inc.; [www.tema.org](http://www.tema.org).
190. TIA - Telecommunications Industry Association (The); (Formerly: TIA/EIA Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance); [www.tiaonline.org](http://www.tiaonline.org).
191. TIA/EIA - Telecommunications Industry Association/Electronic Industries Alliance; (See TIA).
192. TMS - The Masonry Society; [www.masonrysociety.org](http://www.masonrysociety.org).
193. TPI - Truss Plate Institute; [www.tpinst.org](http://www.tpinst.org).
194. TPI - Turfgrass Producers International; [www.turfgrasssod.org](http://www.turfgrasssod.org).
195. TRI - Tile Roofing Institute; [www.tileroofing.org](http://www.tileroofing.org).
196. UL - Underwriters Laboratories Inc.; <http://www.ul.com>.
197. UNI - Uni-Bell PVC Pipe Association; [www.uni-bell.org](http://www.uni-bell.org).
198. USAV - USA Volleyball; [www.usavolleyball.org](http://www.usavolleyball.org).
199. USGBC - U.S. Green Building Council; [www.usgbc.org](http://www.usgbc.org).
200. USITT - United States Institute for Theatre Technology, Inc.; [www.usitt.org](http://www.usitt.org).
201. WA - Wallcoverings Association; [www.wallcoverings.org](http://www.wallcoverings.org).
202. WASTEC - Waste Equipment Technology Association; [www.wastec.org](http://www.wastec.org).
203. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau; [www.wclib.org](http://www.wclib.org).
204. WCMA - Window Covering Manufacturers Association; [www.wcmanet.org](http://www.wcmanet.org).
205. WDMA - Window & Door Manufacturers Association; [www.wdma.com](http://www.wdma.com).
206. WI - Woodwork Institute; [www.wicnet.org](http://www.wicnet.org).
207. WSRCA - Western States Roofing Contractors Association; [www.wsrca.com](http://www.wsrca.com).
208. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association; [www.wwpa.org](http://www.wwpa.org).

- C. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

- 1 DIN - Deutsches Institut für Normung e.V.; [www.din.de](http://www.din.de).
- 2 IAPMO - International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials; [www.iapmo.org](http://www.iapmo.org).
- 3 ICC - International Code Council; [www.iccsafe.org](http://www.iccsafe.org).
- 4 ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; [www.icc-es.org](http://www.icc-es.org).

- D. Federal Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. Information is subject to change and is up to date as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. COE - Army Corps of Engineers; [www.usace.army.mil](http://www.usace.army.mil).
2. CPSC - Consumer Product Safety Commission; [www.cpsc.gov](http://www.cpsc.gov).
3. DOC - Department of Commerce; National Institute of Standards and Technology; [www.nist.gov](http://www.nist.gov).
4. DOD - Department of Defense; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
5. DOE - Department of Energy; [www.energy.gov](http://www.energy.gov).
6. EPA - Environmental Protection Agency; [www.epa.gov](http://www.epa.gov).
7. FAA - Federal Aviation Administration; [www.faa.gov](http://www.faa.gov).
8. FG - Federal Government Publications; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
9. GSA - General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).

10. HUD - Department of Housing and Urban Development; [www.hud.gov](http://www.hud.gov).
11. LBL -Lawrence Berkeley National Laboratory; Environmental Energy Technologies Division; [www.eetd.lbl.gov](http://www.eetd.lbl.gov).
12. OSHA - Occupational Safety & Health Administration; [www.osha.gov](http://www.osha.gov).
13. SD - Department of State; [www.state.gov](http://www.state.gov).
14. TRB -Transportation Research Board; National Cooperative Highway Research Program; The National Academies; [www.trb.org](http://www.trb.org).
15. USDA -Department of Agriculture; Agriculture Research Service; U.S. Salinity Laboratory; [www.ars.usda.gov](http://www.ars.usda.gov).
16. USDA - Department of Agriculture; Rural Utilities Service; [www.usda.gov](http://www.usda.gov).
17. USDOJ -Department of Justice; Office of Justice Programs; National Institute of Justice; [www.ojp.usdoj.gov](http://www.ojp.usdoj.gov).
18. USP - U.S. Pharmacopeial Convention; [www.usp.org](http://www.usp.org).
19. USPS - United States Postal Service; [www.usps.com](http://www.usps.com).

E. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. CFR -Code of Federal Regulations; Available from Government Printing Office; [www.gpo.gov/fdsys](http://www.gpo.gov/fdsys).
2. DOD -Department of Defense; Military Specifications and Standards; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
3. DSCC - Defense Supply Center Columbus; (See FS).
4. FED-STD - Federal Standard; (See FS).
5. FS -Federal Specification; Available from DLA Document Services; [www.quicksearch.dla.mil](http://www.quicksearch.dla.mil).
  - a. Available from Defense Standardization Program; [www.dsp.dla.mil](http://www.dsp.dla.mil).
  - b. Available from General Services Administration; [www.gsa.gov](http://www.gsa.gov).
  - c. Available from National Institute of Building Sciences/Whole Building Design Guide; [www.wbdg.org/ccb](http://www.wbdg.org/ccb).
6. MILSPEC - Military Specification and Standards; (See DOD).
7. USAB - United States Access Board; [www.access-board.gov](http://www.access-board.gov).
8. USATBCB -U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board; (See USAB).

F. State Government Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is subject to change and is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

- 1 CBHF; State of California; Department of Consumer Affairs; Bureau of Electronic and Appliance Repair, Home Furnishings and Thermal Insulation; [www.bearhfti.ca.gov](http://www.bearhfti.ca.gov).
- 2 CCR; California Code of Regulations; Office of Administrative Law; California Title 24 Energy Code; [www.calregs.com](http://www.calregs.com).
- 3 CDHS; California Department of Health Services; (See CDPH).
- 4 CDPH; California Department of Public Health; Indoor Air Quality Program; [www.caliaq.org](http://www.caliaq.org).
- 5 CPUC; California Public Utilities Commission; [www.cpuc.ca.gov](http://www.cpuc.ca.gov).
- 6 SCAQMD; South Coast Air Quality Management District; [www.aqmd.gov](http://www.aqmd.gov).
- 7 TFS; Texas A&M Forest Service; Sustainable Forestry and Economic Development; [www.txforestservation.tamu.edu](http://www.txforestservation.tamu.edu).

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

References

Specifications

014200-7

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 015000 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 011000 "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.

#### 1.3 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities engaged in the Project to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Water Service: Pay water-service use charges for water used by all entities for construction operations.
- C. Electric Power Service: Pay electric-power-service use charges for electricity used by all entities for construction operations.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Utilization Plan: Show temporary facilities, temporary utility lines and connections, staging areas, construction site entrances, vehicle circulation, and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Implementation and Termination Schedule: Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit schedule indicating implementation and termination dates of each temporary utility.
- C. Project Identification and Temporary Signs: Show fabrication and installation details, including plans, elevations, details, layouts, typestyles, graphic elements, and message content.
- D. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
- E. Moisture- and Mold-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage and mold.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric
- Temporary Facilities and Controls                      Specifications                      015000-1

service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

- B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch (50-mm), 0.148-inch- (3.8-mm-) thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet (1.8 m) high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- (60-mm-) OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- (73-mm-) OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- (42-mm-) OD top and bottom rails. Provide bases for supporting posts.
- C. Insulation: Unfaced mineral-fiber blanket, manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.
- B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

### 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1 Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2 Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 3 Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter at each return-air grille in system and remove at end of construction and clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 TEMPORARY FACILITIES, GENERAL

- A. Conservation: Coordinate construction and use of temporary facilities with consideration given to conservation of energy, water, and materials. Coordinate use of temporary utilities to minimize waste.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

## 3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- C. Temporary Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
  - 1. Provide temporary dehumidification systems when required to reduce ambient and substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes and their proper curing or drying.
- D. Electric Power Service: Provide electric power service and distribution system of sufficient size, capacity, and power characteristics required for construction operations.
  - 1. Install electric power service overhead unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
  - 1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- F. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service for use by all construction personnel. Install WiFi cell phone access equipment and one land-based telephone line for each field office.
  - 1. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.

- b. Ambulance service.
- c. Contractor's home office.
- d. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
- e. Architect's office.
- f. Owner's office.
- g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

### 3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet (9 m) of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Temporary Roads and Paved Areas: Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Locate temporary roads and paved areas within construction limits indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. Provide dust-control treatment that is nonpolluting and nontracking. Reapply treatment as required to minimize dust.
- C. Temporary Use of Planned Permanent Roads and Paved Areas: Locate temporary roads and paved areas in same location as permanent roads and paved areas. Construct and maintain temporary roads and paved areas adequate for construction operations. Extend temporary roads and paved areas, within construction limits indicated, as necessary for construction operations.
  - 1 Coordinate elevations of temporary roads and paved areas with permanent roads and paved areas.
  - 2 Prepare subgrade and install subbase and base for temporary roads and paved areas according to requirements indicated on Drawings.
  - 3 Recondition base after temporary use, including removing contaminated material, regrading, proofrolling, compacting, and testing.
  - 4 Delay installation of final course of permanent hot-mix asphalt pavement until immediately before Substantial Completion. Repair hot-mix asphalt base-course pavement before installation of final course according requirements indicated on Drawings.
- D. Traffic Controls: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1 Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
  - 2 Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.
- E. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- F. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
  - 1 Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
  - 2 Remove snow and ice as required to minimize accumulations.

- G. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
  - 1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  - 3. Maintain and touch up signs so they are legible at all times.
- H. Waste Disposal Facilities: Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- I. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Comply with progress cleaning requirements in Section 017300 "Execution."
- J. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel.
  - 1. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

### 3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties, except those indicated to be removed or altered. Repair damage to existing facilities.
  - 1. Where access to adjacent properties is required in order to affect protection of existing facilities, obtain written permission from adjacent property owner to access property for that purpose.
- B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.
  - 1. Comply with work restrictions specified in Section 011000 "Summary."
- C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Comply with requirements indicated on Drawings and the following:
  - 1 Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
  - 2 Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant-protection zones.
  - 3 Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
  - 4 Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
  - 5 Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.
- D. Stormwater Control: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.



- E. Site Enclosure Fence: Prior to commencing earthwork, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
  - 1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
- F. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each workday.
- G. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
- H. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as indicated and as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
  - 1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- J. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire-prevention program.
  - 1 Prohibit smoking in construction areas. Comply with additional limits on smoking specified in other Sections.
  - 2 Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3 Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4 Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

### 3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe delivery, handling, storage, installation, and protection provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
  - 1 Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
  - 2 Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.
  - 3 Indicate methods to be used to avoid trapping water in finished work.
- B. Exposed Construction Period: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:

- 1 Protect porous materials from water damage.
  - 2 Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  - 3 Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  - 4 Remove standing water from decks.
  - 5 Keep deck openings covered or dammed.
- C. Partially Enclosed Construction Period: After installation of weather barriers but before full enclosure and conditioning of building, when installed materials are still subject to infiltration of moisture and ambient mold spores, protect as follows:
- 1 Do not load or install drywall or other porous materials or components, or items with high organic content, into partially enclosed building.
  - 2 Keep interior spaces reasonably clean and protected from water damage.
  - 3 Periodically collect and remove waste containing cellulose or other organic matter.
  - 4 Discard or replace water-damaged material.
  - 5 Do not install material that is wet.
  - 6 Discard and replace stored or installed material that begins to grow mold.
  - 7 Perform work in a sequence that allows wet materials adequate time to dry before enclosing the material in gypsum board or other interior finishes.
- D. Controlled Construction Period: After completing and sealing of the building enclosure but prior to the full operation of permanent HVAC systems, maintain as follows:
- 1 Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
  - 2 Use temporary or permanent HVAC system to control humidity within ranges specified for installed and stored materials.
  - 3 Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    - a. Hygroscopic materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective and require replacing.
    - b. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    - c. Remove and replace materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

### 3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.

- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
- 1 Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2 Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3 At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 015000

## SECTION 016000 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 012100 "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2 Section 012300 "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3 Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 4 Section 014200 "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1 Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2 New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3 Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved by Architect through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a single manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation. In addition to the basis-of-design product description, product attributes and characteristics may be listed to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other special features and requirements for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

- C. Subject to Compliance with Requirements: Where the phrase "Subject to compliance with requirements" introduces a product selection procedure in an individual Specification Section, provide products qualified under the specified product procedure. In the event that a named product or product by a named manufacturer does not meet the other requirements of the specifications, select another named product or product from another named manufacturer that does meet the requirements of the specifications. Submit a comparable product request, if applicable.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Request Submittal: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify basis-of-design product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Architect's Approval of Submittal: As specified in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.
- 1 Each contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with products and construction methods of other contractors.
  - 2 If a dispute arises between contractors over concurrently selectable but incompatible products, Architect will determine which products shall be used.
- B. Identification of Products: Except for required labels and operating data, do not attach or imprint manufacturer or product names or trademarks on exposed surfaces of products or equipment that will be exposed to view in occupied spaces or on the exterior.
1. Labels: Locate required product labels and stamps on a concealed surface, or, where required for observation following installation, on a visually accessible surface that is not conspicuous.
  2. Equipment Nameplates: Provide a permanent nameplate on each item of service-connected or power-operated equipment. Locate on a visually accessible but inconspicuous surface. Include information essential for operation, including the following:
    - a. Name of product and manufacturer.
    - b. Model and serial number.
    - c. Capacity.
    - d. Speed.

- e. Ratings.
- 3. See individual identification sections in Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 for additional identification requirements.

## 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1 Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2 Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3 Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  - 4 Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  - 1 Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  - 2 Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  - 3 Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
  - 4 Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
  - 5 Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
  - 6 Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.
  - 7 Provide a secure location and enclosure at Project site for storage of materials and equipment by Owner's construction forces. Coordinate location with Owner.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 1 Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  - 2 Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  - 1 Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
  - 2 Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  - 3 See other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting

special warranties.

- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
- 1 Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  - 2 Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  - 3 Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties meeting requirements of the Contract Documents.
  - 4 Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  - 5 Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  - 6 Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
    - a. Submit additional documentation required by Architect in order to establish equivalency of proposed products. Evaluation of "or equal" product status is by the Architect, whose determination is final.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Sole Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole product may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following: ..."
2. Sole Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
  - a. Sole manufacturer/source may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following: ..."
3. Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Limited list of products may be indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following: ..."
4. Non-Limited List of Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both available manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed, or an unnamed product, which complies with requirements.
  - a. Non-limited list of products is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
5. Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following: ..."
6. Non-Limited List of Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, which complies with requirements.
  - a. Non-limited list of manufacturers is indicated by the phrase: "Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers whose products may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following: ..."
7. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.
  - a. For approval of products by unnamed manufacturers, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for substitutions for convenience.
- C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample," provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.
  1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.
- D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration of Comparable Products: Architect will consider Contractor's request for



comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- 1 Evidence that proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, is consistent with the Contract Documents, will produce the indicated results, and is compatible with other portions of the Work. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant product qualities include attributes such as type, function, in-service performance and physical properties, weight, dimension, durability, visual characteristics, and other specific features and requirements.
  - 2 Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  - 3 List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  - 4 Samples, if requested.
- B. Submittal Requirements: Approval by the Architect of Contractor's request for use of comparable product is not intended to satisfy other submittal requirements. Comply with specified submittal requirements.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 016000

## SECTION 017300 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1 Construction layout.
  - 2 Field engineering and surveying.
  - 3 Installation of the Work.
  - 4 Coordination of Owner-installed products.
  - 5 Progress cleaning.
  - 6 Starting and adjusting.
  - 7 Protection of installed construction.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 011000 "Summary" for limits on use of Project site.
  - 2 Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
  - 3 Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, replacing defective work, and final cleaning.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.
- B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor, certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.
- C. Final Property Survey: Submit 10 copies showing the Work performed and record survey data.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.
- B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

Execution

Specifications

017300-1

## 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1 Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services; and other utilities.
  - 2 Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
  - 1 Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  - 2 Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  - 3 Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:
  - 1 Description of the Work.
  - 2 List of detrimental conditions, including substrates.
  - 3 List of unacceptable installation tolerances.
  - 4 Recommended corrections.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Field Measurements: Take field measurements as required to fit the Work properly. Recheck measurements before installing each product. Where portions of the Work are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
- C. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- D. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination."

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a land surveyor to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
  - 1 Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  - 2 Establish limits on use of Project site.
  - 3 Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  - 4 Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  - 5 Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.
  - 6 Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  - 7 Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.

- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

### 3.4 FIELD ENGINEERING

- A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.
- Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
  - Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.
  - B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.
  - Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.
  - Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
  - Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.
  - C. Final Property Survey: Engage a land surveyor to prepare a final property survey showing significant features (real property) for Project. Include on the survey a certification, signed by land surveyor, that principal metes, bounds, lines, and levels of Project are accurately positioned as shown on the survey.
  - Show boundary lines, monuments, streets, site improvements and utilities, existing improvements and significant vegetation, adjoining properties, acreage, grade contours, and the distance and bearing from a site corner to a legal point.
  - Recording: At Substantial Completion, have the final property survey recorded by or with authorities having jurisdiction as the official "property survey."

### 3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
- 1 Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  - 2 Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  - 3 Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4 Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches (2440 mm) in occupied spaces and 90 inches (2300 mm) in unoccupied spaces.

- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Where possible, select tools or equipment that minimize production of excessive noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other portions of the Work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.
- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1 Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2 Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3 Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Repair or remove and replace damaged, defective, or nonconforming Work.
  - 1. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for repairing or removing and replacing defective Work.

### 3.6 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.

1. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  2. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F (27 deg C).
  3. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Use containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
  4. Coordinate progress cleaning for joint-use areas where Contractor and others are working concurrently.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
- 1 Remove liquid spills promptly.
  - 2 Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to ensure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

### 3.7 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements."

### 3.8 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

END OF SECTION 017300



## SECTION 017419 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Disposing of nonhazardous construction waste.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for disposal requirements for masonry waste.
  - 2. Section 047200 "Cast Stone Masonry" for disposal requirements for excess stone and stone waste.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Construction Waste: Building, structure, and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
- B. Disposal: Removal of demolition or construction waste and subsequent salvage, sale, recycling, or deposit in landfill, incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, or designated spoil areas on Owner's property.
- C. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition and construction waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Landfill and Incinerator Disposal Records: Indicate receipt and acceptance of waste by landfills and incinerator facilities licensed to accept them. Include manifests, weight tickets, receipts, and invoices.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Practice efficient waste management in the use of materials in the course of the Work. Use all reasonable means to divert construction and demolition waste from landfills and incinerators.

1. Construction Waste:

- a. Masonry and CMU.
- b. Lumber.
- c. Wood sheet materials.
- d. Wood trim.
- e. Metals.
- f. Roofing.
- g. Insulation.
- h. Carpet and pad.
- i. Gypsum board.
- j. Piping.
- k. Electrical conduit.
- l. Packaging:
  - 1) Paper.
  - 2) Cardboard.
  - 3) Boxes.
  - 4) Plastic sheet and film.
  - 5) Polystyrene packaging.
  - 6) Wood crates.
  - 7) Wood pallets.
  - 8) Plastic pails.
- m. Construction Office Waste:
  - 1) Paper.
  - 2) Aluminum cans.
  - 3) Glass containers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

- A. General: Remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- 1 Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
  - 2 Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
- B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

END OF SECTION 017419

## SECTION 017700 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1 Substantial Completion procedures.
  - 2 Final completion procedures.
  - 3 Warranties.
  - 4 Final cleaning.
  - 5 Repair of the Work.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for additional operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 2 Section 017839 "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 3 Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training" for requirements to train the Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain products, equipment, and systems.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cleaning agent.
- B. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.
- C. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at final completion.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.
- C. Field Report: For pest control inspection.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: For maintenance material submittal items specified in other

## Sections.

## 1.6 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
- B. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.
  - 2. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
  - 3. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
  - 4. Submit maintenance material submittals specified in individual Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Architect. Label with manufacturer's name and model number.
    - a. Schedule of Maintenance Material Items: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner's signature for receipt of submittals.
  - 5. Submit testing, adjusting, and balancing records.
  - 6. Submit sustainable design submittals not previously submitted.
  - 7. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
- C. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.
  - 1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
  - 2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
  - 3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
  - 4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
  - 5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems. Submit demonstration and training video recordings specified in Section 017900 "Demonstration and Training."
  - 6. Advise Owner of changeover in utility services.
  - 7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
  - 8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
  - 9. Complete final cleaning requirements.
  - 10. Touch up paint and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual

defects.

- D. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the Work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
- 1 Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
  - 2 Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

### 1.7 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

- A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, complete the following:
- 1 Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
  - 2 Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
  - 3 Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
  - 4 Submit pest-control final inspection report.
  - 5 Submit final completion photographic documentation.
- B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine acceptance a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.
1. Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

### 1.8 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order, starting with exterior areas first and proceeding from lowest floor to highest floor.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.

- e. Page number.
- 4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
  - a. PDF electronic file. Architect will return annotated file.

## 1.9 SUBMITTAL OF PROJECT WARRANTIES

- A. Time of Submittal: Submit written warranties on request of Architect for designated portions of the Work where warranties are indicated to commence on dates other than date of Substantial Completion, or when delay in submittal of warranties might limit Owner's rights under warranty.
- B. Partial Occupancy: Submit properly executed warranties within 15 days of completion of designated portions of the Work that are completed and occupied or used by Owner during construction period by separate agreement with Contractor.
- C. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of Project Manual.
- D. Warranty Electronic File: Provide warranties and bonds in PDF format. Assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single electronic PDF file with bookmarks enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.
  - 1. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect.
- E. Warranties in Paper Form:
  - 1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper.
  - 2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  - 3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
- F. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a designated portion of Project:
    - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    - c. Rake grounds that are not planted, mulched, or paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    - d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    - e. Remove snow and ice to provide safe access to building.
    - f. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
    - g. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
    - h. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
    - i. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.
    - j. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
    - k. Remove labels that are not permanent.
    - l. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
    - m. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
    - n. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
    - o. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.
    - p. Clean luminaires, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.
    - q. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

### 3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

- A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.
- B. Repair, or remove and replace, defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.
1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged

- transparent materials.
- 2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
  - a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.
- 3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
- 4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 017700



## SECTION 017823 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1 Operation and maintenance documentation directory manuals.
  - 2 Emergency manuals.
  - 3 Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - 4 Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - 5 Product maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit operation and maintenance manuals indicated. Provide content for each manual as specified in individual Specification Sections, and as reviewed and approved at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1 Architect will comment on whether content of operation and maintenance submittals is acceptable.
  - 2 Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operation and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1 Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect. Enable reviewer comments on draft submittals.
  - 2 Submit three paper copies. Architect will return one copy.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of each manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 15 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
  - 1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit copies of each corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.
- E. Comply with Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

## 1.5 FORMAT OF OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
  - 1 Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  - 2 File Names and Bookmarks: Bookmark individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.
- B. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard-copy, bound and labeled volumes.
  - 1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.
    - b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.
  - 2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  - 3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
  - 4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (215-by-280-mm) white bond paper.
  - 5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization of Manuals: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
  - 1 Title page.
  - 2 Table of contents.
  - 3 Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
  - 1. Subject matter included in manual.
  - 2. Name and address of Project.
  - 3. Name and address of Owner.
  - 4. Date of submittal.
  - 5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  - 6. Name and contact information for Construction Manager.
  - 7. Name and contact information for Architect.
  - 8. Name and contact information for Commissioning Authority.
  - 9. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
  - 10. Cross-reference to related systems in other operation and maintenance manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
  - 1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

## 1.7 EMERGENCY MANUALS

- A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each of the following:
  - 1 Type of emergency.
  - 2 Emergency instructions.
  - 3 Emergency procedures.
- C. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:
  - 1 Fire.

- 2 Flood.
- 3 Gas leak.
- 4 Water leak.
- 5 Power failure.
- 6 Water outage.
- 7 System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
- 8 Chemical release or spill.

D. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

E. Emergency Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

- 1 Instructions on stopping.
- 2 Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
- 3 Operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits.
- 4 Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
- 5 Special operating instructions and procedures.

## 1.8 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT OPERATION MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Operation Manual: Assemble a complete set of data indicating operation of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include information required for daily operation and management, operating standards, and routine and special operating procedures.

- 1 Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
- 2 Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

C. Descriptions: Include the following:

- 1 Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
- 2 Manufacturer's name.
- 3 Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
- 4 Equipment function.
- 5 Operating characteristics.
- 6 Limiting conditions.
- 7 Performance curves.

- 8 Engineering data and tests.
- 9 Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

D. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

- 1 Startup procedures.
- 2 Equipment or system break-in procedures.
- 3 Routine and normal operating instructions.
- 4 Regulation and control procedures.
- 5 Instructions on stopping.
- 6 Normal shutdown instructions.
- 7 Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
- 8 Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
- 9 Special operating instructions and procedures.

E. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

F. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color coding where required for identification.

## 1.9 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Systems and Equipment Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of data indicating maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system. Include manufacturers' maintenance documentation, preventive maintenance procedures and frequency, repair procedures, wiring and systems diagrams, lists of spare parts, and warranty information.

- 1 Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
- 2 Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.

B. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds as described below.

C. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Include the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins; include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - a. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
- 1 Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2 Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3 Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4 Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5 Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6 Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- F. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
- 1 Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2 Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- G. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- H. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- I. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.
- J. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
1. Do not use original project record documents as part of maintenance manuals.

#### 1.10 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- C. Source Information: List each product included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in

- Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- D. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
- 1 Product name and model number.
  - 2 Manufacturer's name.
  - 3 Color, pattern, and texture.
  - 4 Material and chemical composition.
  - 5 Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
- 1 Inspection procedures.
  - 2 Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - 3 List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - 4 Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  - 5 Repair instructions.
- F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- G. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 017823 SECTION

SECTION 017839 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1 Record Drawings.
  - 2 Record Specifications.
  - 3 Record Product Data.
  - 4 Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1 Section 017300 "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2 Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3 Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1 Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and one of file prints.
      - 2) Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal:
      - 1) Submit PDF electronic files of scanned record prints and three sets of prints. 2) Print each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit annotated PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit annotated PDF electronic files and directories of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.
- D. Reports: Submit written report indicating items incorporated into project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including revisions, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.



## 1.4 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised drawings as modifications are issued.
1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. Cross-reference record prints to corresponding photographic documentation.
  2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.
  6. Note alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.
- B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up record prints with Architect. When authorized, prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:
1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
  2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
  3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.
  4. Architect will furnish Contractor with one set of digital data files of the Contract Drawings for use in recording information.
    - a. See Section 013100 "Project Management and Coordination" for requirements related to use of Architect's digital data files.
    - b. Architect will provide data file layer information. Record markups in separate layers.

DRAWING" in a prominent location.

1. Record Prints: Organize record prints into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
2. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file with comment function enabled.
3. Record Digital Data Files: Organize digital data information into separate electronic files that correspond to each sheet of the Contract Drawings. Name each file with the sheet identification. Include identification in each digital data file.
4. Identification: As follows:
  - a. Project name.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
  - d. Name of Architect.
  - e. Name of Contractor.

## 1.5 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

- A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.
  - 1 Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2 Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
  - 3 Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
  - 4 For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
  - 5 Note related Change Orders, record Product Data, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Specifications as annotated PDF electronic file.

## 1.6 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.
- B. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.
  - 1 Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
  - 2 Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  - 3 Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- C. Format: Submit record Product Data as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked-up paper copy of Product Data.
  1. Include record Product Data directory organized by Specification Section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

#### 1.7 MISCELLANEOUS RECORD SUBMITTALS

- A. Assemble miscellaneous records required by other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record keeping and submittal in connection with actual performance of the Work. Bind or file miscellaneous records and identify each, ready for continued use and reference.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE OF RECORD DOCUMENTS

- A. Maintenance of Record Documents: Store record documents in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017839

## SECTION 017900 – DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.

#### 1.5 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Provide instruction that includes demonstration of operation, a description of -and maintenance procedures for, each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training: Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each system, piece of equipment or component, include instruction for the following as applicable:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
  - a. Emergency manuals.
  - b. Systems and equipment operation manuals.
  - c. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
  - d. Product maintenance manuals.
  - e. Project Record Documents.
  - f. Identification systems.
  - g. Warranties and bonds.
  - h. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
  - a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
  - a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
  - a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning.
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.

8. Repairs: Include the following:
  - a. Diagnosis instructions.
  - b. Repair instructions.
  - c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
  - e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

#### 1.6 PREPARATION

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

#### 1.7 INSTRUCTION

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed-on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  1. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.
- C. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

END OF SECTION 017900

SECTION 101423.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1 Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2 Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3 Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design and ICC A117.1

### 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
  - 1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Sandblasted polymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated to phenolic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
    - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.25 inch.
    - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
    - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.



## 2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.

- a. Edge Condition at Vertical and Horizontal Edges: Beveled.
- b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.

1 Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors, or adhesive.

2 Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille, typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

## 2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

A. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive; die cut to form characters or images as indicated on Drawings.

B. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:

1 Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.

2 Sign Mounting Fasteners:

- a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.

B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

- 1 Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
- 2 Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
- 3 Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
- 4 Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.

- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1 Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2 Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3 Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
    - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
  2. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.16

## SECTION 102113.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for supports that attach ceiling-hung compartments and floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments to overhead structural system.
- 2 Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
- 3 Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.

B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.

- 1 Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
- 2 Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
- 3 Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
- 4 Show locations of floor drains.
- 5 Show ceiling grid, ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.

1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

- 1 Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
- 2 Each type of hardware and accessory.

- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents and source.

- 1 Door Hinges: Two hinges with associated fasteners.
- 2 Latch and Keeper: Two latches and keepers with associated fasteners.
- 3 Door Bumper: One bumpers with associated fasteners.
- 4 Door Pull: Two door pulls with associated fasteners.
- 5 Fasteners: Twenty fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1 Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
- 2 Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS; TC-1

### A. Manufacturers: Provide products from one of the following:

1. ASI Global Partitions
2. Bradley Crop.
3. Bobrick
4. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
5. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
6. Metpar

### B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored, wall braced.

### C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.

### D. Door, Panel and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, no-sightline system, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.

1. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
3. Color and Pattern: Architect to select from standard manufactured colors by ASI Global Partitions (Basis of Design).

### E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; polymer.

1. Polymer Color and Pattern: Matching pilaster.

### F. Brackets (Fittings):

1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

### A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories for use in Office Toilet Rooms.

- 1 Material: Stainless steel.
- 2 Hinges: Manufacturer's standard integral hinge for solid-plastic doors, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
- 3 Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
- 4 Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
- 5 Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
- 6 Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.

B. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories for use in Locker Rooms.

- 1 Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch-thick stainless-steel continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through-bolts.
- 2 Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless-steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- 3 Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless-steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.
- 4 Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless-steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
- 5 Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless-steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.

C. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.

D. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

B. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.

B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.

C. Ceiling-Hung Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.

- D. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- E. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch-wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch-wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
    - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
  - 3. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.



- C. Ceiling-Hung Units: Secure pilasters to supporting structure and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so bottoms of doors are level with bottoms of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Secure pilasters to supporting construction and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so doors are level and aligned with panels when doors are in closed position.
- E. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.19

## SECTION 10 22 39 FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Manually operated, paired panel operable partitions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 06 Sections for wood framing and supports, and all blocking at head and jambs as required.
  - 2. Division 09 Sections for wall and ceiling framing at head and jambs.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified in writing by the operable partition manufacturer, as qualified to install the manufacturer's partition systems for work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Acoustical Performance: Test operable partitions in an independent acoustical laboratory in accordance with ASTM E90 test procedure and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 to attain no less than the STC rating specified. Provide a complete and unedited written test report by the testing laboratory upon request.
- C. Preparation of the opening shall conform to the criteria set forth per ASTM E557 *Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions*.
- D. The operable wall must be manufactured by a certified ISO-9001-2015 company or an equivalent quality control system.
- E. Indoor Air Quality: Operable partition, movable wall manufacturer's non-wood products must meet the SCS Indoor Advantage™ Gold Certification or equivalent. This approval guarantees conformance to indoor air concentrations meeting Indoor Advantage Gold Indoor Air Quality Certified to SCS-105 v4.2-2023 Conforms to ANSI/BIFMA M7.1 and X7.1 and the CDPH/EHLB Standard Method (CA 01350) v1.2-2017 conducted in an independent third-party air quality testing laboratory.

### 1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM International
  - 1. ASTM E557 Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions.
  - 2. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
  - 3. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 4. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
- B. Health Product Declaration Collaborative
  - 1. Health Product Declaration Open Standard v2.1
- C. International Standards Organization

1. ISO 14021 - Environmental Labels and Declarations - Self-Declared Environmental Claims (Type II Environmental Labeling).
  2. ISO 14025:2011-10, Environmental Labels and Declarations - Type III Environmental Declarations - Principles and Procedures.
  3. ISO 14040:2009-11, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Principles and Framework.
  4. ISO 14044:2006-10, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Requirements and Guidelines.
  5. ISO 21930 – Sustainability in Buildings and Civil Engineering Works — Core Rules for Environmental Product Declarations of Construction Products and Services.
- D. Other Standards
1. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Material descriptions, construction details, finishes, installation details, and operating instructions for each type of operable partition, component, and accessory specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of operable partitions. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other construction, and accessories. Indicate dimensions, weights, conditions at openings, and at storage areas, and required installation, storage, and operating clearances. Indicate location and installation requirements for hardware and track, including floor tolerances required and direction of travel. Indicate blocking to be provided by others.
- C. Setting Drawings: Show imbedded items and cutouts required in other work, including support beam punching template.
- D. Samples: Color samples demonstrating full range of finishes available by architect. Verification samples will be available in same thickness and material indicated for the work.
- E. Reports: Provide a complete and unedited written sound test report indicating glass thickness and spacing in test specimen matches product as submitted.
- F. Create spaces that are healthy for occupants.
  1. Furnish products and materials with Health Product Declaration (HPD), Manufacturer Inventory, or other material health disclosure documentation. Products without an HPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.
- G. Furnish materials that generate the least amount of pollution.
  1. Furnish products and materials that have third party verified environmental product declarations (EPD's). Consider products and materials that have optimized environmental performance (reduced life cycle impacts). Products without an EPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.
- H. Buy American: Folding door to be manufactured in the United States in compliance with applicable U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC) and U.S. Customs Service and Border Protections regulations and be labeled "Made in America".

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Clearly mark packages and panels with numbering systems used on Shop Drawings. Do not use permanent markings on panels.
- B. Protect panels during delivery, storage, and handling to comply with manufacturer's direction and as required to prevent damage.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide written warranty by manufacturer of operable partitions agreeing to repair or replace any components with manufacturing defects.

- B. Partition Warranty period: Three (3) years.
- C. Suspension System Warranty:
  - 1. OP-01: Five (5) years.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS, PRODUCTS, AND OPERATIONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Modernfold, Inc.(Basis of Design)
  - 2. Panelfold, Inc.
- B. Doors to be manufactured in the U.S.A.
- C. Products: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide the following product:

### 2.2 OPERATION

- A. OP-01: Acousti-Seal Encore - Paired Panel: Series of paired flat panels hinged together in pairs, manually operated, top supported with operable floor seals and automatic top seals.
- B. Final Closure:
  - 1. OP-01: Horizontally expanding panel edge with removable crank

### 2.3 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

- A. Nominal 4.25-inch (108mm) thick panels in manufacturer's standard 51-inch (1295mm) widths. All panel horizontal and vertical framing members fabricated from minimum 16-gage formed steel with overlapped and welded corners for rigidity. Top channel is reinforced to support suspension system components. Frame is designed so that full vertical edges of panels are of formed steel and provide concealed protection of the edges of the panel skin.
- B. Panel skin shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Roll-formed steel wrapping around panel edge. Panel skins shall be lock formed and welded directly to the frame for unitized construction. Acoustical ratings of panels with this construction minimum:
    - a. 54 STC
- C. Hinges for Panels, Closure Panels and Pocket Doors shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Full leaf butt hinges, attached directly to the panel frame with welded hinge anchor plates within panel to further support hinge mounting to frame. Lifetime warranty on hinges. Hinges mounted into panel edge or vertical astragal are not acceptable.
- D. Panel Trim: No vertical or horizontal trim required or allowed on edges of panels; minimal groove appearance at panel joints.
- E. Panel Weights:
  - 1. OP-01: 54 STC - 9.5 lbs./square foot

### 2.4 PANEL FINISH

- A. Panel finish shall be factory applied, Class "A" rated material. Finish shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Reinforced vinyl with woven backing weighing not less than 20 ounces (567 grams) per lineal yard.
- B. Panel Trim: Exposed panel trim of one consistent color:

## 1. OP-01: To Be Advised

## 2.5 SOUND SEALS

- A. Vertical Interlocking Sound Seals between panels: Aluminum astragals, with tongue and groove configuration in each panel edge. Rigid plastic astragals are not acceptable.
- B. Horizontal Top Seals shall be Modernfold SureSet™ automatic operable top seals, manually operated top seals not required or permitted.
- C. Horizontal bottom floor seals shall be Modernfold Sureset™ bottom seal:
  - 1. OP-01: Modernfold SM2 Bottom Seal. Manually activated seals providing nominal 2" (51mm) operating clearance with an operating range of + 0.50" (13mm) to -1.50" (38mm). Seal shall be operable from panel edge or face. Extended seal shall exert nominal 120 pounds (54 kg) downward force to the floor throughout operating range.

## 2.6 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. OP-01: #17 Suspension System
  - 1. Suspension Tracks: Minimum 11-gauge, 0.12-inch (3.04mm) roll-formed steel track, suitable for either direct mounting to a wood header or supported by adjustable steel hanger brackets, supporting the load-bearing surface of the track, connected to structural support by pairs of 0.38-inch (10mm) diameter threaded rods. Aluminum track is not acceptable.
    - a. Exposed track soffit: Steel, integral to track, and pre-painted off-white.
  - 2. Carriers: One all-steel trolley with steel tired ball bearing wheels per panel (except hinged panels). Non-steel tires are not acceptable.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM E557, operable partition manufacturer's written installation instructions, Drawings and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install operable partitions and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting have been completed.
- C. Match operable partitions by installing panels from marked packages in numbered sequence indicated on Shop Drawings.
- D. Broken, cracked, chipped, deformed or unmatched panels are not acceptable.

## 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean partition surfaces upon completing installation of operable partitions to remove dust, dirt, adhesives, and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to the manufacturer and Installer that ensure operable partitions are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operable partitions to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

### 3.4 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine flooring, structural support, and opening, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of operable partitions. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Demonstrate proper operation and maintenance procedures to Owner's representative.
- B. Provide Operation and Maintenance Manual to Owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 102239

## SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall guards- corner and crashguards.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.

- 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of handrail.

- B. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.

- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1 Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, 48-inch long units.
  - 2 Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  - 1 Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  - 2 Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  - 3 Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency.
- |                          |                |          |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------|
| Wall and Door Protection | Specifications | 102600-2 |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------|



Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1 Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- 2 Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1

## 2.3 WALL GUARDS

A. Opaque-Plastic Chair Rail: Standard-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on cover installed over continuous retainer.

1. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
  - a. Construction Specialties, Inc.(Basis of Design): Acrovyn SCR80N (crash rail)
  - b. Inpro;
  - c. Koroseal
  - d. Wallprotex
  - e. Others by Substitution
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.070-inch wall thickness.
  - a. Profile: Rounded bullnose profile, nominal 4 inches high by 3/4 inch deep.
  - b. Color and Texture: (Basis of Design) to be determined from standard solid colors and/or woodgrains.
- 1 Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
- 2 Bumper: Continuous, resilient bumper cushion(s).
- 3 End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
- 4 Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
- 5 Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.

B. Plastic Corner Guards

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Construction Specialties, Inc. (Basis of Design): SM-20MN
  - b. Inpro;
  - c. Koroseal
  - d. Wallprotex
  - e. Others by Substitution
2. Cover: Snap-on cover with surface mounted guards consisting of continuous retainer.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- C. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Adjust top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

## SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Public-use washroom accessories.
- 2 Private-use bathroom accessories.
- 3 Under lavatory guards.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 088300 "Mirrors" for frameless mirrors.
- 2 Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.
- 3 Section 102813.63 "Detention Toilet Accessories" for accessories designed for installation in detention facilities.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1 Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- 2 Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
- 3 Include electrical characteristics.

- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

- 1 Identify locations using room designations indicated.
- 2 Identify accessories using designations indicated.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1 Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
- 2 Warranty Period: **15** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

- A. Single-Roll Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:

1. Basis of Design: B-66997 Surface-Mounted Toilet Tissue Dispenser with Hood; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Satin finish stainless steel. Hood protects paper. Chrome-plated plastic spindle holds rolls up to 5-1/8" (130mm) diameter (1500 sheets). Unit 63/16"W, 6-3/16"H (155 x 155mm); hood projects 4-3/4" (120mm) from wall with full roll in place.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

**A. Combination Paper Towel Dispenser/Waste Receptacle:**

1. Basis of Design: B-3699 ClassicSeries® Surface-Mounted Paper Towel Dispenser/ Waste Receptacle; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Satin finish stainless steel. Seamless beveled flange. Dispenses 350 C-fold or 475 multifold towels. Knob-latch retains door. Removable waste container has 2-gal. (7.6-L) capacity. Stainless steel skirt for surface-mounting.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

**B. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:**

1. Basis of Design: B-2111 ClassicSeries® Surface-Mounted Soap Dispenser; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Vertical tank is satin-finish stainless steel. Valve dispenses all-purpose hand soaps. Capacity: 40-fl oz (1.2-L). Soap refill window. Concealed wall fastening. Hinged filler-top requires special key to open. Vandal resistant. Unit 4-3/4"W, 8-1/8"H (120 x 205mm); wall to push-button, 3-1/2" (90mm).
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Or Approved Equal.

**C. Grab Bars:**

1. Basis of Design: B-6806.99 1-1/2" Diameter Straight Grab Bar, Peened; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: 1-1/2" (38mm) diameter tubing, peened finish, constructed of 18gauge (1.2mm), type 304 satin-finish stainless steel tubing. Concealed mounting flange 1/8" (3mm) thick, type 304 stainless steel plate, 2"W x 3-1/8"H (50 x 80mm), with screw holes for concealed anchors. Provide cover of 22-gauge (0.8mm), type 304 stainless steel with satin finish, 3-1/4" (85mm) diameter to snap over mounting flange to conceal screws.

1) Lengths: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. AJW Architectural Products
- b. American Specialties, Inc.
- c. Bradley Corporation
- d. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- e. Or Approved Equal.

D. Sanitary Napkin Disposal:

1. Basis of Design: B-270 Contura Series® Surface-Mounted Sanitary Napkin Disposal (Women's only); Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.

- a. Description: Satin-finish stainless steel. Cover is drawn, one-piece construction; secured to cabinet with full-length stainless steel piano-hinge. Capacity: 1.0-gal. (3.8-L). Unit 7-1/2"W, 10"H, 3-13/16"D (190 x 255 x 95mm).

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Specialties, Inc.
- b. Bradley Corporation
- c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- d. Or Approved Equal.

E. Mirrors:

1. Basis of Design: B-165 2436 Channel-Frame Mirror; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.

- a. Description: 24"W x 36"H (61 x 91cm). One-piece, 1/2" x 1/2" x 3/8" (13 x 13 x 9.5mm) channel-frame. Type 430 stainless steel with bright-polished finish. Mitered corners. Frame screw permits easy replacement of glass. No. 1 quality, 1/4" (6mm) glass mirror; warranted against silver spoilage for 15 years. Galvanized steel back. Secured to concealed wall hanger with theft-resistant mounting.

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. AJW Architectural Products
- b. American Specialties, Inc.
- c. Bradley Corporation
- d. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- e. Or Approved Equal.

## F. Coat Hook:

1. Basis of Design: B-212 Clothes Hook with bumper; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Solid aluminum casting, matte finish. Rubber bumper protects wall or partition surfaces.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

## 2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

## A. Underlavatory Guard

- 1 Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
- 2 Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-andtheft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- F. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- G. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.



## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of [six] <Insert number> keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800

## SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

- a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1 Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semi-recessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- 2 Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

- D. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semi-recessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-1

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet:
  - 1. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.
- F. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.
  - 2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- J. Accessories:
  - 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
  - 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.

4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

- a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
- b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.

3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

## 2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-2

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

F. Door Material: Steel sheet.

G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.

2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Accessories:

- 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
- 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
- 4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

#### K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

- a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
- b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

- a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.

3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

#### 2.4 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-3

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed. And mounted directly on wall with no trim.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

F. Door Material: Steel sheet.

G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

- 1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.

- 2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Accessories:

- 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
- 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
- 4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

- a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
  - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
  - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  - a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.
3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

- 1 Weld joints and grind smooth.
- 2 Miter corners and grind smooth.
- 3 Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- 4 Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
- 5 Install door locks at factory.

- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

- 1 Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
- 2 Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.

- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.

- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

- 1 Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.

- 2 Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.

- 3 Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

- C. Identification:

- 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413



## SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.

- 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1 Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2 Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 3 Handles and Levers: Stainless steel.
  - 4 Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container FE-1: 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
- C. Clean-Agent Type (Halotron I) in Aluminum Container FE-2: UL-rated 5-B:C, 4.75-lb nominal capacity, with HFC Blend B agent and inert material in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

### 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS - MB-1

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.

B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

## SECTION 024119 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
- 2 Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
- 3 Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 011000 "Summary" for restrictions on use of the premises, Owner-occupancy requirements, and phasing requirements.
- 2 Section 015639 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection" for temporary protection of existing trees and plants that are affected by selective demolition.
- 3 Section 017300 "Execution" for cutting and patching procedures.
- 4 Section 013516 "Alteration Project Procedures" for general protection and work procedures for alteration projects.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- B. Remove and Salvage: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner ready for reuse.
- C. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- D. Existing to Remain: Leave existing items that are not to be removed and that are not otherwise indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
- E. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.

#### 1.4 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.
- B. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
  - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.

#### 1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
  - 1. Inspect and discuss condition of construction to be selectively demolished.
  - 2. Review structural load limitations of existing structure.
  - 3. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
  - 4. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that rely on substrates exposed by selective demolition operations.
  - 5. Review areas where existing construction is to remain and requires protection.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For refrigerant recovery technician.
- B. Engineering Survey: Submit engineering survey of condition of building.
- C. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including Drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property for dust control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- D. Warranties: Documentation indicating that existing warranties are still in effect after completion of selective demolition.

#### 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of items that have been removed and salvaged.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
  - 1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
    - a. Furniture
    - b. Drapery and accessories
    - c. Wall mounted Televisions in individual rooms
    - d. Appliances in individual rooms
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties. Notify warrantor before proceeding. Existing warranties include the following:
- B. Notify warrantor on completion of selective demolition, and obtain documentation verifying that existing system has been inspected and warranty remains in effect. Submit documentation at Project closeout.

## 1.11 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ASSE A10.6 and NFPA 241.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Review Project Record Documents of existing construction or other existing condition and hazardous material information provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in Project Record Documents.
- C. Engage a professional engineer to perform an engineering survey of condition of building to determine whether removing any element might result in structural deficiency or unplanned collapse of any portion of structure or adjacent structures during selective building demolition operations.
  - 1. Perform surveys as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from selective demolition activities.
- D. Steel Tendons: Locate tensioned steel tendons and include recommendations for de-tensioning.
- E. Verify that hazardous materials have been remediated before proceeding with building demolition operations.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.

1. Owner will arrange to shut off indicated services/systems when requested by Contractor.
2. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
3. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
4. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
  - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - b. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material and leave in place.
  - c. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - d. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - e. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
  - f. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  - g. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material and leave in place.

### 3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 5 Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 6 Provide temporary weather protection, during interval between selective demolition of existing construction on exterior surfaces and new construction, to prevent water leakage and damage to structure and interior areas.
  - 7 Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 8 Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.
  - 9 Comply with requirements for temporary enclosures, dust control, heating, and cooling specified in Section 015000 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."
- C. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
  1. Strengthen or add new supports when required during progress of selective demolition.
- D. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.



## 1.SELECTIVE DEMOLITION, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
2. Proceed with selective demolition systematically, from higher to lower level. Complete selective demolition operations above each floor or tier before disturbing supporting members on the next lower level.
  3. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  4. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  5. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  6. Maintain fire watch during and for at least 2 hours after flame-cutting operations.
  7. Maintain adequate ventilation when using cutting torches.
  8. Remove decayed, vermin-infested, or otherwise dangerous or unsuitable materials and promptly dispose of off-site.
  9. Remove structural framing members and lower to ground by method suitable to avoid free fall and to prevent ground impact or dust generation.
  10. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  11. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
- 2 Clean salvaged items.
  - 3 Pack or crate items after cleaning. Identify contents of containers.
  - 4 Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  - 5 Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- E. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
- 1 Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  - 2 Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  - 3 Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  - 4 Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

- F. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by Architect, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition **and cleaned** and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

### 3.6 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION PROCEDURES FOR SPECIFIC MATERIALS

- A. Concrete: Demolish in sections. Cut concrete full depth at junctures with construction to remain and at regular intervals using power-driven saw, and then remove concrete between saw cuts.
- B. Masonry: Demolish in small sections. Cut masonry at junctures with construction to remain, using power-driven saw, and then remove masonry between saw cuts.
- C. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade: Saw-cut perimeter of area to be demolished, and then break up and remove.
- D. Resilient Floor Coverings: Remove floor coverings and adhesive according to recommendations in RFCI's "Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings." Do not use methods requiring solvent-based adhesive strippers.
- E. Roofing: Remove no more existing roofing than what can be covered in one day by new roofing and so that building interior remains watertight and weathertight. See Section 075556 "Fluid-Applied Protected Membrane Roofing" for new roofing requirements.
  - 1 Remove existing roof membrane, flashings, copings, and roof accessories.
  - 2 Remove existing roofing system down to substrate.

### 3.7 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and legally dispose.
  - 3 Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 4 Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 5 Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.
  - 6 Comply with requirements specified in Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 024119

## SECTION 042000 - UNIT MASONRY

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 1.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Concrete block.
- B. Mortar and grout.
- C. Reinforcement and anchorage.
- D. Flashings.
- E. Accessories.

## 1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 061000 - Rough Carpentry: Nailing strips built into masonry.
- B. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing control and expansion joints.

## 1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures; 2016.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM A240/A240M - Standard Specification for Chromium and Chromium-Nickel Stainless Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip for Pressure Vessels and for General Applications; 2016.
- D. ASTM A615/A615M - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Carbon-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement; 2016.
- E. ASTM A641/A641M - Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Carbon Steel Wire; 2009a (Reapproved 2014).
- F. ASTM A666 - Standard Specification for Annealed or Cold-Worked Austenitic Stainless Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bar; 2015.
- G. ASTM A1064/A1064M - Standard Specification for Carbon-Steel Wire and Welded Wire Reinforcement, Plain and Deformed, for Concrete; 2017.
- H. ASTM C55 - Standard Specification for Concrete Building Brick; 2017.
- I. ASTM C90 - Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units; 2016a.
- J. ASTM C91/C91M - Standard Specification for Masonry Cement; 2012.
- K. ASTM C129 - Standard Specification for Nonloadbearing Concrete Masonry Units; 2017.
- L. ASTM C140/C140M - Standard Test Methods of Sampling and Testing Concrete Masonry Units and Related Units; 2017a.
- M. ASTM C150/C150M - Standard Specification for Portland Cement; 2018.
- N. ASTM C207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes; 2006 (Reapproved 2011).
- O. ASTM C270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry; 2014a.
- P. ASTM C404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout; 2011.
- Q. ASTM C476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry; 2018.
- R. ASTM C780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plain and Reinforced Unit Masonry; 2017. S. ASTM C979/C979M - Standard Specification for Pigments for Integrally Colored Concrete; 2016.

- T. ASTM D226/D226M - Standard Specification for Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt Used in Roofing and Waterproofing; 2017.
- U. ASTM D4637/D4637M - Standard Specification for EPDM Sheet Used in Single-Ply Roof Membrane; 2015.
- V. BIA Technical Notes No. 7 - Water Penetration Resistance – Design and Detailing; 2017.
- W. TMS 402/602 - Building Code Requirements and Specification for Masonry Structures; 2016.

#### 1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Preinstallation Meeting: Convene a preinstallation meeting one week before starting work of this section; require attendance by all relevant installers.

#### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide data for masonry units, fabricated wire reinforcement, mortar, and masonry accessories.
- C. Manufacturer's Certificate: Certify that masonry units meet or exceed specified requirements.

#### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with provisions of TMS 402/602, except where exceeded by requirements of the contract documents.
  - 1. Maintain one copy of each document on project site.

#### 1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, handle, and store masonry units by means that will prevent mechanical damage and contamination by other materials. PART 2

### PRODUCTS

#### 2.01 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Concrete Block: Comply with referenced standards and as follows:
  - 1. Size: Standard units with nominal face dimensions of 16 by 8 inches and nominal depths as indicated on drawings for specific locations.
  - 2. Load-Bearing Units: ASTM C90, normal weight.
    - a. Both hollow and solid block, as indicated.
    - b. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture where indicated.
    - c. Pattern: smooth face, where indicated on drawings.
  - 3. Non-Loadbearing Units: ASTM C129., light weight
    - a. Both hollow and solid block, as indicated.
    - b. Exposed Faces: Manufacturer's standard color and texture where indicated.
    - c. Pattern: Split-faced, vertical scored split-face, where indicated on drawings.

## 2.02 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M, Type S.
- B. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I; color as required to produce approved color sample.
- C. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.
- D. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C404.
- E. Water: Clean and potable.
- F. Accelerating Admixture: Nonchloride type for use in cold weather.

## 2.03 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1 Blok-Lok Limited: [www.blok-lok.com](http://www.blok-lok.com).
  - 2 Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; X-Seal Anchor: [www.h-b.com/#sle](http://www.h-b.com/#sle).
  - 3 WIRE-BOND; [www.wirebond.com/#sle](http://www.wirebond.com/#sle).
  - 4 Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A615/A615M, Grade 60 (60,000 psi), deformed billet bars; galvanized.
- C. Joint Reinforcement: Use ladder type joint reinforcement where vertical reinforcement is involved and truss type elsewhere, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement: Truss or ladder type; ASTM A1064/A1064M steel wire, mill galvanized to ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3; 0.1483 inch side rods with 0.1483 inch cross rods; width as required to provide not more than 1 inch and not less than 1/2 inch of mortar coverage on each exposure.
- E. Strap Anchors: Bent steel shapes, 1-1/2 inch width, 0.105 inch thick, 24 inch length, with 1-1/2 inch long, 90 degree bend at each end to form a U or Z shape or with cross pins, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.
- F. Flexible Anchors: 2-piece anchors that permit differential movement between masonry and building frame, sized to provide not less than 5/8 inch of mortar coverage from masonry face.
  - 1. Steel frame: Crimped wire anchors for welding to frame, 0.25 inch thick, with trapezoidal wire ties 0.1875 inch thick, hot dip galvanized to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.
- G. Metal-to-Metal Fasteners: Self-drilling, self-tapping screws; corrosion resistant finish or hot dip galvanized to ASTM A153/A153M.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. ITW Commercial Construction North America; Teks Select Series: [www.ITWBuildex.com](http://www.ITWBuildex.com).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## 2.04 FLASHINGS

- A. Copper/Rubberized Asphalt Flashing: 5 oz/sq ft copper sheet coated with elastic asphalt compound.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advanced Building Products, Inc; Copper Fabric Flashing: [www.advancedbuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.advancedbuildingproducts.com/#sle).
    - b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: [www.h-b.com/sle](http://www.h-b.com/sle).
    - c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Stainless Steel/Polymer Fabric Flashing: ASTM A240/A240M; 2 mil type 304 stainless steel sheet bonded on one side to one sheet of polymer fabric.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc; Mighty-Flash Stainless Flashing: [www.h-b.com/#sle](http://www.h-b.com/#sle).
- b. York Manufacturing, Inc; Multi-Flash SS: [www.yorkmfg.com/#sle](http://www.yorkmfg.com/#sle).
- c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## C. EPDM Flashing: ASTM D4637/D4637M, Type I, 0.040 inch thick.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: [www.h-b.com/sle](http://www.h-b.com/sle).
- b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## D. Rubberized Asphalt Flashing: Self-adhering polymer modified asphalt sheet; 40 mils (0.040 inch) minimum total thickness; with cross laminated polyethylene top and bottom surfaces.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Advanced Building Products, Inc; Strip-N-Flash: [www.advancedbuildingproducts.com/#sle](http://www.advancedbuildingproducts.com/#sle).
- b. York Manufacturing, Inc; York Seal: [www.yorkmfg.com/#sle](http://www.yorkmfg.com/#sle).
- c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## E. Stainless Steel Flashing: ASTM A666, Type 304, soft temper; 26 gage, 0.0187 inch thick; finish 2B to 2D.

## 2.05 ACCESSORIES

## A. Preformed Control Joints: Rubber material. Provide with corner and tee accessories, fused joints.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Blok-Lok Limited: [www.blok-lok.com](http://www.blok-lok.com).
- b. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: [www.h-b.com/sle](http://www.h-b.com/sle).
- c. WIRE-BOND; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.wirebond.com/#sle](http://www.wirebond.com/#sle).
- d. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## B. Joint Filler: Closed cell polyvinyl chloride; oversized 50 percent to joint width; self-expanding; in maximum lengths available.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Hohmann & Barnard, Inc: [www.h-b.com/sle](http://www.h-b.com/sle).
- b. WIRE-BOND; \_\_\_\_\_: [www.wirebond.com/#sle](http://www.wirebond.com/#sle).
- c. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

## C. Building Paper: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I ("No.15") asphalt felt.

## D. Nailing Strips: Softwood lumber, preservative treated; as specified in Section 061000.

## E. Termination Bars: Stainless steel; compatible with membrane and adhesives.

## F. Drip Edge: Stainless steel; compatible with membrane and adhesives.

## G. Lap Sealants and Tapes: As recommended by flashing manufacturer; compatible with membrane and adhesives.

## H. Cleaning Solution: Non-acidic, not harmful to masonry work or adjacent materials.

## 2.06 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXING

## A. Mortar for Unit Masonry: ASTM C270, using the Proportion Specification.

- 1 Masonry below grade and in contact with earth: Type S.
- 2 Exterior, loadbearing masonry: Type S.
- 3 Exterior, non-loadbearing masonry: Type S.
- 4 Interior, loadbearing masonry: Type N.
- 5 Interior, non-loadbearing masonry: Type O.

- B. Grout: ASTM C476; consistency required to fill completely volumes indicated for grouting; fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less; coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.
- C. Admixtures: Add to mixture at manufacturer's recommended rate and in accordance with manufacturer's instructions; mix uniformly.
- D. Mixing: Use mechanical batch mixer and comply with referenced standards. PART 3

## EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.
- B. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.
- C. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.

### 3.02 PREPARATION

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied for installation under other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.

### 3.03 COLD AND HOT WEATHER REQUIREMENTS

- A. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to minimum 40 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.
- B. Maintain materials and surrounding air temperature to maximum 90 degrees F prior to, during, and 48 hours after completion of masonry work.

### 3.04 COURSING

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
  - 1 Bond: Running.
  - 2 Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
  - 3 Mortar Joints: Concave.

### 3.05 PLACING AND BONDING

- A. Lay solid masonry units in full bed of mortar, with full head joints, uniformly jointed with other work.
- B. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- C. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.
- D. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
- E. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- F. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- G. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- H. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members with a control joint as indicated.

- I. Isolate top joint of masonry partitions from horizontal structural framing members and slabs or decks with compressible joint filler.

### 3.06 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - GENERAL, SINGLE WYTHE MASONRY, AND CAVITY WALL MASONRY

- A. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or specified under specific wall type, install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
- B. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings.  
Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
- C. Place continuous joint reinforcement in first and second joint below top of walls.
- D. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.
- E. Fasten anchors to structural framing and embed in masonry joints as masonry is laid. Unless otherwise indicated on drawings or closer spacing is indicated under specific wall type, space anchors at maximum of 36 inches horizontally and 24 inches vertically.

### 3.07 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE - SINGLE WYTHE MASONRY

- A. Install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
- B. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings.  
Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
- C. Place continuous joint reinforcement in first and second joint below top of walls.
- D. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.

### 3.08 MASONRY FLASHINGS

- A. Whether or not specifically indicated, install masonry flashing to divert water to exterior at all locations where downward flow of water will be interrupted.
  - 1 Extend flashings full width at such interruptions and at least 6 inches, minimum, into adjacent masonry or turn up flashing ends at least 1 inch, minimum, to form watertight pan at non-masonry construction.
  - 2 Remove or cover protrusions or sharp edges that could puncture flashings.
  - 3 Seal lapped ends and penetrations of flashing before covering with mortar.
- B. Extend metal flashings to within 1/2 inch of exterior face of masonry and adhere to top of stainless steel angled drip with hemmed edge.
- C. Extend plastic, laminated, EPDM, and flashings to within 1/4 inch of exterior face of masonry.
- D. Lap end joints of flashings at least 6 inches, minimum, and seal watertight with flashing sealant/adhesive.

### 3.09 LINTELS

- A. Install loose steel lintels over openings.
- B. Install reinforced unit masonry lintels over openings where steel or precast concrete lintels are not scheduled.
  - 1 Openings to 42 inches: Place two, No. 4 reinforcing bars 1 inch from bottom web.
  - 2 Openings from 42 inches to 78 inches: Place two, No. 5 reinforcing bars 1 inch from bottom web.
  - 3 Openings over 78 inches: Reinforce openings as detailed.
  - 4 Do not splice reinforcing bars.
  - 5 Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
  - 6 Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
  - 7 Allow masonry lintels to attain specified strength before removing temporary supports.



**3.10 GROUTED COMPONENTS**

- A. Reinforce bond beams with 2, No. 5 bars, 1 inch from bottom web.
- B. Lap splices minimum 24 bar diameters.
- C. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
- D. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
- E. At bearing locations, fill masonry cores with grout for a minimum 12 inches either side of opening.

**3.11 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS**

- A. Do not continue horizontal joint reinforcement through control or expansion joints.
- B. Install preformed control joint device in continuous lengths. Seal butt and corner joints in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Size control joints as indicated on drawings; if not indicated, 3/4 inch wide and deep.
- D. Form expansion joint as detailed on drawings.

**3.12 BUILT-IN WORK**

- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door frames, fabricated metal frames, window frames, anchor bolts, and plates and other items to be built into the work and furnished under other sections.
- B. Install built-in items plumb, level, and true to line.
- C. Bed anchors of metal door and glazed frames in adjacent mortar joints. Fill frame voids solid with grout.
  - 1. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches from framed openings.
- D. Do not build into masonry construction organic materials that are subject to deterioration.

**3.13 TOLERANCES**

- A. Maximum Variation from Alignment of Columns: 1/4 inch.
- B. Maximum Variation from Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch.
- C. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 ft and 1/2 inch in 20 ft or more.
- D. Maximum Variation from Plumb: 1/4 inch per story non-cumulative; 1/2 inch in two stories or more.
- E. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 ft and 1/4 inch in 10 ft; 1/2 inch in 30 ft.
- F. Maximum Variation of Mortar Joint Thickness: Head joint, minus 1/4 inch, plus 3/8 inch.
- G. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.

**3.14 CUTTING AND FITTING**

- A. Cut and fit for chases, pipes, conduit, and sleeves. Coordinate with other sections of work to provide correct size, shape, and location.
- B. Obtain approval prior to cutting or fitting masonry work not indicated or where appearance or strength of masonry work may be impaired.

**3.15 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. An independent testing agency will perform field quality control tests, as specified in Section 014000 - Quality Requirements.
- B. Concrete Masonry Unit Tests: Test each variety of concrete unit masonry in accordance with ASTM C140/C140M for compliance with requirements of this specification.
- C. Mortar Tests: Test each type of mortar in accordance with ASTM C780, testing with same frequency as masonry samples.

**3.16 CLEANING**

- A. Remove excess mortar and mortar droppings.
- B. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.

- C. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- D. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

3.17 PROTECTION

- A. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at exposed external corners that are subject to damage by construction activities.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 047300 CULTURED STONE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Cultured Stone Veneer.
- B. Architectural Trim Stone.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 04 20 00 - Unit Masonry.
- B. Section 06 10 00 -Rough Carpentry.
- C. Section 05 40 00 -Cold-Formed Metal Framing.
- D. Section 07 27 00 - Air Barriers.
- E. Section 07 28 00 -Underlayments.\*
- F. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing & Trim.
- G. Section 07 90 00 -Joint Protection.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ASTM C 39 -Standard Test Method for Compressive Strength of Cylindrical Concrete Specimens.
- B. ASTM C 67 -Standard Test Methods for Sampling and Testing Brick and Structural Clay Tile.
- C. ASTM C 177 -Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus.
- D. ASTM C 192 -Standard Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Laboratory.
- E. ASTM C 482 -Standard Test Method for Bond Strength of Ceramic Tile to Portland Cement.
- F. ASTM C 1670 -Standard Specification for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer Units.
- G. ASTM C 1780 -Standard Practice for Installation Methods for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer
- H. UL 723 -Standard for Safety for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- I. ICC ES AC 51 Acceptance Criteria for Manufactured Stone Veneer
- J. Masonry Veneer Manufactures Association (MVMA): Installation Guide for Adhered Manufactured Stone Veneer

#### 1.4 DESIGN / PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Building Code Compliance:

###### 1. International Code Council (ICC):

- a. ES Report: ICC ESR 1364
- b. UBC Standard No. 14-1, Kraft Waterproof Building Paper.

###### 2. Tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.

##### B. Average Recycled Content of 58 percent validated by 3rd party analysis.

##### C. Backup Wall System and installation method for manufactured stone veneer shall meet the requirements of ASTM C 1780–Standard Practice for Installation Methods for Adhered Manufactured Stone Masonry Veneer.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

##### A. Submit under provisions of Section 01 30 00 -Administrative Requirements.

##### B. Product Data: Manufacturer’s data sheets on each product to be used, including:

- 1. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
- 2. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
- 3. Installation standards and methods.

##### C. Shop Drawings: Submit drawings depicting proper installation and flashing techniques. Coordinate locations with those found on the Drawings.

##### D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color sample representing manufacturer’s full range of available colors and textures.

##### E. Verification Samples: For each finish product specified, two samples, minimum size 8 inches (203 mm) square, representing actual product, color, and texture.

##### F. Manufacturer’s Certificates: Certify products meet or exceed specified requirements.

##### G. Closeout Submittals: Provide manufacturer’s maintenance instructions that include recommendations for cleaning and repair of components.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

##### A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Manufacturer who is a current member of Masonry Veneer Manufacturers Association (MVMA) with a minimum of 5 years documented experience manufacturing and marketing all Manufactured Stone products of the type specified in this section.

- B. Installer Qualifications: Company with documented experience in installation of manufactured masonry of the type specified including at least five projects within a 400 mile (650km) radius of the Project.
- C. Mock-Up: Provide a mock-up for evaluation of surface preparation techniques and application workmanship.
  - 1. Finish panel of size and location designated by Architect.
  - 2. Minimum size 3 foot by 3 foot and showing transition to adjacent materials anticipated.
  - 3. Do not proceed with remaining work until workmanship, color, texture and pattern are approved by Architect.
  - 4. Refinish mock-up area as required to produce acceptable work.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE & HANDLING

- A. Store and handle products in conformance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations.
- B. Store products off the ground on pallets in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- C. Protect materials from precipitation and freezing temperatures. Product with visible frozen moisture should not be installed.

#### 1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.
- B. Cold weather installations: Maintain materials and ambient temperature at minimum 40 degrees F (4 degrees C) prior to, during, and 48 hours after installation.
- C. Hot weather installations: Mist water on the scratch coated surface and the backs of the masonry veneer for installations that exceed 90 degrees (32 degrees C).

#### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Provide manufacturers 50-year limited warranty.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Boulder Collection: Split Fieldstone by Halquist Stone. Mike Schwoch, East Coast Sales Representative (262) 246-5721, [schwochm@halquiststone.com](mailto:schwochm@halquiststone.com)
  - 1. Size: 3" to 10"; Natural Gray mortar
  - 2. Location: Masonry Piers – all new and existing
  - 3. Substitutions: Not permitted.
- B. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.

## 2.2 MANUFACTURED STONE VENEER–GENERAL

- A. Manufactured Stone Veneer Performance Requirements: Conforming to ASTM C 1670 and as follows:
  - 1. Compressive Strength: Not less than 1800 psi (12.4 MPa) average for 5 specimens and not less than 2100 psi (14.4 MPa) for individual specimen when tested in accordance with ASTM C 39 & ASTM C 192.
  - 2. Bond Between Manufactured Masonry Unit, Mortar and Backing: Not less than 50 psi (345 kPa) when tested in accordance with ASTM C 482 using Type S mortar.
  - 3. Thermal Resistance: R-value of not less than 0.355 per inch (25.4 mm) of thickness when tested in accordance with ASTM C 177.
  - 4. Freeze/Thaw: No disintegration and less than 3 percent weight loss when tested in accordance with ASTM C 67.
  - 5. Water Absorption: Tested in accordance with UBC 15-5 9-22% depending on density value.
  - 6. Unit Weight: Not more than 15 psf (73 kg/m<sup>2</sup>) saturated.
  - 7. Surface Burning Characteristics: Not more than the following when tested in accordance with UL 723:
    - a. Flamespread: 25.
    - b. Smoke Development: 450.
  - 8. UV Stable -Mineral oxide pigments.
- B. Certifications:
  - 1. ICC ES AC 51 Acceptance Criteria for Manufactured Stone Veneer
  - 2. ICC Evaluation Service -Evaluation Report ESR 1364 & ASTM C 1670.
  - 3. HUD Material Release Number 1316c
  - 4. UL Tested for Surface Burning Characteristics
  - 5. Texas Department of Insurance Product Evaluation EC-21
  - 6. Florida Product Approval Number FL15047

## 2.3 ARCHITECTURAL CUT STONES

- A. Capstones:
  - 1. Nominal Size: as shown on drawings.
  - 2. Color : Indiana Bedford Buff, honed finish

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until substrates have been properly prepared in conformance with ASTM C 1780 for the backup wall system indicated on the Drawings.

- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install manufactured stone masonry veneer in accordance with MVMA Installation Guide for Adhered Manufactured Stone Veneer, ASTM C 1780 and applicable Codes.
- C. Install/Apply Related Materials in accordance with type of substrate and manufactured stone veneer manufacture's installation instructions.
- D. General:
  - 1. Walls: Provide with Single Color and Texture throughout.
  - 2. Walls: Provide with Blended Color / Texture specified.
  - 3. Special Shapes: Color to match stones specified.
    - a. Provide Stones manufactured specifically for installation at corners where located on the Drawings.
    - b. Install Quoins on corners as indicated on the Drawings.
  - 4. Mortar Joints
    - a. Style:
      - 1) Tight Fit joints. 2) Standard 1/2 inch tooled 3) Wide joint 4) Wide Overgrout
    - b. Strike all grout joints flush.
    - c. Tool all grout joints.
    - d. Overgrout all grout joints.
  - 5. Stone Direction:
    - a. Random placement
    - b. Horizontal placement
    - c. Vertical placement
  - 6. Caps: Install Capstones where located on the Drawings.
- E. Seal all joints at wall openings and penetrations with a sealant approved for use with masonry products.
- F. Flashing: Coordinate with Flashings specified in Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim.
- G. Rainscreen: Coordinate with Rainscreens specified in Section 07 27 00 -Air Barriers.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Services: Provide periodic site visits as requested by Architect. Report any discrepancies to the Contractor with copies to the Architect within 24 hours of each visit.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean manufactured masonry in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect finished work from rain and work on either side of the wall during and for 48 hours following installation.
- B. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- C. Clean prior to project closeout.
- D. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 061000 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1 Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 2 Wood blocking and nailers.
  - 3 Wood furring.
  - 4 Wood sleepers.
  - 5 Plywood backing panels.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.
- C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- D. OSB: Oriented strand board.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
  - 1 Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
  - 2 For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
  - 1 Wood-preservative-treated wood.
  - 2 Power-driven fasteners.
  - 3 Post-installed anchors.
  - 4 Metal framing anchors.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

- 1 Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
- 2 For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
- 3 Dress lumber, S2S, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Lumber: 19 percent unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.

1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium. Do not use inorganic boron (SBX) for sill plates.

- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:

- 1 Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
- 2 Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:

- 1 Blocking.
- 2 Nailers.
- 3 Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
- 4 Furring.

B. Concealed Boards: 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:

- 1 Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 3 grade; SPIB.
- 2 Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- 3 Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Standard or No. 3 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- 4 Eastern softwoods; No. 3 Common grade; NeLMA.
- 5 Northern species; No. 3 Common grade; NLGA.
- 6 Western woods; Standard or No. 3 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

## 2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1, Exterior, C-C Plugged, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 3/4-inch nominal thickness.

## 2.5 FASTENERS

A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, ICC-ES AC58, ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

- 1 Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
- 2 Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels.
- C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.
- D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- E. Comply with AWWA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- F. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- G. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1 Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
  - 2 Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
  - 3 ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.
- H. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 WOOD BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless

otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 061000

064116 - PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets.
- 2 Wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips for installing plastic-laminate-clad architectural cabinets that are not concealed within other construction.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood furring, blocking, shims, and hanging strips required for installing cabinets that are concealed within other construction before cabinet installation.
- 2 Section 123623.13 "Plastic-Laminate-Clad Countertops."

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of framing, blocking, furring, reinforcements, and other related units of Work specified in other Sections to support loads imposed by installed and fully loaded cabinets.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical-treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings:

- 1 Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
- 2 Show large-scale details.
- 3 Show locations and sizes of furring, blocking, and hanging strips, including concealed blocking and reinforcement specified in other Sections.
- 4 Show locations and sizes of cutouts and holes for items installed in plastic-laminate architectural cabinets.
- 5 Apply AWI Quality Certification Program label to Shop Drawings.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's or manufacturer's standard size.

1. Plastic Laminates: 12 by 12 inches, for each type, color, pattern, and surface finish required.

a. Provide one sample applied to core material with specified edge material applied to one edge.

2. Thermoset Decorative Panels: 12 by 12 inches, for each color, pattern, and surface finish.

a. Provide edge banding on one edge.

3. Exposed Cabinet Hardware and Accessories: One full-size unit for each type and finish.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

C. Evaluation Reports: For fire-retardant-treated materials, from ICC-ES.

D. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate products similar to those required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in AWI's Quality Certification Program.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not deliver cabinets until painting and similar finish operations that might damage architectural cabinets have been completed in installation areas. Store cabinets in installation areas or in areas where environmental conditions comply with requirements specified in "Field Conditions" Article.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install cabinets until building is enclosed, wet-work is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 25 and 55 percent during the remainder of the construction period.
- B. Field Measurements: Where cabinets are indicated to fit to other construction, verify dimensions of other construction by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings. Coordinate fabrication schedule with construction progress to avoid delaying the Work.
  - 1. Locate concealed framing, blocking, and reinforcements that support cabinets by field measurements before being enclosed/concealed by construction, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PLASTIC-LAMINATE-CLAD ARCHITECTURAL CABINETS

- A. Quality Standard: Unless otherwise indicated, comply with the Architectural Woodwork Standards for grades of cabinets indicated for construction, finishes, installation, and other requirements.
  - 1 Provide labels and certificates from AWI certification program indicating that woodwork complies with requirements of grades specified.
  - 2 The Contract Documents contain requirements that are more stringent than the referenced quality standard. Comply with requirements of Contract Documents in addition to those of the referenced quality standard.
- B. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Custom.
- C. Type of Construction: Face frame.
- D. Door and Drawer-Front Style: Flush overlay.
  - 1. Reveal Dimension: As indicated.
- E. High-Pressure Decorative Laminate: NEMA LD 3, grades as indicated or if not indicated, as required by quality standard.
  - 1 Formica®
  - 2 Wilsonart
  - 3 Panoloam Industries
  - 4 Others by Substitution
- F. Laminate Cladding for Exposed Surfaces:
  - 1 Horizontal Surfaces: Grade HGS.
  - 2 Post-formed Surfaces: Grade HGP.
  - 3 Vertical Surfaces: Grade VGS.
  - 4 Edges: Grade HGS.
  - 5 Pattern Direction: Vertically for drawer fronts, doors, and fixed panels.



## G. Materials for Semiexposed Surfaces:

1. Surfaces Other Than Drawer Bodies: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
  - a. Edges of Plastic-Laminate Shelves: PVC T-mold matching laminate in color, pattern, and finish.
  - b. Edges of Thermoset Decorative Panel Shelves: PVC or polyester edge banding.
  - c. For semiexposed backs of panels with exposed plastic-laminate surfaces, provide surface of high-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade VGS.
2. Drawer Sides and Backs: Solid-hardwood lumber.
3. Drawer Bottoms: Hardwood plywood.

H. Dust Panels: 1/4-inch plywood or tempered hardboard above compartments and drawers unless located directly under tops.

I. Concealed Backs of Panels with Exposed Plastic-Laminate Surfaces: High-pressure decorative laminate, NEMA LD 3, Grade BKL.

J. Drawer Construction: Fabricate with exposed fronts fastened to subfront with mounting screws from interior of body.

1. Join subfronts, backs, and sides with glued rabbeted joints supplemented by mechanical fasteners or glued dovetail joints.

K. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: Provide materials and products that result in colors and textures of exposed laminate surfaces complying with the following requirements:

1. Match Architect's sample.

## 2.2 WOOD MATERIALS

A. Wood Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.

1. Wood Moisture Content: 8 to 13 percent.

B. Composite Wood and Agrifiber Products: Provide materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard for each type of architectural cabinet and quality grade specified unless otherwise indicated.

- 1 Medium-Density Fiberboard (MDF): ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.
- 2 Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.
- 3 Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.
- 4 Thermoset Decorative Panels: Particleboard or MDF finished with thermally fused, melamine-impregnated decorative paper and complying with requirements of NEMA LD 3, Grade VGL, for Test Methods 3.3, 3.4, 3.6, 3.8, and 3.10.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Fire-Retardant-Treated Materials, General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

- 1 Use treated materials that comply with requirements of referenced quality standard. Do not use materials that are warped, discolored, or otherwise defective.
- 2 Use fire-retardant-treatment formulations that do not bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes. Do not use colorants to distinguish treated materials from untreated materials.
- 3 Identify fire-retardant-treated materials with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency in the form of removable paper label or imprint on surfaces that will be concealed from view after installation.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E 84, with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

- 1 Kiln-dry lumber and plywood after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 and 15 percent, respectively.
- 2 For items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use organic resin chemical formulation.
- 3 Mill lumber after treatment within limits set for wood removal that do not affect listed fire-test-response characteristics, using a woodworking shop certified by testing and inspecting agency.
- 4 Mill lumber before treatment and implement procedures during treatment and drying processes that prevent lumber from warping and developing discolorations from drying sticks or other causes, marring, and other defects affecting appearance of architectural cabinets.

## 2.4 CABINET HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide cabinet hardware and accessory materials associated with architectural cabinets.

B. Butt Hinges: 2-3/4-inch, five-knuckle steel hinges made from 0.095-inch-thick metal, and as follows:

- 1 Semiconcealed Hinges for Flush Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01361.
- 2 Semiconcealed Hinges for Overlay Doors: BHMA A156.9, B01521.

C. Back-Mounted Pulls: BHMA A156.9, B02011.

1. Gatehouse: Bar Cabinet Pull D1159-128SN; Satin Nickel Finish, 128mm center to center

D. Catches: Magnetic catches, BHMA A156.9, B03141.

E. Adjustable Shelf Standards and Supports: BHMA A156.9, B04071; with shelf rests, B04081.

F. Shelf Rests: BHMA A156.9, B04013; metal.

G. Drawer Slides: BHMA A156.9.

1. Grade 1 and Grade 2: Side mounted and extending under bottom edge of drawer.
  - a. Type: Full extension.
  - b. Material: Zinc-plated steel with polymer rollers.

2. Grade 1HD-100 and Grade 1HD-200: Side mounted; full-extension type; zinc-plated steel, ball-bearing slides.
3. For drawers more than 3 inches high, but not more than 6 inches high and not more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1.
4. For drawers more than 6 inches high or more than 24 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD100.
5. For trash bins not more than 20 inches high and 16 inches wide, provide Grade 1HD-100.

H. Door and Drawer Silencers: BHMA A156.16, L03011.

I. Exposed Hardware Finishes: For exposed hardware, provide finish that complies with BHMA A156.18 for BHMA finish number indicated.

1. Dark, Oxidized, Satin Bronze, Oil Rubbed: BHMA 613 for bronze base; BHMA 640 for steel base; match Architect's sample.

a. On butt hinges only

J. For concealed hardware, provide manufacturer's standard finish that complies with product class requirements in BHMA A156.9.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Furring, Blocking, Shims, and Hanging Strips: Softwood or hardwood lumber, kiln-dried to less than 15 percent moisture content.

B. Anchors: Select material, type, size, and finish required for each substrate for secure anchorage. Provide metal expansion sleeves or expansion bolts for post-installed anchors. Use nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts at inside face of exterior walls and at floors.

C. Adhesive for Bonding Plastic Laminate: Unpigmented contact cement.

1. Adhesive for Bonding Edges: Hot-melt adhesive or adhesive specified above for faces.

## 2.6 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate architectural cabinets to dimensions, profiles, and details indicated.

B. Complete fabrication, including assembly and hardware application, to maximum extent possible before shipment to Project site. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation. Where necessary for fitting at site, provide ample allowance for scribing, trimming, and fitting.

- 1 Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times architectural cabinet fabrication will be complete.
- 2 Trial fit assemblies at manufacturer's shop that cannot be shipped completely assembled. Install dowels, screws, bolted connectors, and other fastening devices that can be removed after trial fitting. Verify that various parts fit as intended and check measurements of assemblies against field measurements before disassembling for shipment.

C. Shop-cut openings to maximum extent possible to receive hardware, appliances, electrical work, and similar items. Locate openings accurately and use templates or roughing-in diagrams to produce accurately sized and shaped openings. Sand edges of cutouts to remove splinters and burrs.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Before installation, condition cabinets to humidity conditions in installation areas for not less than 72 hours.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Architectural Woodwork Standards Grade: Install cabinets to comply with quality standard grade of item to be installed.
- B. Assemble cabinets and complete fabrication at Project site to extent that it was not completed in the shop.
- C. Anchor cabinets to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates. Secure with wafer-head cabinet installation screws.
- D. Install cabinets level, plumb, and true in line to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches using concealed shims.
  - 1. Scribe and cut cabinets to fit adjoining work, refinish cut surfaces, and repair damaged finish at cuts.
  - 2. Install cabinets without distortion so doors and drawers fit openings and are accurately aligned. Adjust hardware to center doors and drawers in openings and to provide unencumbered operation. Complete installation of hardware and accessory items as indicated.
  - 3. Maintain veneer sequence matching of cabinets with transparent finish.
  - 4. Fasten wall cabinets through back, near top and bottom, and at ends not more than 16 inches o.c. with No. 10 wafer-head screws sized for not less than 1-1/2-inch penetration into wood framing, blocking, or hanging strips.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections: Provide inspection of installed Work through AWT's Quality Certification Program certifying that woodwork, including installation, complies with requirements of the Architectural Woodwork Standards for the specified grade.
  - 1. Inspection entity shall prepare and submit report of inspection.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Repair damaged and defective cabinets, where possible, to eliminate functional and visual defects. Where not possible to repair, replace architectural cabinets. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.
- B. Clean, lubricate, and adjust hardware.
- C. Clean cabinets on exposed and semiexposed surfaces.

END OF SECTION 064116

## SECTION 06 61 00

## SOLID SURFACE FABRICATIONS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

## 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Window Stools.
  - 2. Counter Tops
- B. Related sections:
  - 1. Section 07 90 00 – Joint Protection.
  - 2. Section 09 21 16 – Gypsum Board Assemblies.
  - 3. Section 12 35 30 – Manufactured Casework
  - 4. Plumbing: Division 22.

## 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. Standards of the following as referenced:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI).
  - 2. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
  - 3. International Cast Polymer Association (ICPA).
  - 4. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA).
  - 5. National Association of Home Builders, Research Foundation, Inc. (NAHB/RF).
  - 6. National Fire Protection Agency (NFPA).

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Terms:
  - 1. Solid Surface Fabrication: Cast Polymer; synonymous Terms.
  - 2. Contractor: General Contractor and/or its employees.
  - 3. Manufacturer: Solid Surface Fabrication Manufacturing Company.
  - 4. Installer: Solid Surface Fabrication Installation Company.
- B. Description:
  - 1. A patterned, non-porous homogeneous mixture of natural minerals and polyester resins thermally bonded to produce solid fabrications with polished sealed surfaces. Colors and grain pattern shall run all the way through the base material.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: Submit top views, elevations and sections (as needed). Indicate dimensions, material thickness, location and sizes of cutouts, anchorage provisions and attachment methods. Indicate coordination requirements with adjacent and interfacing work.

- B. Samples: 6" by 6" samples or as requested; indicate full color range and pattern variation. Approved samples will be standard for solid surface fabrications.
- C. Product Data:
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's product data indicating compliance with specified performance requirements.
  - 2. Operation and maintenance data. Manufacturer's data indicating cleaning and maintenance requirements.
  - 3. Quality Assurance submittals outlined in Section 01 00 00.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Qualifications:
  - 1. Solid Surface Fabrication manufacturer qualifications:
    - a. ICPA member one calendar year, minimum, prior to Contract date.
    - b. Five years experience, minimum, in manufacturing similar type units.
    - c. Fabricated five Projects, minimum, of comparable magnitude in last three years.
  - 2. Installer qualifications:
    - a. Installed five Projects, minimum, of comparable magnitude in last three years. Provide reference list of those completed Projects for review and verification.
- B. Quality control submittals:
  - 1. Test reports:
    - a. Copies of certified test reports for the current year indicating compliance with ANSI Z-124.3 requirements. Four quarterly reports, minimum, are required.
  - 2. Certificates:
    - a. Current copy of ICPA membership.
    - b. Completed and current EPA, Office of Toxic Substances, TS-779.
    - c. Toxic Chemical Release Inventory Reporting Form R and Instructions, Section 313 of the Emergency Planning and Community Right-to-Know Act, Revised 1990 Version
  - 3. Qualification statements indicating compliance with QUALITY ASSURANCE Article; address each item

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Packing and shipping: to be packed in wooden crates to minimize damage in shipping.
- B. Acceptance at site: Contractor to supervise unloading of materials. A forklift is required. Check for damaged crates. Mark bill of lading if there is any obvious damage and notify marble supplier immediately. Otherwise, proceed with offloading crates.
- C. Storage and protection: Store materials under cover, off of ground, protect from moisture. Handle materials to prevent physical damage. Protect surfaces from staining, scratching and other damage during handling.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field measurements: Shop drawings are to be field verified by Contractor to ensure proper fit of materials.
- B. Maintain relative humidity planned for building occupants and an ambient temperature between 65 and 75 F° for 48 hours prior to and during installation. After installation, maintain relative humidity and ambient temperature planned for building occupants.

## 1.8 SEQUENCING AND SCHEDULING

- A. Coordinate construction activities in this Section with construction activities specified in related Sections or other construction activities required for fabrication and installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Furnish manufacturer's limited 10 year warranty.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURER

- A. Corian Solid Surfaces.
- B. Wilsonart International, (800) 433-3222, [www.wilsonart.com](http://www.wilsonart.com)  
Wilsonart Solid Surface (Basis of Design)
- C. Color: As selected by Architect/Owner.
- D. Substitutions: Permitted.

### 2.2 WINDOW STOOLS AND COUNTER TOPS

- A. Product standard of quality: NFPA Class A rated material
  1. ½ inch thick solid surface fabrication. Width and depth as indicated on drawings and as field verified.
  2. Color: As selected by Architect, and as approved by Owner. Owner approval required prior to ordering materials.
- B. Performance requirements:
  1. 2009 Michigan Building Code: Class A material as measured by the ASTM E84-95 tunnel test. Documentation required.
    - a. Flame spread of 25 or less
    - b. Smoke density of 25 or less
    - c. Liquid Absorption, ISO 4586-2, for ½ inch material thickness: 0.4 percent after 2 hour period.
    - d. Izod Impact, ASTM D 256, Method A: 0.3 foot pounds per inch.
    - e. Tensile Modulus, ASTM D 638 Nominal: 1.2 million pounds per square inch.
    - f. Thermal Expansion, ASTM D 696: 0.000018 inch per inch per degree F, maximum.
    - g. Hardness, ASTM D 2583, Barcol Impressor: 57.
    - h. Flexural Toughness, ASTM D 790: 3 (in.-lb./in<sup>3</sup>)
    - i. Deflection Temperature under load, ASTM D 648: 90 degrees C.

- j. Stain Resistance, ANSI Z-124.3 Modified; 3.4: No effect.
  - k. Boiling Water Resistance, NEMA LD 3-3.05: No effect.
  - l. High Temperature Resistance, NEMA LD 3-3.06: No effect.
  - m. Radiant Heat Resistance, NEMA LD 3-3.10: No effect.
  - n. Light Resistance, NEMA LD 3-3.03: No effect.
  - o. Ball Impact Resistance, NEMA LD 3-3.08, one half pound ball, unsupported: 125 inches.
  - p. Specific Gravity (Density ASTM D792): 1.60 grams per cubic centimeter.
  - q. Approximate weight: 4.20 pounds per square foot.
  - r. Weatherability, ASTM D 2565: Pass.
  - s. Fungus Resistance, ASTM G 21: Pass
  - t. Bacterial Resistance, ASTM G 22: Pass.
  - u. Pittsburgh Protocol Toxicity: 66.9 grams.
  - v. Pattern & Color: As selected by Architect.
  - w. Edge Detail: See drawings (1/8 inch Radius).
- C. Adhesives and sealants:
- 1. Joint adhesive: Manufacturer's standard adhesive to create inconspicuous, nonporous joints, with a chemical bond (WA8215).
  - 2. Sealant: Standard mildew resistant, FDA/UL® recognized silicone sealant in color matched or clear formulations, as specified. Refer to Section 07 90 00 – Joint Sealers
    - a. Dow Corning Corp., #786 Mildew Resistant Silicone Sealant
  - 3. To caulk solid surface panels to adjoining gypsum board, or paint, use mildew resistant acrylic caulk sealant:
    - a. Phenoseal Acrylic Caulk (Gibson-Homans)
    - b. Refer to Section 07 90 00 – Joint Sealers
- D. Fabrication:
- 1. Fabrication to be performed by a Corian or Wilsonart® certified solid surface fabricator/installer.
  - 2. Fabricate components in shop to greatest extent practical to size and shape indicated, in accordance with approved shop drawing and Corian or Wilsonart® published requirements.
  - 3. Wilsonart® Solid Surface Fabrication Manual (SS0319) or Corian Technical Bulletin 102 and 127..
  - 4. Form joints between components using manufacturer's standard joint adhesive. Joints shall be inconspicuous in appearance and without voids. Attach 4" (100mm) wide Wilsonart Solid Surface reinforcing strip under joints required by Deck Seam Section of the Wilsonart® Solid Surface Fabrication Manual (SS0319).
  - 5. Provide holes and cutouts for plumbing and bath accessories as indicated on shop drawings.
  - 6. Rout and finish component edges to a smooth, uniform finish. Rout all cutouts then sand all edges smooth. Repair or reject defective or inaccurate work.
  - 7. Finish: Surfaces shall have a uniform finish.
- E. Color: As selected by Architect.

### PART 3 – EXECUTION



### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates to receive solid surfacing. Identify conditions detrimental to proper or timely installation. Do not commence installation until conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Precondition Wilsonart® Solid Surfacing in accordance with manufacturer's printed installation instructions.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install components plumb and level, in accordance with approved shop drawings, project installation details and manufacturer's printed instructions.
- B. Form joints using manufacturer's approved adhesive, with joints inconspicuous in finished work.
- C. Remove excessive adhesive and sealants. Components shall be clean on Date of Substantial Completion.
- D. Coordinate plumbing installation with Division 22.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Contractor to protect all finished work until final acceptance by Owner.
- B. Clean installed units not more than 48 hours prior to Date of Substantial Completion. Repair or replace damaged or stained solid surface fabrication work.

### 3.5 SCHEDULE:

- A. As noted on the Drawings.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 072100 - THERMAL INSULATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
- 2 Glass-fiber blanket.
- 3 Glass-fiber board.
- 4 Loose-fill insulation.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 042000 "Unit Masonry" for insulation installed in masonry cells.
- 2 Section 075323 "Ethylene-propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for insulation specified as part of roofing construction.
- 3 Section 092900 "Gypsum Board" for sound attenuation blanket used as acoustic insulation.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

- 1 Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
- 2 Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
- 3 Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

#### A. Manufacturers – Provide one of the following:

1. Atlas; EnergyShield Pro
2. Hunter; Xci Class A, CG or Ply
3. Carlisle R-2+
4. B. Polyisocyanurate Board, Foil Faced for use in vertical wall applications: ASTM C 1289, foil faced, Type I, Class 1 or 2.
  - a. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.
  - b. Polyisocyanurate Board, Glass-Fiber-Mat Faced for use in roof applications: ASTM C 1289, glass-fiber-mat faced, Type II, Class 2.
  - c. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

### 2.2 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

- #### A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Reinforced-Foil Faced: ASTM C 665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

### 2.3 GLASS-FIBER BOARD

- #### A. Glass-Fiber Board, Faced: ASTM C 612, Type IA; faced on one side with foil-scrim-kraft or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84. Nominal density of 3 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

### 2.4 LOOSE-FILL INSULATION

- #### A. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

## 2.5 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.
  - 1 Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
  - 2 Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.
- B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
- C. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:
  - 1 Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
  - 2 Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C 1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.
- C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

- D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF SLAB INSULATION

- A. On vertical slab edge and foundation surfaces, set insulation units using manufacturer's recommended adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. If not otherwise indicated, extend insulation a minimum of 24 inches below exterior grade line.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF FOUNDATION WALL INSULATION

- A. Butt panels together for tight fit.
- B. Anchor Installation: Install board insulation on concrete substrates by adhesively attached, spindle-type insulation anchors as follows:
- 1 Fasten insulation anchors to concrete substrates with insulation anchor adhesive according to anchor manufacturer's written instructions. Space anchors according to insulation manufacturer's written instructions for insulation type, thickness, and application.
  - 2 Apply insulation standoffs to each spindle to create cavity width indicated on Drawings between concrete substrate and insulation.
  - 3 After adhesive has dried, install board insulation by pressing insulation into position over spindles and securing it tightly in place with insulation-retaining washers, taking care not to compress insulation.
  - 4 Where insulation will not be covered by other building materials, apply capped washers to tips of spindles.
- C. Adhesive Installation: Install with adhesive or press into tacky waterproofing or dampproofing according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. Foam-Plastic Board Insulation: Install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates.
1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
  2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
  3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
  4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.

- a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward exterior of construction.
- b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward areas of high humidity.

B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:

1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft.

C. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply according to ASTM C 1015 and manufacturer's written instructions. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.

1. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 072100

## SECTION 072600 - VAPOR RETARDERS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Polyethylene vapor retarders.
- 2 Reinforced-polyethylene vapor retarders.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for under-slab vapor retarders.
- 2 Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation" for vapor retarders integral with insulation products.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6-mil-thick sheet, with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm.

#### 2.2 REINFORCED-POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Sheet with outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 20 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- B. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS ON FRAMING

- A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings.
- B. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives, vapor retarder fasteners, or other anchorage system as recommended by manufacturer. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- C. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs and sealing with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
- D. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.
- E. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- A. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

END OF SECTION 072600 SECTION



SECTION 074113.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes standing-seam metal roof panels.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Section 074293 "Soffit Panels" for metal panels used in horizontal soffit applications.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  - 2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.
  - 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
  - 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control reports.
- D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.

#### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

#### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

#### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

- B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
    - b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:
  - 1 Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 2 Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  - 3 Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than  $[1/180]$   $[1/240]$  <Insert deflection> of the span.
- B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 1680 or ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
- C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 1646 or ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
  1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
- D. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 2140.
- E. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.
  1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.
- F. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

## 2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

- A. General: Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.
  1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E 1514.
- B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.
  1. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
    - a. Berridge, (Basis of Design): Cee-Lock Standing Seam Roof
    - b. Nucor Building Systems; VR 16 II
    - c. PAC-Clad/Carlisle; Snap-Clad
    - d. Others by Substitution
  2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
    - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch.
    - b. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
    - c. Color: to be determined by architect from standard manufacturers colors.

3. Clips: One-piece fixed to accommodate thermal movement.

a. Material: 0.028-inch-nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.

- 1 Panel Coverage: 16 inches or as necessary to match existing
- 2 Panel Height: 1.5 inches.

## 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

- 1 Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F; ASTM D 1970.
- 2 Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F; ASTM D 1970.

B. Felt Underlayment: ASTM D 226/D 22M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felts.

C. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.

- 1 Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
- 2 Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
- 3 Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.
- 4 Weatherseal: Manufacturer's standard vinyl seal

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

- D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match roof fascia and rake trim.
- E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot-long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.
- F. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.
- G. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
  - 1 Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
  - 2 Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
  - 3 Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

- 1 Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
- 2 Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
- 3 Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- 4 Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
- 5 Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
- 6 Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

- a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
  - 1 Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 2 Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1 Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
  - 2 Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of

penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.3 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated below, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
  - 1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
- B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated below, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
  - 1. Apply over the entire roof surface.
- C. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.
- D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

### 3.4 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
  - 1 Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
  - 2 Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
  - 3 Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
  - 4 Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
  - 5 Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
  - 6 Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
  - 7 Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
  - 8 Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.
- B. Fasteners:
  - 1 Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.



- 2 Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
  - 3 Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless-steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
  - 4 Stainless-Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners.
- C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.
- D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
- E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.
1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
  2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
  4. Seamed Joint: Crimp standing seams with manufacturer-approved, motorized seamer tool so clip, metal roof panel, and factory-applied sealant are completely engaged.
  5. Watertight Installation:
    - a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
    - b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
    - c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.
- F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.
1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.
- G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- 1 Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
  - 2 Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).
- H. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.
- I. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts

securely 1 inch away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches o.c. in between.

- 1 Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.
- 2 Connect downspouts to underground drainage system indicated.

- J. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

### 3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.
- B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074113

## SECTION 074293 - SOFFIT PANELS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes metal soffit panels.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Section 074113.13 "Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels" for metal roof panels.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

- B. Shop Drawings:

- 1 Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
  - 2 Accessories: Include details of flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

- 1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

- 1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. UL-Certified, Portable Roll-Forming Equipment: UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment capable of producing metal panels warranted by manufacturer to be the same as factory-formed products. Maintain UL certification of portable roll-forming equipment for duration of work.

### 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.
- B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.
- C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.
- D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.
- E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

### 1.9 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of walls, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
- b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E 1592:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 of the span.
4. B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E 283 at the following test-pressure difference:
  - a. Test-Pressure Difference: 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
  - b. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E 331 at the following test-pressure difference:
    - c. 1. Test-Pressure Difference: 2.86 lbf/sq. ft.
5. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - a. 1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 METAL SOFFIT PANELS

A. General: Provide metal soffit panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting side edges of adjacent panels and mechanically attaching through panel to supports using concealed fasteners in side laps. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

**B. Metal Soffit Panels: Match profile and material of existing soffit panels.**

- 1 Finish: Match finish and color of metal existing soffit panels.
- 2 Sealant: Factory applied within interlocking joint.

**C. Flush-Profile Metal Soffit Panels Solid panels formed with vertical panel edges and a flat pan between panel edges; with flush joint between panels.**

1. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
  - a. Berridge, (Basis of Design): Vee-Panel
  - b. MBCI; Artisan
  - c. PAC-Clad/Carlisle; Flush/Reveal
  - d. Others by Substitution
2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M.
  - a. Nominal Thickness: 0.028 inch.
  - b. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.
  - c. Color: Match Architect's samples.

**D. Tongue and Groove Aluminum Soffit (at Main Entrance only): 4 inch V-groove planks extruded aluminum 6063 T5**

1. Manufacturers: Available manufacturers providing product meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
  - a. Longboard Architectural Products, 800-604-0343, [info@longboardproducts.com](mailto:info@longboardproducts.com) (Basis of Design)
  - b. Others by Substitution
2. Profile: 4 inch V-groove x 12 foot planks, Color to be selected from manufacturers standard woodgrain colors
3. Accessories: Provide manufacturers standard starter strip, J-track, inside corner, outside corner, etc as required in same material and finishes as soffit planks.
4. Installation: Install per the manufacturers recommendations.

**2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS****A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C 645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A 792/A 792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.****B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.**

1. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

**C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal**

against weather and to provide finished appearance. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

- D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.
- E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant types recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.
  - 1 Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
  - 2 Joint Sealant: ASTM C 920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
  - 3 Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C 1311.

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.
- B. On-Site Fabrication: Subject to compliance with requirements of this Section, metal panels may be fabricated on-site using UL-certified, portable roll-forming equipment if panels are of same profile and warranted by manufacturer to be equal to factory-formed panels. Fabricate according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and to comply with details shown.
- C. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.
- D. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.
- E. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.
  - 1 Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 2 Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
  - 3 Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
  - 4 Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
  - 5 Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
  - 6 Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal soffit panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

## 2.5 FINISHES

- A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- C. Steel Panels and Accessories:
  - 1 Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 2 Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1 Examine framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
  - 2 Examine sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal panel manufacturer.
    - a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.
- B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C 754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - 1. Soffit Framing: Wire tie or clip furring channels to supports, as required to comply with requirements for assemblies indicated.

### 3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other Soffit Panels
- Specifications
- 074293-6



components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

- 1 Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
- 2 Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
- 3 Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
- 4 Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
- 5 Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
- 6 Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
- 7 Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Lap-Seam Metal Panels: Fasten metal panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

- 1 Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure.
- 2 Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal panels.
- 3 Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
- 4 Install screw fasteners with power tools having controlled torque adjusted to compress washer tightly without damage to washer, screw threads, or panels. Install screws in predrilled holes.

E. Watertight Installation:

- 1 Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal lapped joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend by manufacturer on side laps of nesting-type panels and elsewhere as needed to make panels watertight.
- 2 Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
- 3 At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch (152-mm) end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

G. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

- 1 Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling, and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit

substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.

- 2 Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.
- B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.
- C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 074293

## SECTION 074646 - FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

## PART 1 GENERAL

## 2.01 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Fiber-cement siding.

## 2.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Section 054000 - Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Water-resistive barrier under siding.
- B. Section 072500 - Weather Barriers: Water-resistive barrier under siding.
- C. Section 079200 - Joint Sealants: Sealing joints between siding and adjacent construction and fixtures.
- D. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Siding substrate.
- E. Section 092116 - Gypsum Board Assemblies: Water-resistive barrier under siding.

## 2.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. AAMA 611 - Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum; 2024.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2023.
- C. ASTM B221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes; 2021.
- D. ASTM B221M - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes (Metric); 2021.
- E. ASTM C1186 - Standard Specification for Flat Fiber-Cement Sheets; 2022, with Editorial Revision (2023).
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2023d.
- G. ASTM E136 - Standard Test Method for Assessing Combustibility of Materials Using a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C; 2024.
- H. NFPA 285 - Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components; 2023.

## 2.04 SUBMITTALS

- A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
  - 1. Manufacturer's requirements for related materials to be installed by others.
  - 2. Preparation instructions and recommendations.
  - 3. Storage and handling requirements and recommendations.
  - 4. Installation methods, including nail patterns.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, layout, joints, construction details, support clips, \_\_\_\_\_, and methods of anchorage.
- D. Test Report: Applicable model code authority evaluation report (e.g. ICC-ES).
- E. Manufacturer's qualification statement.
- F. Installer's qualification statement.

- G. Warranty: Submit copy of manufacturer's warranty, made out in Owner's name, showing that it has been registered with manufacturer.

## 2.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in performing work of type specified in this section with not less than three years of experience.

## 2.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. See Section 017419 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for packaging waste requirements.
- B. Deliver and store materials in manufacturer's unopened packaging, with labels intact, until ready for installation.
- C. Store materials under dry and waterproof cover, well ventilated, and elevated above grade on a flat surface.

## 2.07 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not install panels when air temperature or relative humidity are outside manufacturer's limits.

## 2.08 WARRANTY

- A. See Section 017800 - Closeout Submittals for additional warranty requirements.
- B.

# PART 2 PRODUCTS

## 3.01 FIBER-CEMENT SIDING

- A. Lap Siding: Individual horizontal boards made of cement and cellulose fiber formed under high pressure with integral surface texture, complying with ASTM C1186, Type A, Grade II; with machined edges, for nail attachment.
  - 1. Style: Standard lap style.
  - 2. Texture: Smooth.
  - 3. Length: 12 feet (3.7 m), nominal.
  - 4. Width (Height): 5-1/4 inches (133 mm).
  - 5. Thickness: 5/16 inch (8 mm), nominal.
  - 6. Finish: Factory applied topcoat.
  - 7. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturers full range of available colors.
  - 8. Warranty: 50 year limited; transferable.
  - 9. Products:
    - a. James Hardie Building Products, Inc; HZ5 Product Zone  
: [www.jameshardie.com/#sle](http://www.jameshardie.com/#sle).

## 3.02 ACCESSORIES

- A. Support for Cladding and Continuous Insulation: Thermal clips.
  - 1. Thermally-broken clips that provide attachment support for girts, angles, channels, and other cladding support framing.
  - 2. Fasteners: As recommended by clip manufacturer.
  - 3. Products:
    - a. Northern Facades; ISO Clip: [www.northernfacades.com/#sle](http://www.northernfacades.com/#sle).
    - b. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.
- B. Trim: Same material and texture as siding.
- C. Metal Trim: Extruded aluminum alloy 6063-T5 temper.

1. Finish: Clear anodized.
  - a. Color: As selected by Architect.
2. Termination Profile Trim:
  - a. Type: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard line.
- D. Drainage Mat: Noncompressible permeable mat installed behind siding to manage moisture and air movement.
  1. Material: Diamond shaped, extruded plastic square strand netting consisting of high density polyethylene (HDPE), with 0.20 inch (5.08 mm) thickness.
  2. Products:
    - a. CavClear, a Division of Archovations Inc; CavClear Rainscreen Mat HD (Heavy Duty): [www.cavclear.com/#sle](http://www.cavclear.com/#sle).
- E. Fasteners: Galvanized or corrosion resistant; length as required to penetrate, 1-1/4 inches (31.8 mm), minimum.

### PART 3 EXECUTION

#### 4.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrate, clean and repair as required to eliminate conditions that would be detrimental to proper installation.
- B. Verify that water-resistant barrier has been installed over substrate completely and correctly; see Section 054000.
- C. Do not begin until unacceptable conditions have been corrected.
- D. If substrate preparation is responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

#### 4.02 PREPARATION

- A. Protect surrounding areas and adjacent surfaces during execution of this work.
- B. Install Sheet Metal Flashing:
  1. Above door and window trim and casings.
  2. Above horizontal trim in field of siding.

#### 4.03 INSTALLATION

- A. Drainage Mats: Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
  1. Place mat against exterior wall with fabric side facing out.
- B. Install siding in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations.
  1. Read warranty and comply with terms necessary to maintain warranty coverage.
  2. Install in accordance with conditions stated in model code evaluation report applicable to location of project.
  3. Use trim details as indicated on drawings.
  4. Touch up field cut edges before installing.
  5. Pre-drill nail holes if necessary to prevent breakage.
- C. Joints in Horizontal Siding: Avoid joints in lap siding except at corners; where joints are inevitable stagger joints between successive courses.
- D. Do not install siding less than 6 inches (152 mm) from ground surface, or closer than 1 inch (25.4 mm) to roofs, patios, porches, and other surfaces where water may collect.
- E. After installation, seal joints except lap joints of lap siding; seal around penetrations, and paint exposed cut edges.

4.04 CLEANING

- A. See Section 017000 - Execution and Closeout Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Clean faced panels in accordance with manufacturer's maintenance instructions, using cleaning materials and methods acceptable to manufacturer.

4.05 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 075323 - ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-MONOMER (EPDM) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Adhered ethylene-propylene-diene-terpolymer (EPDM) roofing system.
- 2 Roof insulation.
- 3 Substrate board
- 4 Vapor retarder
- 5 Cover board.

- B. Section includes installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Sound-absorbing insulation strips are furnished under Section 053100 "Steel Decking."

C. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2 Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
- 3 Section 077600 "Pedestal Roof Pavers" for elevated paver and adjustable paver system installed on roof.
- 4 Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.
- 5 Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of FM Approvals' RoofNav listing.

B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:

- 1 Layout and thickness if insulation.
- 2 Base flashings and membrane terminations.
- 3 Flashing details at penetrations.
- 4 Tapered insulation, thickness, and slopes.
- 5 Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane and fastening spacings and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
- 6 Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
- 7 Tie-in with air barrier.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Roof membrane and flashings of color required.

D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Certificates:

1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

- a. Submit evidence of complying with performance requirements.

2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.

C. Product Test Reports: For components of roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.

D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.

- 1 Field Test Reports:
- 2 Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.



## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer that is UL listed or roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.
- B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.
  - 1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.
- C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1 Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, and other components of roofing system.
  - 2 Warranty Period: 20 years from Date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from Date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and base flashings shall withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roofing and flashings shall remain watertight.
- 1 Accelerated Weathering: Roof membrane shall withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G 152, ASTM G 154, or ASTM G 155.
  - 2 Impact Resistance: Roof membrane shall resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D 3746, ASTM D 4272, or the Resistance to Foot Traffic Test in FM Approvals 4470.
- B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials shall be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
- C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:
1. Zones: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. ENERGY STAR Listing: Roofing system shall be listed on the DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Products Qualified Product List" for low-slope roof products.
- E. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E 108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
- F. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

## 2.2 ETHYLENE-PROPYLENE-DIENE-TERPOLYMER (EPDM) ROOFING

- A. EPDM Sheet: ASTM D 4637/D 4637M, Type I, nonreinforced, EPDM sheet.
- 1 Firestone Building Products; Rubbergard EPDM (Basis of Design)
  - 2 Johns Manville
  - 3 Carlisle
  - 4 GenFlex
  - 5 Versico
  - 6 Thickness: 60 mils, nominal.
  - 7 Exposed Face Color: Black.
  - 8 Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.

## 2.3 AUXILIARY ROOFING MATERIALS

A. General: Auxiliary materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.

1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sheet Flashing: 60-mil-thick EPDM, partially cured or cured, according to application.

C. Protection Sheet: Epichlorohydrin or neoprene nonreinforced flexible sheet, 55 to 60 mils thick, recommended by EPDM manufacturer for resistance to hydrocarbons, non-aromatic solvents, grease, and oil.

D. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

E. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.

F. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard, water based.

G. Seaming Material: Manufacturer's standard, synthetic-rubber polymer primer and 3-inch- wide minimum, butyl splice tape with release film.

H. Lap Sealant: Manufacturer's standard, single-component sealant, colored to match membrane roofing.

I. Water Cutoff Mastic: Manufacturer's standard butyl mastic sealant.

J. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.

K. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, pre-punched.

L. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

M. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, molded pipe boot flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, reinforced EPDM securement strips, T-joint covers, in-seam sealants, termination reglets, cover strips, and other accessories.

1. Provide white flashing accessories for white EPDM membrane roofing.

## 2.4 SUBSTRATE BOARDS

A. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, Type X gypsum board.

1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

B. Substrate Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M, glass-mat, water-resistant gypsum board or ASTM C 1278/C 1278M, fiber-reinforced gypsum board.

- 1 Thickness: Type X, 5/8 inch.
- 2 Surface Finish: Factory primed.

C. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening substrate panel to roof deck.

## 2.5 VAPOR RETARDER

A. Polyethylene Film: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils thick, minimum, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.

1. Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
2. Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard lap adhesive, listed by FM Approvals for vapor retarder application.

B. Glass-Fiber Felts: ASTM D 2178/D 2178M, Type IV, asphalt impregnated.

## 2.6 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by EPDM roof membrane manufacturer.

B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, Type II, Class 2, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.

1. Products manufactured by roofing membrane manufacturer.
2. As listed in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation"
3. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
4. Size: 48 by 48 inches.
5. Thickness:
  - a. Base Layer: 1-1/2 inches.
  - b. Upper Layers: 1 1/2 inches thick each in subsequent layers as required to meet thermal performance.

C. Thermal Performance: Provide product in thickness required to maintain manufacturers published LTTR (Long Term Thermal Resistance) values for roofing assembly with minimum R-value = R-30 c.i.

D. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.

- 1 Material: Match roof insulation.
- 2 Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch.
- 3 Slope:

a. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

## 2.7 INSULATION ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.
- B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.
- C. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:
  - 1. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.
- D. Cover Board: ASTM C 208, Type II, Grade 2, cellulosic-fiber insulation board, 1/2 inch thick.
- E. Cover Board: ASTM C 1289 Type II, Class 4, Grade 1, 1/2-inch-thick polyisocyanurate, with a minimum compressive strength of 80 psi.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1 Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
  - 2 Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
  - 3 Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 053100 "Steel Decking."
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

- B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.
- C. Perform fastener-pullout tests according to roof system manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Submit test result within 24 hours of performing tests.
    - a. Include manufacturer's requirements for any revision to previously submitted fastener patterns required to achieve specified wind uplift requirements.

### 3.3 ROOFING INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.
- B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning work on adjoining roofing.
- C. Install roof membrane and auxiliary materials to tie in to existing roofing to maintain weathertightness of transition.
- D. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under Section 072715 "Nonbituminous Self-Adhering Sheet Air Barriers."

### 3.4 INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.
- B. Comply with roofing system and insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.
- C. Installation Over Metal Decking:
  - 1. Install base layer of insulation with joints staggered not less than 24 inches in adjacent rows, end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows, and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.
    - a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
    - b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    - c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
    - d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.
    - e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
    - f. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  - 1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.

2. Install upper layers of insulation as indicated above and with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
  - a. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
    - 1) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.5 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

- A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.
  1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
  2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.
    - a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.
  3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
  4. Adhere cover board to substrate using adhesive according to FM Approvals' RoofNav assembly requirements and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29 for specified Windstorm Resistance Classification, as follows:
    - a. Set cover board in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

### 3.6 ADHERED ROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Adhere roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Unroll membrane roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.
- C. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.
- D. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.
- E. Bonding Adhesive: Apply to substrate and underside of roof membrane at rate required by manufacturer, and allow to partially dry before installing roof membrane. Do not apply to splice area of roof membrane.

- F. In addition to adhering, mechanically fasten roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeters.
- G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.
- H. Adhesive Seam Installation: Clean both faces of splice areas, apply splicing cement.
  - 1 Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 2 Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
  - 3 Apply a continuous bead of in-seam sealant before closing splice if required by roofing system manufacturer.
- I. Tape Seam Installation: Clean and prime both faces of splice areas, apply splice tape.
  - 1 Firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping roof membrane to ensure a watertight seam installation.
  - 2 Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of roofing terminations.
- J. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.
- K. Spread sealant or mastic bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.
- L. Adhere protection sheet over roof membrane at locations indicated.

### 3.7 BASE FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.
- C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.
- D. Clean splice areas, apply splicing cement, and firmly roll side and end laps of overlapping sheets to ensure a watertight seam installation. Apply lap sealant and seal exposed edges of sheet flashing terminations.
- E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Engage a qualified roofing inspector or testing agency, or manufacturer representative to inspect, roof membrane application, sheet flashings, protection, and drainage components, and to furnish reports to Architect.



- B. Final Roof Inspection: Arrange for roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect roofing installation on completion, in presence of Architect, and to prepare inspection report.
- C. Repair or remove and replace components of roofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.

### 3.9 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

- A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.
- B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.
- C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

### 3.10 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

- A. WHEREAS \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:
  - 1 Owner: Northland Area Federal Credit Union.
  - 2 Building Name/Type: Alpena Headquarters Facility
  - 3 Area of Work: Membrane Roofing Assembly.
  - 4 Acceptance Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
  - 5 Warranty Period: 20 years.
  - 6 Expiration Date: \_\_\_\_\_.
- B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,
- C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.
- D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:
  - a. lightning;
  - b. peak gust wind speed exceeding 115 mph;
  - c. fire;
  - d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
  - e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
  - f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
  - g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.
- 1 When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
- 2 Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
- 3 During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.
- 4 During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
- 5 Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
- 6 This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

1 Authorized Signature: \_\_\_\_\_.  
 2 Name: \_\_\_\_\_.  
 3 Title: \_\_\_\_\_.

END OF SECTION 075323

076200 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Manufactured through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver.
- 2 Manufactured reglets with counterflashing.
- 3 Formed low-slope roof sheet metal fabrications.
- 4 Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.
- 5 Formed equipment support flashing.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking.
- 2 Section 074213.19 "Insulated Metal Wall Panels" for sheet metal flashing and trim integral with metal wall panels.
- 3 Section 075323 "Ethylene-Propylene-Diene-Monomer (EPDM) Roofing" for materials and installation of sheet metal flashing and trim integral with roofing.
- 4 Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for set-on-type curbs, equipment supports, roof hatches, vents, and other manufactured roof accessory units.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.
- B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each manufactured product and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled work.
3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.
5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
8. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, and counterflashings as applicable.
9. Include details of special conditions.
10. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
11. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.
- B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is SPRI ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.
  1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are SPRI ES-1 tested and FM Approvals approved, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
- B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:
    - a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
    - b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
    - c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.
  - 2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.
- B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings and roof edge flashings tested according to SPRI ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:
  - 1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.
- D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

### 2.2 SHEET METALS

- A. General: Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.
- B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with smooth, flat surface.
  - 1. As-Milled Finish: Standard one-side bright.
  - 2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
    - a. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - 3. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range – match wall panel.
  - 4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

### 2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

- A. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.
- B. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 mils thick, consisting of a slip-resistant polyethylene- or polypropylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl- or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; specifically designed to withstand high metal temperatures beneath metal roofing. Provide primer according to written recommendations of underlayment manufacturer.
  - 1 Thermal Stability: ASTM D 1970; stable after testing at 240 deg F or higher.
  - 2 Low-Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D 1970; passes after testing at minus 20 deg F or lower.
- C. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

### 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, solder, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal **or** manufactured item.
  - 1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    - a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    - b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless-steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    - c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
  - 1 Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  - 2 Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.

## C. Solder:

1. For Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel: ASTM B 32, with maximum lead content of 0.2 percent.
- D. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
- E. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and trim and remain watertight.
- F. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.
- G. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion according to ASTM D 1187.

## 2.5 MANUFACTURED SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

- A. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
  1. Material: Stainless steel, 0.019 inch thick.
  2. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
  3. Concrete Type: Provide temporary closure tape to keep reglet free of concrete materials, special fasteners for attaching reglet to concrete forms, and guides to ensure alignment of reglet section ends.
  4. Masonry Type: Provide with offset top flange for embedment in masonry mortar joint.
  5. Accessories:
    - a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
    - b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
  6. Finish: Mill.

## 2.6 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details shown and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
  - 1 Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
  - 2 Obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
  - 3 Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
  - 4 Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.
- B. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."
- D. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.
  - 1 Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1-inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
  - 2 Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.
- E. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant according to cited sheet metal standard.
- F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.
- G. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
- H. Seams: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.
- I. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

## 2.7 LOW-SLOPE ROOF SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Roof Edge Flashing (Gravel Stop) and Fascia Cap: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long sections. Furnish with 6-inch-wide, joint cover plates. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1 Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.
  - 2 Fabricate from the Following Materials:
    - a. Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.
- B. Copings: Fabricate in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections. Fabricate joint plates of same thickness as copings. Furnish with continuous cleats to support edge of external leg and interior leg. Miter corners, fasten and seal watertight. Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1. Coping Profile: Fig 3-4A according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual."
  - 2. Joint Style: Butted with expansion space and 6-inch-wide, concealed backup plate.
  - 3. Fabricate from the Following Materials:
    - a. Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
    - b. Galvanized Steel: 0.040 inch thick.
- C. Roof and Roof-to-Wall Transition: Fabricate from the following materials: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners.
  - 1 Aluminum: 0.050 inch thick.
  - 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.034 inch thick.
- D. Base Flashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:
  - 1 Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
  - 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.



E. Counterflashing: Shop fabricate interior and exterior corners. Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1 Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

F. Flashing Receivers: Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1 Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

G. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1 Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
- 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

H. Roof-Drain Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

## 2.8 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

1. Stainless Steel: 0.016 inch thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1 Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
- 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.022 inch thick.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Equipment Support Flashing: Fabricate from the following materials:

- 1 Stainless Steel: 0.019 inch thick.
- 2 Galvanized Steel: 0.028 inch thick.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- 1 Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
- 2 Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- 3 Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to

prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 UNDERLAYMENT INSTALLATION

- A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches.
- B. Synthetic Underlayment: Install synthetic underlayment, wrinkle free, according to manufacturers' written instructions, and using adhesive where possible to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal.
- C. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Install self-adhering sheet underlayment, wrinkle free. Prime substrate if recommended by underlayment manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation; use primer for installing underlayment at low temperatures. Apply in shingle fashion to shed water, with end laps of not less than 6 inches staggered 24 inches between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches. Roll laps and edges with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.
- D. Apply slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. General: Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement. Use fasteners, solder, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
  - 1 Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of solder, welds, and sealant.
  - 2 Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered before fabricating sheet metal.
  - 3 Space cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
  - 4 Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
  - 5 Torch cutting of sheet metal flashing and trim is not permitted.
  - 6 Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.
- B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.
  - 1 Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless-steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
  - 2 Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

- C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
- D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.
- E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a tight installation.
- F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.
- 1 Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant. Form joints to completely conceal sealant. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures. Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.
  - 2 Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- G. Rivets: Rivet joints in uncoated aluminum where necessary for strength.

### 3.4 ROOF FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with performance requirements, sheet metal manufacturer's written installation instructions, and cited sheet metal standard. Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line, levels, and slopes. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight and weather resistant.
- B. Roof Edge Flashing: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Interlock bottom edge of roof edge flashing with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at staggered 3-inch centers.
- C. Copings: Anchor to resist uplift and outward forces according to recommendations in cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated.
- 1 Interlock exterior bottom edge of coping with continuous cleat anchored to substrate at 16-inch centers.
  - 2 Anchor interior leg of coping with washers and screw fasteners through slotted holes at 24-inch centers.
- D. Pipe or Post Counterflashing: Install counterflashing umbrella with close-fitting collar with top edge flared for elastomeric sealant, extending minimum of 4 inches over base flashing. Install stainless-steel draw band and tighten.

- E. Counterflashing: Coordinate installation of counterflashing with installation of base flashing. Insert counterflashing in reglets or receivers and fit tightly to base flashing. Extend counterflashing 4 inches over base flashing. Lap counterflashing joints minimum of 4 inches. Secure in waterproof manner by means of snap-in installation and sealant or lead wedges and sealant unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Roof-Penetration Flashing: Coordinate installation of roof-penetration flashing with installation of roofing and other items penetrating roof. Seal with elastomeric sealant and clamp flashing to pipes that penetrate roof.

### 3.5 WALL FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture according to cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.
- B. Through-Wall Flashing: Installation of through-wall flashing is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- C. Reglets: Installation of reglets is specified in Section 042000 "Unit Masonry."
- D. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

### 3.6 MISCELLANEOUS FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Support Flashing: Coordinate installation of equipment support flashing with installation of roofing and equipment. Weld or seal flashing with elastomeric sealant to equipment support member.
- B. Overhead-Piping Safety Pans: Suspend pans from structure above, independent of other overhead items such as equipment, piping, and conduit, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings. Pipe and install drain line to plumbing waste or drainage system.

### 3.7 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
- B. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerances specified in MCA's "Guide Specification for Residential Metal Roofing."

### 3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.
- B. Clean and neutralize flux materials. Clean off excess solder.
- C. Clean off excess sealants.
- D. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

- E. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 076200 SECTION

077200 - ROOF ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Roof curbs.
- 2 Equipment supports.
- 3 Pipe and duct supports.

B. Related Sections:

- 1 Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for shop- and field-formed metal flashing, roof-drainage systems, roof expansion-joint covers, and miscellaneous sheet metal trim and accessories.
- 2 Section 237413 "Packaged, Outdoor, Central-Station Air-Handling Units" for standard curbs specified with rooftop units.

1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of roof accessories with roofing membrane and base flashing and interfacing and adjoining construction to provide a leakproof, weathertight, secure, and noncorrosive installation.
- B. Coordinate dimensions with rough-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of roof accessory.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For roof accessories.

1. Include plans, elevations, keyed details, and attachments to other work. Indicate dimensions, loadings, and special conditions. Distinguish between plant- and field-assembled work.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, prepared on Samples of size to adequately show color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Roof plans, drawn to scale, and coordinating penetrations and roof-mounted items. Show the following:

- 1 Size and location of roof accessories specified in this Section.
- 2 Method of attaching roof accessories to roof or building structure.
- 3 Other roof-mounted items including mechanical and electrical equipment, ductwork, piping, and conduit.
- 4 Required clearances.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For roof accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Painted Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace roof accessories that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Fluoropolymer Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Roof accessories shall withstand exposure to weather and resist thermally induced movement without failure, rattling, leaking, or fastener disengagement due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.
- B. Wind-Restraint Performance: As indicated on Drawings.

### 2.2 ROOF CURBS

A. Roof Curbs: Internally reinforced roof-curb units capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, bearing continuously on roof structure, and capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

1. As provided by Mechanical equipment manufacturer. Coordinate, size, location and installation with Mechanical contractor

B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

C. Supported Load Capacity: As indicated on Drawings

D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.064 inch thick.

- 1 Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
- 2 Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Construction:

- 1 Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
- 2 On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
- 3 Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- 4 Top Surface: Level top of curb, with roof slope accommodated by sloping deck-mounting flange or by use of leveler frame.
- 5 Insulation: Factory insulated with 4-inch thick glass-fiber board insulation. Required at exterior locations only.
- 6 Liner: Same material as curb, of manufacturer's standard thickness and finish.
- 7 Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer along top flange of curb, continuous around curb perimeter.
- 8 Wind Restraint Straps and Base Flange Attachment: Provide wind restraint straps, welded strap connectors, and base flange attachment to roof structure at perimeter of curb, of size and spacing required to meet wind uplift requirements.
- 9 Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as curb.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Equipment Supports: Rail-type metal equipment supports capable of supporting superimposed live and dead loads between structural supports, including equipment loads and other construction indicated on Drawings, spanning between structural supports; capable of meeting performance requirements; with welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints and integrally formed structure-mounting flange at bottom.

1. As provided by Mechanical equipment manufacturer. Coordinate size, location and installation with Mechanical contractor

B. Size: Coordinate dimensions with roughing-in information or Shop Drawings of equipment to be supported.

C. Supported Load Capacity: As indicated on Drawings

D. Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet, 0.064 inch thick.

- 1 Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
- 2 Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Construction:

- 1 Curb Profile: Manufacturer's standard compatible with roofing system.
- 2 Nailer: Factory-installed continuous wood nailers 3-1/2 inches wide on top flange of equipment supports, continuous around support perimeter.
- 3 Platform Cap: Where portion of equipment support is not covered by equipment, provide weathertight platform cap formed from 3/4-inch thick plywood covered with metal sheet of same type, thickness, and finish as required for curb.
- 4 Metal Counterflashing: Manufacturer's standard, removable, fabricated of same metal and finish as equipment support.
- 5 Fabricate equipment supports to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise



indicated.

- 6 Sloping Roofs: Where roof slope exceeds 1:48, fabricate each support with height to accommodate roof slope so that tops of supports are level with each other. Equip supports with water diverters or crickets on sides that obstruct water flow.

## 2.4 ROOF HATCH

A. Roof Hatches: Metal roof-hatch units with lids and insulated double-walled curbs, welded or mechanically fastened and sealed corner joints, continuous lid-to-curb counterflashing and weathertight perimeter gasketing, straight sides, and integrally formed deck-mounting flange at perimeter bottom.

- 1 Bilco; Type E
- 2 Babcock Davis; ThermalMAX

B. Type and Size: Single-leaf lid, 36 by 36 inches; with thermally broken cover and curb

C. Loads: Minimum 40-lbf/sq. ft. external live load and 20-lbf/sq. ft. internal uplift load.

D. Hatch Material: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet.

- 1 Thickness: Manufacturer's standard thickness for hatch size indicated.
- 2 Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer.
- 3 Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

E. Construction:

1. Insulation: Polyisocyanurate board.

a. R-Value: 20.0 according to ASTM C 1363.

- 1 Nailer: Factory-installed wood nailer continuous around hatch perimeter.
- 2 Hatch Lid: Opaque, insulated, and double walled, with manufacturer's standard metal liner of same material and finish as outer metal lid.
- 3 Curb Liner: Manufacturer's standard, of same material and finish as metal curb.
- 4 On ribbed or fluted metal roofs, form flange at perimeter bottom to conform to roof profile.
- 5 Fabricate curbs to minimum height of 12 inches above roofing surface unless otherwise indicated.
- 6 Sloping Roofs: Where slope or roof deck exceeds 1:48, fabricate curb with perimeter curb height that is tapered to accommodate roof slope so that top surfaces of perimeter curb are level. Equip hatch with water diverter or cricket on side that obstructs water flow.

F. Hardware: Spring operators, hold-open arm, stainless-steel spring latch with turn handles, stainless-steel butt- or pintle-type hinge system, and padlock hasps inside and outside.

1. Provide two-point latch on lids larger than 84 inches.

G. Ladder-Assist Post: Roof-hatch manufacturer's standard device for attachment to roof-access ladder.

- 1 Operation: Post locks in place on full extension; release mechanism returns post to closed position.
- 2 Height: 42 inches above finished roof deck.
- 3 Material: Steel tube.
- 4 Post: 1-5/8-inch-diameter pipe.
- 5 Finish: Manufacturer's standard baked enamel or powder coat.

- a. Color: Manufacturer's standard Safety Yellow.

## 2.5 DUCT SUPPORTS

A. Duct Supports: Extruded-aluminum, urethane-insulated supports, 2 inches in diameter, or 2" square; with manufacturer's recommended hardware for mounting to structure or structural roof deck.

1. Manufacturers with products meeting requirements include, but are not limited to:

- a. PHP Systems
- b. Unistrut Service Co.
- c. Cooper Industries
- d. MAPA Products

2. Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.6 PREFORMED FLASHING SLEEVES

A. Exhaust Vent Flashing: Double-walled metal flashing sleeve or boot, insulation filled, with integral deck flange, 12 inches high, with removable metal hood and slotted metal collar.

- 1 Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
- 2 Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
- 3 Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

B. Vent Stack Flashing: Metal flashing sleeve, uninsulated, with integral deck flange.

- 1 Metal: Aluminum sheet, 0.063 inch thick.
- 2 Height: 13 inches.
- 3 Diameter: As indicated on Drawings.
- 4 Finish: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.7 METAL MATERIALS

A. Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation.

1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.
2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

B. Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 792/A 792M, AZ50 coated.

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A 755/A 755M. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 621. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

C. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B 209, manufacturer's standard alloy for finish required, with temper to suit forming operations and performance required.

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish: Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

- a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer Finish: AAMA 2605. System consisting of primer and fluoropolymer color topcoat containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight.

2. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester-backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat, with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

D. Aluminum Extrusions and Tubes: ASTM B 221, manufacturer's standard alloy and temper for type of use, finished to match assembly where used; otherwise mill finished.

E. Stainless-Steel Sheet and Shapes: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

F. Steel Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M unless otherwise indicated.

G. Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube.

H. Galvanized-Steel Tube: ASTM A 500/A 500M, round tube, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

I. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, galvanized.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items required by manufacturer for a complete installation.

B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C 1289, thickness and thermal resistivity as indicated.

C. Wood Nailers: Softwood lumber, pressure treated with waterborne preservatives for aboveground use, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, containing no arsenic or chromium, and complying with AWPAC2; not less than 1-1/2 inches thick.

D. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

E. Underlayment:

1. Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt, nonperforated.
2. Polyethylene Sheet: 6-mil-thick polyethylene sheet complying with ASTM D 4397.
3. Slip Sheet: Building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum, rosin sized.
4. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Sheet: Minimum 30 to 40 mils thick, consisting of slip-resisting polyethylene-film top surface laminated to layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing; cold applied. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
5. Fasteners: Roof accessory manufacturer's recommended fasteners suitable for application and metals being fastened. Match finish of exposed fasteners with finish of material being fastened. Provide

nonremovable fastener heads to exterior exposed fasteners. Furnish the following unless otherwise indicated:

6. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated or Aluminum-Zinc Alloy-Coated Steel: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel according to ASTM A 153/A 153M or ASTM F 2329.
  7. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
  8. Fasteners for Stainless-Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
- F. Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard tubular or fingered design of neoprene, EPDM, PVC, or silicone or a flat design of foam rubber, sponge neoprene, or cork.
- G. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C 920, elastomeric polyurethane polymer sealant as recommended by roof accessory manufacturer for installation indicated; low modulus; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints and remain watertight.
- H. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C 1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for expansion joints with limited movement.

## 2.9 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, to verify actual locations, dimensions, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
- C. Verify dimensions of roof openings for roof accessories.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install roof accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1 Install roof accessories level; plumb; true to line and elevation; and without warping, jogs in alignment, buckling, or tool marks.
  - 2 Anchor roof accessories securely in place so they are capable of resisting indicated loads.
  - 3 Use fasteners, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete installation of roof accessories and fit them to substrates.
  - 4 Install roof accessories to resist exposure to weather without failing, rattling, leaking, or loosening of fasteners and seals.

B. Metal Protection: Protect metals against galvanic action by separating dissimilar metals from contact with each other or with corrosive substrates by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by manufacturer.

- 1 Coat concealed side of uncoated aluminum, or stainless-steel roof accessories with bituminous coating where in contact with wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
- 2 Underlayment: Where installing roof accessories directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install a course of underlayment and cover with manufacturer's recommended slip sheet.
- 3 Bed flanges in thick coat of asphalt roofing cement where required by manufacturers of roof accessories for waterproof performance.

C. Roof Curb Installation: Install each roof curb so top surface is level.

D. Equipment Support Installation: Install equipment supports so top surfaces are level with each other.

E. Roof-Hatch Installation:

- 1 Verify that roof hatch operates properly. Clean, lubricate, and adjust operating mechanism and hardware.
- 2 Attach safety railing system to roof-hatch curb.
- 3 Attach ladder-assist post according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Pipe Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58 and MSS SP-89. Install supports and attachments as required to properly support piping. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together.

1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Space supports for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.

G. Preformed Flashing-Sleeve Installation: Secure flashing sleeve to roof membrane according to flashing-sleeve manufacturer's written instructions; flash sleeve flange to surrounding roof membrane according to roof membrane manufacturer's instructions.

H. Seal joints with elastomeric or butyl sealant as required by roof accessory manufacturer.

### 3.3 REPAIR AND CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.

B. Touch up factory-primed surfaces with compatible primer ready for field painting.

C. Clean exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Clean off excess sealants.

E. Replace roof accessories that have been damaged or that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 077200 SECTION

079200 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Silicone joint sealants.
- 2 Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
- 3 Urethane joint sealants.
- 4 Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
- 5 Butyl joint sealants.
- 6 Latex joint sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants" for sealing joints in sound-rated construction.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

- 1 Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
- 2 Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
- 3 Joint-sealant formulation.
- 4 Joint-sealant color.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Product Test Reports: For each kind of joint sealant, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

- C. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.
- D. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Product Testing: Test joint sealants using a qualified testing agency.
  - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.
- C. Mockups: Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

## 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
  - 1 When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
  - 2 When joint substrates are wet.
  - 3 Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
  - 4 Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:
  - 1 Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
  - 2 Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.
  - 3 Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
  - 4 Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.2 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Uses T and NT.

## 2.3 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested according to ASTM C 1248.
- B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

## 2.4 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
- B. Urethane, M, NS, 50, NT: Multicomponent, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type M, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

## 2.5 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.
- B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

## 2.6 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C 1311.

## 2.7 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C 834, Type OP, Grade NF.

## 2.8 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING



- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin), Type O (open-cell material), Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin), or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.
- C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

- a. Metal.
- b. Glass.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of kind indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

- 1 Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
- 2 Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
- 3 Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

- 1 Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
- 2 Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
- 3 Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

- 1 Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
- 2 Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
- 3 Provide concave joint profile per Figure 8A in ASTM C 1193 unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

1. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
  - a. Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 feet of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
  - b. Perform one test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C 1521.
  - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
3. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
  - a. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
  - b. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
  - c. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
    - 1 Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
    - 2 Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.7 JOINT-SEALANT SCHEDULE

#### A. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

##### 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
- b. Tile control and expansion joints.
- c. Joints between different materials listed above.
- d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Urethane, M, P, 50, T, NT.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

#### B. Joint-Sealant Application: Exterior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

##### 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
- b. Joints between plant-precast architectural concrete units.
- c. Control and expansion joints in unit masonry.
- d. Joints between metal panels.
- e. Joints between different materials listed above.
- f. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
- g. Control and expansion joints in ceilings and other overhead surfaces.
- h. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Silicone, nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

#### C. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in horizontal traffic surfaces.

##### 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
- b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
- c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

#### D. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

##### 1. Joint Locations:

- a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
- b. Tile control and expansion joints.
- c. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of unit masonry walls.
- d. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

E. Joint-Sealant Application: Interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces not subject to significant movement.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Control joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
- b. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows and elevator entrances.
- c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Acrylic latex.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

F. Joint-Sealant Application: Mildew-resistant interior joints in vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
- b. Tile control and expansion joints where indicated.
- c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Silicone, mildew resistant, acid curing, S, NS, 25, NT.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.

G. Joint-Sealant Application: Concealed mastics.

1. Joint Locations:

- a. Aluminum thresholds.
- b. Sill plates.
- c. Other joints as indicated on Drawings.

- 1 Joint Sealant: Butyl-rubber based.
- 2 Joint-Sealant Color: As indicated by manufacturer's designations.

END OF SECTION 079200

SECTION 081113 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Standard and custom hollow metal doors and frames.
- 2 Steel sidelight, borrowed lite and transom frames.
- 3 Louvers installed in hollow metal doors.
- 4 Light frames and glazing installed in hollow metal doors.

B. Related Sections:

- 1 Division 04 Section "Unit Masonry" for embedding anchors for hollow metal work into masonry construction.
- 2 Division 08 Section "Flush Wood Doors".
- 3 Division 08 Section "Glazing" for glass view panels in hollow metal doors.
- 4 Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
- 5 Division 28 Section "Access Control Hardware".
- 6 Division 09 Sections "Exterior Painting" and "Interior Painting" for field painting hollow metal doors and frames.

C. Codes and References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

1. ANSI/SDI A250.8 - Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
2. ANSI/SDI A250.4 -Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Physical Endurance for Steel Doors, Frames, Frames Anchors and Hardware Reinforcing.
3. ANSI/SDI A250.6 -Recommended Practice for Hardware Reinforcing on Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
4. ANSI/SDI A250.10 -Test Procedure and Acceptance Criteria for Prime Painted Steel Surfaces for Steel Doors and Frames.
5. ANSI/SDI A250.11 - Recommended Erection Instructions for Steel Frames.
6. ASTM A1008 -Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy and High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability.
7. ASTM A653 - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process.
8. ASTM A924 - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Steel Sheet, Metallic-Coated by the Hot-Dip Process.
9. ASTM C 1363 - Standard Test Method for Thermal Performance of Building Assemblies by Means of a Hot Box Apparatus.
10. ANSI/BHMA A156.115 - Hardware Preparation in Steel Doors and Frames.
11. ANSI/SDI 122 -Installation and Troubleshooting Guide for Standard Steel Doors and Frames.
12. ANSI/NFPA 80 -Standard for Fire Doors and Fire Windows; National Fire Protection Association.

13. ANSI/NFPA 105: Standard for the Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
14. NFPA 252 - Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies; National Fire Protection Association.
15. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.
16. UL 1784 - Standard for Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies.

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, hardware reinforcements, profiles, anchors, fire-resistance rating, and finishes.
- B. Door hardware supplier is to furnish templates, template reference number and/or physical hardware to the steel door and frame supplier in order to prepare the doors and frames to receive the finish hardware items.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include the following:
  - 1 Elevations of each door design.
  - 2 Details of doors, including vertical and horizontal edge details and metal thicknesses.
  - 3 Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
  - 4 Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
  - 5 Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
  - 6 Details of accessories.
  - 7 Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.
  - 8 Details of conduit and preparations for power, signal, and control systems.
- D. Samples for Verification:
  1. Samples are only required by request of the architect and for manufacturers that are not current members of the Steel Door Institute.

### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain hollow metal doors and frames through one source from a single manufacturer wherever possible.
- B. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, furnish SDI-Certified manufacturer products that comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8, latest edition, "Recommended Specifications for Standard Steel Doors and Frames".
- C. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to UL10C (neutral pressure at 40" above sill) or UL 10C.
  - 1 Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies Construction: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, attach construction label certifying doors are built to standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire rated door assemblies except for size.
  - 2 Temperature-Rise Limit: Where indicated and at vertical exit enclosures (stairwell openings) and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F (250 deg C) above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
  - 3 Smoke Control Door Assemblies: Comply with NFPA 105.
    - a. Smoke "S" Label: Doors to bear "S" label, and include smoke and draft control gasketing applied to frame and on meeting stiles of pair doors.

- D. Fire-Rated, Borrowed-Light Frame Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing according to NFPA 257. Provide labeled glazing material.
- E. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier, Installer, and Contractor to review proper methods and procedures for installing hollow metal doors and frames and to verify installation of electrical knockout boxes and conduit at frames with electrified or access control hardware.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver hollow metal work palletized, wrapped, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project site storage. Do not use non-vented plastic.
- B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.
- C. Store hollow metal work under cover at Project site. Place in stacks of five units maximum in a vertical position with heads up, spaced by blocking, on minimum 4-inch high wood blocking. Do not store in a manner that traps excess humidity.
  - 1. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation. Door and frames to be stacked in a vertical upright position.

## 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for hollow metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty includes installation and finishing that may be required due to repair or replacement of defective doors.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide steel doors and frames from a SDI Certified manufacturer:



- 1 CECO Door Products (C).
- 2 Curries Company (CU).

## 2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.
- C. Frame Anchors: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; with minimum G60 (Z180) or A60 (ZF180) metallic coating.

## 2.3 HOLLOW METAL DOORS

- A. General: Provide 1-3/4 inch doors of design indicated, not less than thickness indicated; fabricated with smooth surfaces, without visible joints or seams on exposed faces unless otherwise indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and ANSI/NAAMM HMMA 867.
- B. Exterior Doors (Energy Efficient): Face sheets fabricated of commercial quality hot-dipped zinc coated steel that complies with ASTM A924 A60. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model, and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level.
  1. Design: Flush panel.
  2. Core Construction: Foamed in place polyurethane and steel reinforced core with no stiffener face welds.
    - a. Provide 18 gauge steel vertical reinforcements 6 inches apart and welded in place. Foamed in place polyurethane core is chemically bonded to all interior surfaces. No face welding is permitted.
    - b. Thermal properties to rate at a fully operable minimum U-Factor 0.374 and R-Value 2.53, including insulated door, Mercury thermal-break frame and threshold.
    - c. Kerf Type Frames: Thermal properties to rate at a fully operable minimum U-Factor 0.378 and R-Value 2.5, including insulated door, kerf type frame, and threshold.
  3. Level/Model: Level 3 and Physical Performance Level A (Extra Heavy Duty), Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch - 1.3-mm) thick steel, Model 2.
  4. Vertical Edges: Vertical edges to be mechanically interlocked with hairline seam. Beveled Lock Edge, 1/8 inch in 2 inches (3 mm in 50 mm).
  5. Top and Bottom Edges: Reinforce tops and bottoms of doors with a continuous steel channel not less than 16 gauge, extending the full width of the door and welded to the face sheet. Doors with an inverted top channel to include a steel closure channel, screw attached, with the web of the channel flush with the face sheets of the door. Plastic or composite channel fillers are not acceptable.
  6. Hinge Reinforcement: Minimum 7 gauge (3/16") plate 1-1/4" x 9".
  7. Hardware Reinforcements: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.

C. Interior Doors: Face sheets fabricated of commercial quality cold rolled steel that complies with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M. Provide doors complying with requirements indicated below by referencing ANSI/SDI A250.8 for level and model and ANSI/SDI A250.4 for physical performance level:

1. Design: Flush panel.

a. Fire Door Core: As required to provide fire-protection and temperature-rise ratings indicated.

- 1 Level/Model: Level 2 and Physical Performance Level B (Heavy Duty), Minimum 18 gauge (0.042-inch - 1.0-mm) thick steel, Model 2.
- 2 Top and Bottom Edges: Reinforce tops and bottoms of doors with a continuous steel channel not less than 16 gauge, extending the full width of the door and welded to the face sheet.
- 3 Hinge Reinforcement: Minimum 7 gauge (3/16") plate 1-1/4" x 9" or minimum 14 gauge continuous channel with pierced holes, drilled and tapped.
- 4 Hardware Reinforcements: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 with reinforcing plates from same material as door face sheets.

D. Manufacturers Basis of Design:

- 1 Curries Company (CU) - Polystyrene Core - 707 Series.
- 2 Curries Company (CU) - Energy Efficient - 797 Mercury Series.

## 2.4 HOLLOW METAL FRAMES

A. General: Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.8 and with details indicated for type and profile.

B. Thermal Break Frames: Subject to the same compliance standards and requirements as standard hollow metal frames. Tested for thermal performance in accordance with NFRC 102, and resistance to air infiltration in accordance with NFRC 400. Where indicated provide thermally broken frame profiles available for use in both masonry and drywall construction. Fabricate with 1/16" positive thermal break and integral vinyl weatherstripping.

C. Exterior Frames: Fabricated of hot-dipped zinc coated steel that complies with ASTM A 653/A 653M, Coating Designation A60.

- 1 Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners. Profile as indicated on drawings.
- 2 Frames: Minimum 14 gauge (0.067-inch -1.7-mm) thick steel sheet.
- 3 Manufacturers Basis of Design:

a. Curries Company (CU) – Thermal Break TQ Series.

D. Interior Frames: Fabricated from cold-rolled steel sheet that complies with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.

1. Fabricate frames with mitered or coped corners. Profile as indicated on drawings.
2. Frames: Minimum 16 gauge (0.053-inch -1.3-mm) thick steel sheet.
3. Manufacturers Basis of Design:
  - a. Curries Company (CU) - CM Series.
  - b. Curries Company (CU) - M Series.

E. Fire rated frames: Fabricate frames in accordance with NFPA 80, listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated.

- F. Hardware Reinforcement: Fabricate according to ANSI/SDI A250.6 Table 4 with reinforcement plates from same material as frames.

## 2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

### A. Jamb Anchors:

- 1 Masonry Type: Adjustable strap-and-stirrup or T-shaped anchors to suit frame size, formed from A60 metallic coated material, not less than 0.042 inch thick, with corrugated or perforated straps not less than 2 inches wide by 10 inches long; or wire anchors not less than 0.177 inch thick.
- 2 Stud Wall Type: Designed to engage stud and not less than 0.042 inch thick.
- 3 Compression Type for Drywall Slip-on (Knock-Down) Frames: Adjustable compression anchors.

- B. Floor Anchors: Floor anchors to be provided at each jamb, formed from A60 metallic coated material, not less than 0.042 inches thick.

- C. Mortar Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.

## 2.6 LIGHT OPENINGS AND GLAZING

- A. Stops and Moldings: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints at fabricator's shop. Fixed and removable stops to allow multiple glazed lites each to be removed independently. Coordinate frame rabbet widths between fixed and removable stops with the type of glazing and installation indicated.

- B. Moldings for Glazed Lites in Doors and Loose Stops for Glazed Lites in Frames: Minimum 20 gauge thick, fabricated from same material as door face sheet in which they are installed.

- C. Fixed Frame Moldings: Formed integral with hollow metal frames, a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) high unless otherwise indicated. Provide fixed frame moldings and stops on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames.

- D. Preformed Metal Frames for Light Openings: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048inch-thick, cold rolled steel sheet; with baked enamel or powder coated finish; and approved for use in doors of fire protection rating indicated. Match pre-finished door paint color where applicable.

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Mullions and Transom Bars: Join to adjacent members by welding or rigid mechanical anchors.

- B. Grout Guards: Formed from same material as frames, not less than 0.016 inches thick.

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate hollow metal work to be rigid and free of defects, warp, or buckle. Accurately form metal to required sizes and profiles, with minimum radius for thickness of metal. Where practical, fit and assemble units in manufacturer's plant. When shipping limitations so dictate, frames for large openings are to be fabricated in sections for splicing or splining in the field by others.

- B. Tolerances: Fabricate hollow metal work to tolerances indicated in ANSI/SDI A250.8.

- C. Hollow Metal Doors:

- 1 Exterior Doors: Provide optional weep-hole openings in bottom of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape where specified.
- 2 Glazed Lites: Factory cut openings in doors with applied trim or kits to fit. Factory install glazing where indicated.
- 3 Astragals: Provide overlapping astragals as noted in door hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware" on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted.
- 4 Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge strap for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

#### D. Hollow Metal Frames:

1. Shipping Limitations: Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of same thickness metal as frames.
2. Welded Frames: Weld flush face joints continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make smooth, flush, and invisible.
  - a. Welded frames are to be provided with two steel spreaders temporarily attached to the bottom of both jambs to serve as a brace during shipping and handling. Spreader bars are for bracing only and are not to be used to size the frame opening.
3. Sidelight and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by butt welding.
4. High Frequency Hinge Reinforcement: Provide high frequency hinge reinforcements at door openings 48-inches and wider with mortise butt type hinges at top hinge locations.
5. Continuous Hinge Reinforcement: Provide welded continuous 12 gauge straps for continuous hinges specified in hardware sets in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".
6. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated for removable stops, provide security screws at exterior locations.
7. Mortar Guards: Provide guard boxes at back of hardware mortises in frames at all hinges and strike preps regardless of grouting requirements.
8. Floor Anchors: Weld anchors to bottom of jambs and mullions with at least four spot welds per anchor.
9. Jamb Anchors: Provide number and spacing of anchors as follows:
  - a. Masonry Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
    - 1) Two anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
    - 2) Three anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 3) Four anchors per jamb from 90 to 120 inches high.
    - 4) Four anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches or fraction thereof above 120 inches high.
  - b. Stud Wall Type: Locate anchors not more than 18 inches from top and bottom of frame. Space anchors not more than 32 inches o.c. and as follows:
    - 1) Three anchors per jamb up to 60 inches high.
    - 2) Four anchors per jamb from 60 to 90 inches high.
    - 3) Five anchors per jamb from 90 to 96 inches high.
    - 4) Five anchors per jamb plus 1 additional anchor per jamb for each 24 inches

or fraction thereof above 96 inches high.

5) Two anchors per head for frames above 42 inches wide and mounted in metal stud partitions.

10. Door Silencers: Except on weatherstripped or gasketed doors, drill stops to receive door silencers. Silencers to be supplied by frame manufacturer regardless if specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware".

11. Bituminous Coating: Where frames are fully grouted with an approved Portland Cement based grout or mortar, coat inside of frame throat with a water based bituminous or asphaltic emulsion coating to a minimum thickness of 3 mils DFT, tested in accordance with UL 10C and applied to the frame under a 3rd party independent follow-up service procedure.

E. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow metal work to receive template mortised hardware; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to the Door Hardware Schedule and templates furnished as specified in Division 08 Section "Door Hardware."

- 1 Locate hardware as indicated, or if not indicated, according to ANSI/SDI A250.8.
- 2 Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised and surface mounted door hardware.
- 3 Comply with applicable requirements in ANSI/SDI A250.6 and ANSI/DHI A115 Series specifications for preparation of hollow metal work for hardware.
- 4 Coordinate locations of conduit and wiring boxes for electrical connections with Division 26 Sections.

## 2.9 STEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finishes: Doors and frames to be cleaned, and chemically treated to insure maximum finish paint adhesion. Surfaces of the door and frame exposed to view to receive a factory applied coat of rust inhibiting shop primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead and chromate free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10 acceptance criteria; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; and compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. General Contractor to verify the accuracy of dimensions given to the steel door and frame manufacturer for existing openings or existing frames (strike height, hinge spacing, hinge back set, etc.).
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.
- B. Prior to installation, adjust and securely brace welded hollow metal frames for square, level, twist, and plumb condition.
- C. Tolerances shall comply with SDI-117 "Manufacturing Tolerances Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
- D. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-template, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install hollow metal work plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; comply with Drawings and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Hollow Metal Frames: Install hollow metal frames of size and profile indicated. Comply with ANSI/SDI A250.11 and NFPA 80 at fire rated openings.
  - 1 Set frames accurately in position, plumbed, leveled, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete and frames properly set and secured, remove temporary braces, leaving surfaces smooth and undamaged. Shim as necessary to comply with installation tolerances.
  - 2 Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor, and secure with post-installed expansion anchors.
  - 3 Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with mortar.
  - 4 Grout Requirements: Do not grout head of frames unless reinforcing has been installed in head of frame. Do not grout vertical or horizontal closed mullion members.
- C. Hollow Metal Doors: Fit hollow metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below. Shim as necessary.
  - 1. Non-Fire-Rated Standard Steel Doors:
    - a. Jambs and Head: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - b. Between Edges of Pairs of Doors: 1/8 inch plus or minus 1/16 inch.
    - c. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Threshold: Maximum 3/8 inch.
    - d. Between Bottom of Door and Top of Finish Floor (No Threshold): Maximum 3/4 inch.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
- D. Field Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Division 08 Section "Glazing" and with hollow metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Final Adjustments: Check and readjust operating hardware items immediately before final inspection. Leave work in complete and proper operating condition. Remove and replace defective work, including hollow metal work that is warped, bowed, or otherwise unacceptable.
- B. Remove grout and other bonding material from hollow metal work immediately after installation.
- C. Prime-Coat and Painted Finish Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat, or painted finishes, and apply touchup of compatible air drying, rust-inhibitive primer, zinc rich primer (exterior and galvanized openings) or finish paint.

END OF SECTION 081113

SECTION 081416 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Solid-core doors with wood-veneer faces.
- 2 Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 088000 "Glazing" for glass view panels in flush wood doors.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of door. Include details of core and edge construction and trim for openings. Include factory-finishing specifications.

- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each kind of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

- 1 Dimensions and locations of blocking.
- 2 Dimensions and locations of mortises and holes for hardware.
- 3 Dimensions and locations of cutouts.
- 4 Undercuts.
- 5 Requirements for veneer matching.
- 6 Doors to be factory finished and finish requirements.
- 7 Fire-protection ratings for fire-rated doors.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For factory-finished doors.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Factory finishes applied to actual door face materials, approximately 8 by 10 inches, for each material and finish. For each wood species and transparent finish, provide set of three Samples showing typical range of color and grain to be expected in finished Work.
2. Corner sections of doors, approximately 8 by 10 inches, with door faces and edges representing actual materials to be used.
  - a. Provide Samples for each species of veneer and solid lumber required.
  - b. Provide Samples for each color, texture, and pattern of plastic laminate required.
  - c. Finish veneer-faced door Samples with same materials proposed for factory-finished doors.
3. Frames for light openings, 6 inches long, for each material, type, and finish required.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.
- B. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: AWI Quality Certification Program certificates.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Comply with requirements of referenced standard and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Package doors individually in cardboard cartons and wrap bundles of doors in plastic sheeting.
- C. Mark each door on top and bottom rail with opening number used on Shop Drawings.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install doors until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature between 60 and 90 deg F and relative humidity between 43 and 70 percent during remainder of construction period.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace doors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Warping (bow, cup, or twist) more than 1/4 inch in a 42-by-84-inch section.
    - b. Telegraphing of core construction in face veneers exceeding 0.01 inch in a 3-inch span.
  - 2. Warranty Period for Solid-Core Interior Doors: Life of installation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Basis of Design: Masonite Architectural Wood Doors;
    - a. Cendura Series
    - b. Species: White Maple, Plain Sliced
    - c. Finish: Stain, To be determined by architect
  - 1 Assa Abloy
  - 2 Marshfield
  - 3 Baillargeon
  - 4 Lexington Mfg. Inc.
  - 5 Oshkosh Door Co.
  - 6 Others by Substitution. Subject to compliance with requirements and acceptance by Architect.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain flush wood doors indicated to be blueprint matched with paneling and wood paneling from single manufacturer.



## 2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS, GENERAL

A. Quality Standard: In addition to requirements specified, comply with WDMA I.S.1-A, "Architectural Wood Flush Doors."

B. WDMA I.S.1-A Performance Grade:

- 1 Heavy Duty unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 Extra Heavy Duty: Public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces (Training Room), exits, and where indicated].
- 3 Standard Duty: Closets (not including janitor's closets) and private toilets.

C. Fire-Rated Wood Doors: Doors complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

- 1 Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- 2 Cores: Provide core specified or mineral core as needed to provide fire-protection rating indicated.
- 3 Edge Construction: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.

D. Structural-Composite-Lumber-Core Doors:

1. Structural Composite Lumber: WDMA I.S.10.
  - a. Screw Withdrawal, Face: 700 lbf.
  - b. Screw Withdrawal, Edge: 400 lbf .

E. Mineral-Core Doors:

- 1 Core: Noncombustible mineral product complying with requirements of referenced quality standard and testing and inspecting agency for fire-protection rating indicated.
- 2 Blocking: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated as needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.
- 3 Edge Construction: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
  - a. Screw-Holding Capability: 550 lbf per WDMA T.M.-10.

## 2.3 VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

A. Interior Solid-Core Doors:

1. Grade: Custom (Grade A faces).
2. Species: Select white maple.
3. Cut: Plain sliced (flat sliced).
4. Match between Veneer Leaves: Book match.
5. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: Running match.
6. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening.
7. Room Match: Match door faces within each separate room or area of building. Corridor-door faces do not need to match where they are separated by 10 feet or more.
8. Room Match: Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.

9. Blueprint Match: Where indicated, provide doors with faces produced from same flitches as adjacent wood paneling and arranged to provide blueprint match with wood paneling. Comply with requirements in Section 064216 "Flush Wood Paneling."
10. Exposed Vertical Edges: Applied wood edges of same species as faces and covering edges of crossbands - edge Type D.
11. Core: Either glued wood stave or structural composite lumber.
12. Construction: Five or seven plies. Stiles and rails are bonded to core, then entire unit is abrasive planed before veneering. Faces are bonded to core using a hot press.

## 2.4 LIGHT FRAMES

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.

- 1 Wood Species: Same species as door faces.
- 2 Profile: Manufacturer's standard shape.

- B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.

1. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.

- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, BHMA156.115-W, and hardware templates.

1. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.

- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.

- 1 Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
- 2 Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.6 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Doors for Transparent Finish: Shop prime faces and all four edges with stain (if required), other required pretreatments, and first coat of finish as specified in Section 099300 "Staining and Transparent Finishing." Seal edges of cutouts and mortises with first coat of finish.

## 2.7 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. General: Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.

1. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises. Stains and fillers may be omitted on top and

bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.

B. Factory finish doors.

C. Transparent Finish:

- 1 Grade: Custom.
- 2 Finish: AWI's, AWMAC's, and WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" System 10, UV curable, water based.
- 3 Staining: Match Architect's sample.
- 4 Sheen: Satin.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine doors and installed door frames, with Installer present, before hanging doors.

- 1 Verify that installed frames comply with indicated requirements for type, size, location, and swing characteristics and have been installed with level heads and plumb jambs.
- 2 Reject doors with defects.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Hardware: For installation, see Section 087100 "Door Hardware"

B. Installation Instructions: Install doors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.

- 1 Install fire-rated doors according to NFPA 80.
- 2 Install smoke- and draft-control doors according to NFPA 105.

C. Job-Fitted Doors: Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below; do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors. Machine doors for hardware. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.

1. Clearances: Provide 1/8 inch at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors. Provide 1/8 inch from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide 1/4 inch from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
  - a. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
  - b. 2. Bevel non-fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock and hinge edges.
2. Bevel fire-rated doors 1/8 inch in 2 inches at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

D. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

E. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 081416

084113 - ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Storefront framing.
- 2 Manual-swing entrance doors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 081216 "Aluminum Frames" for interior aluminum framing.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
2. Include full-size isometric details of each type of vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, showing the following:
  - a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
  - b. Anchorage.
  - c. Expansion provisions.
  - d. Glazing.
  - e. Flashing and drainage.
3. Show connection to and continuity with adjacent thermal, weather, air, and vapor barriers.
4. Include point-to-point wiring diagrams showing the following:
  - a. Power requirements for each electrically operated door hardware.
  - b. Location and types of switches, signal device, conduit sizes, and number and size of wires.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Preconstruction Laboratory Mockup Testing Submittals:

- 1 Testing Program: Developed specifically for Project.
- 2 Test Reports: Prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency for each mockup test.
- 3 Record Drawings: As-built drawings of preconstruction laboratory mockups showing changes made during preconstruction laboratory mockup testing.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer and field testing agency.

C. Energy Performance Certificates: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each aluminum-framed entrance and storefront.

D. Product Test Reports: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Maintenance Data for Structural Sealant: For structural-sealant-glazed storefront to include in maintenance manuals. Include ASTM C 1401 recommendations for post-installation-phase quality-control program.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not change intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If changes are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Structural failures, including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
- b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
- c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
- e. Failure of operating components.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
- b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
- c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of aluminum-framed entrance and storefront system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts shall withstand movements of supporting structure, including, but not limited to, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
2. Failure also includes the following:
  - a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
  - b. Glass breakage.
  - c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
  - d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.

B. Structural Loads:

- 1 Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

2 Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

- 1 Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to 1/175 of clear span for spans of up to 13 feet 6 inches and to 1/240 of clear span plus 1/4 inch for spans greater than 13 feet 6 inches or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
- 2 Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch .

D. Structural: Test according to ASTM E 330/E 330M as follows:

- 1 When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors, do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
- 2 When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, storefront assemblies, including entrance doors and anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, or permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
- 3 Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.

E. Air Infiltration: Test according to ASTM E 283 for infiltration as follows:

1. Fixed Framing and Glass Area:

- a. Maximum air leakage of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.

2. Entrance Doors:

- a. Single Doors: Maximum air leakage of 0.5 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.

F. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Test according to ASTM E 331 as follows:

1. No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas, including entrance doors, when tested according to a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.

G. Energy Performance: Certify and label energy performance according to NFRC as follows:

- 1 Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have U-factor of not more than 0.42 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to NFRC 100.
- 2 Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC): Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have SHGC of no greater than 0.40 as determined according to NFRC 200.
- 3 Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas as a system shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 45 as determined according to NFRC 500.

H. Noise Reduction: Test according to ASTM E 90, with ratings determined by ASTM E 1332, as follows.

1. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class: Minimum 26.

I. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.



## 2.3 STOREFRONT SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:

- 1 Kawneer: Trifab 451T Storefront Framing
- 2 Tubelite: TU 24650
- 3 Oldcastle Building Envelope: Series 3000 Thermal Multiplane Storefront Framing (Exterior); Series FG2000 (Interior)
- 4 Others by Substitution. Subject to compliance with requirements and acceptance by Architect

B. Framing Members: Manufacturer's extruded-or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

- 1 Exterior Framing Construction: Thermally broken.
- 2 Interior Vestibule Framing Construction: Nonthermal.
- 3 Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
- 4 Glazing Plane: Front.
- 5 Finish: Color anodic finish.
- 6 Fabrication Method: Field-fabricated stick system.
- 7 Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
- 8 Steel Reinforcement: As required by manufacturer.

C. Backer Plates: Manufacturer's standard, continuous backer plates for framing members, if not integral, where framing abuts adjacent construction.

D. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

E. Insulated Spandrel Panels: Comply with Section 074213.19 "Insulated Metal Wall Panels."

F. Insulated Spandrel Panels: Laminated, metal-faced flat panels with no deviations in plane exceeding 0.8 percent of panel dimension in width or length.

1. Overall Panel Thickness: 1 inch.
2. Exterior Skin: Aluminum.
  - a. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated.
  - b. Finish: Match framing system.
  - c. Texture: Smooth.
  - d. Backing Sheet: 1/8-inch-thick tempered hardboard.
3. Interior Skin: Aluminum.
  - a. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated.
  - b. Finish: Mill finish.
  - c. Texture: Smooth.
  - d. Backing Sheet: 1/8-inch- thick, tempered hardboard.
4. Thermal Insulation Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid, closed-cell, polyisocyanurate board.
5. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

## 2.4 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing or automatic operation.

- 1 Door Construction: 2-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.188-inch-thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
- 2 Door Design: Narrow stile; 2-1/8-inch nominal width].
- 3 Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
  - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

## 2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

A. Entrance Door Hardware: Hardware not specified in this Section is specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

B. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door, to comply with requirements in this Section.

1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated, and named manufacturers' products.
2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
3. Opening-Force Requirements:
  - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
  - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.

C. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, quantity, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:

- 1 Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
- 2 References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.

D. Cylinders: As specified in Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

E. Pivot Hinges: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1.

1. Offset-Pivot Hinges: Provide top, bottom, and intermediate offset pivots at each door leaf.

F. Butt Hinges: BHMA A156.1, Grade 1, radius corner.

1. Nonremovable Pins: Provide setscrew in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while entrance door is closed.
2. Exterior Hinges: Stainless steel, with stainless-steel pin.
3. Quantities:
  - a. For doors up to 87 inches high, provide three hinges per leaf.

b. For doors more than 87 and up to 120 inches high, provide four hinges per leaf.

G. Continuous-Gear Hinges: BHMA A156.26.

H. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.5, Grade 1.

I. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.

J. Automatic and Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1.

K. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.

L. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.

M. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.

N. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to comply with field conditions and requirements for opening force.

O. Concealed Overhead Holders and Stops: BHMA A156.8, Grade 1.

P. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.

Q. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.

1 Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000 molded neoprene or ASTM D 2287 molded PVC.

2 Sliding Type: AAMA 701/702, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

R. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.

S. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21 raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of 1/2 inch.

T. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

## 2.6 GLAZING

A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.

C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

A. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.

B. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.

C. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429/B 429M.

D. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.

E. Steel Reinforcement:

- 1 Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- 2 Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
- 3 Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.
- 4 Primer: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM, and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

A. Automatic Door Operators: Section 084229.33 "Swinging Automatic Entrances."

B. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

- 1 Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
- 2 Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.

C. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

D. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.

E. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint containing no asbestos, formulated for 30mil thickness per coat.

F. Rigid PVC Filler.

## 2.9 FABRICATION

A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

- 1 Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
- 2 Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
- 3 Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
- 4 Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
- 5 Provisions for field replacement of glazing from exterior.

6 Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.

E. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.

1. At interior and exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.

F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.

1 At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.

2 At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

## 2.10 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

1. Color and Gloss: Match existing

## 2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Structural Sealant: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, assembly material qualification procedures, sealant testing, and assembly fabrication reviews and checks.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare surfaces that are in contact with structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions, to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

#### A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Seal perimeter and other joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

#### — B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum is in contact with dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with materials recommended by manufacturer for this purpose or by installing nonconductive spacers.
  2. Where aluminum is in contact with concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.
- C. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed, as specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," to produce weathertight installation.
- D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.
- E. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."
- F. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
- H. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
- I. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

#### A. Erection Tolerances: Install aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:
  - a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
  - b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
  - c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.
4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

#### A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

#### B. Field Quality-Control Testing: Perform the following test on representative areas of aluminum-framed

entrances and storefronts.

1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, areas designated by Architect shall be tested according to AAMA 501.2 and shall not evidence water penetration.

- a. Perform a minimum of **two** tests in areas as directed by Architect.

2. Air Infiltration: ASTM E 783 at 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-airpressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.

- a. Perform a minimum of two tests in areas as directed by Architect.

3. Water Penetration: ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.

C. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefronts will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

#### A. Entrance Door Hardware:

- 1 Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
- 2 Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide **six** months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Use parts and supplies that are the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

END OF SECTION 084113

## SECTION 085113 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum windows for exterior locations.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, glazing and fabrication methods, dimensions of individual components and profiles, hardware, and finishes for aluminum windows.

- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum windows.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.

- C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color specified, 2 by 4 inches in size.

- D. Product Schedule: For aluminum windows. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer and Installer.

- B. Product Test Reports: For each type of aluminum window, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

- D. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating aluminum windows that meet or exceed performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by test reports and calculations.

- B. Installer Qualifications: An installer acceptable to aluminum window manufacturer for installation of units required for this Project.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY



A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Failure to meet performance requirements.
- b. Structural failures including excessive deflection, water leakage, condensation, and air infiltration.
- c. Faulty operation of movable sash and hardware.
- d. Deterioration of materials and finishes beyond normal weathering.
- e. Failure of insulating glass.

2. Warranty Period:

- a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- b. Glazing Units: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- c. Aluminum Finish: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum windows from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

1. Window Certification: AAMA certified with label attached to each window.

B. Performance Class and Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 as follows:

- 1 Minimum Performance Class: CW.
- 2 Minimum Performance Grade: 30.

C. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.55 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.

D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of 0.40.

E. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 45.

F. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg material surface.

G. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Rated for not less than 26 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.

H. Outside-Inside Transmission Class (OITC): Rated for not less than 26 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.

## 2.3 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

### A. Manufacturers:

- 1 Kawneer: 8400TL Thermal Windows
- 2 Boyd Series 600

### B. Operating Types: Provide the following operating types in locations indicated on Drawings:

1. Horizontal Sliding

### C. Frames and Sashes: Aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

1. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate frames, sashes, and muntins with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.

### D. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E 2190.

1. Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.

- a. Tint: Gray.
- b. Kind: Fully tempered.

- 1 Lites: Two.
- 2 Filling: Fill space between glass lites with air.
- 3 Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface.

### E. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal.

### F. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard hardware fabricated from aluminum, stainless steel, carbon steel complying with AAMA 907, or other corrosion-resistant material compatible with adjacent materials; designed to smoothly operate, tightly close, and securely lock windows, and sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.

1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### G. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.

### H. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.

1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

### A. Subsills: Thermally broken, extruded-aluminum subsills in configurations indicated on Drawings.

- B. Interior Trim: Extruded-aluminum profiles in sizes and configurations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Panning Trim: Extruded-aluminum profiles in sizes and configurations indicated on Drawings.
- D. Receptor System: Two-piece, snap-together, thermally broken, extruded-aluminum receptor system that anchors windows in place.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.
- D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.7 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.
  - 1. Color and Gloss: Match existing

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine openings, substrates, structural support, anchorage, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

- B. Verify rough opening dimensions, levelness of sill plate, and operational clearances.
- C. Examine wall flashings, vapor retarders, water and weather barriers, and other built-in components to ensure weathertight window installation.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E 2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested work complies with or deviates from requirements.
- B. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of installed windows shall take place as follows:
  - 1. Testing Methodology: Testing of windows for air infiltration and water resistance shall be performed according to AAMA 502.
  - 2. Air-Infiltration Testing:
    - a. Test Pressure: That required to determine compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 performance class indicated.
    - b. Allowable Air-Leakage Rate: 1.5 times the applicable AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 rate for product type and performance class rounded down to one decimal place.
  - 3. Water-Resistance Testing:
    - a. Test Pressure: Two-thirds times test pressure required to determine compliance with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 performance grade indicated.
    - b. Allowable Water Infiltration: No water penetration.
  - 4. Testing Extent: Three windows of each type as selected by Architect and a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency. Windows shall be tested after perimeter sealants have cured.
  - 5. Test Reports: Prepared according to AAMA 502.
- C. Windows will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING, CLEANING, AND PROTECTION

- A. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.
- B. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
  - 1. Keep protective films and coverings in place until final cleaning.
- C. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.
- D. Protect window surfaces from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. If contaminating substances do contact window surfaces, remove contaminants immediately according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 085113

SECTION 087100 – DOOR HARDWARE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes commercial door hardware for the following:

- 1 Swinging doors.
- 2 Other doors to the extent indicated.

- B. Door hardware includes, but is not necessarily limited to, the following:

- 1 Mechanical door hardware.
- 2 Electromechanical door hardware.
- 3 Automatic operators.
- 4 Cylinders specified for doors in other sections.

- C. Related Sections:

- 1 Division 08 Section “Hollow Metal Doors and Frames”.
- 2 Division 08 Section “Flush Wood Doors”.
- 3 Division 08 Section “Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts”.
- 4 Division 28 Section “Access Control”.

- D. Codes and References: Comply with the version year adopted by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

- 1 ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.
- 2 ICC/IBC - International Building Code.
- 3 NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
- 4 NFPA 80 - Fire Doors and Windows.
- 5 NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code.
- 6 NFPA 105 - Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies.
- 7 UL/ULC and CSA C22.2 – Standards for Automatic Door Operators Used on Fire and Smoke Barrier Doors and Systems of Doors.
- 8 Michigan Building Code 2015, Local Amendments.

E. Standards: All hardware specified herein shall comply with the following industry standards:

- 1 ANSI/BHMA Certified Product Standards - A156 Series
- 2 UL10C – Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies

### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.

B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final Door Hardware Schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

1. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule."

2. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Organize door hardware sets in same order as in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Submittals that do not follow the same format and order as the Door Hardware Sets will be rejected and subject to resubmission.

3. Content: Include the following information:

- a. Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
- b. Manufacturer of each item.
- c. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
- d. Location of door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
- e. Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
- f. Mounting locations for door hardware.
- g. Door and frame sizes and materials.
- h. Warranty information for each product.

4. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final Door Hardware Schedule at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the Door Hardware Schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the Door Hardware Schedule.

C. Shop Drawings: Details of electrified access control hardware indicating the following:

1. Wiring Diagrams: Upon receipt of approved schedules, submit detailed system wiring diagrams for power, signaling, monitoring, communication, and control of the access control system electrified hardware. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring. Include the following:

- a. Elevation diagram of each unique access controlled opening showing location and interconnection of major system components with respect to their placement in the respective door openings.
- b. Complete (risers, point-to-point) access control system block wiring diagrams.
- c. Wiring instructions for each electronic component scheduled herein.

2. Electrical Coordination: Coordinate with related sections the voltages and wiring details required at electrically controlled and operated hardware openings.

D. Keying Schedule: After a keying meeting with the owner has taken place prepare a separate keying schedule detailing final instructions. Submit the keying schedule in electronic format. Include keying system explanation, door numbers, key set symbols, hardware set numbers and special instructions. Owner must approve submitted keying schedule prior to the ordering of permanent cylinders/cores.

E. Informational Submittals:

1. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance with cycle testing requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified independent testing agency.

F. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete door hardware installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturers Qualifications: Engage qualified manufacturers with a minimum 5 years of documented experience in producing hardware and equipment similar to that indicated for this Project and that have a proven record of successful in-service performance.

B. Installer Qualifications: A minimum 3 years documented experience installing both standard and electrified door hardware similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

C. Door Hardware Supplier Qualifications: Experienced commercial door hardware distributors with a minimum 5 years documented experience supplying both mechanical and electromechanical hardware installations comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supplier recognized as a factory direct distributor by the manufacturers of the primary materials with a warehousing facility in Project's vicinity. Supplier to have on staff a certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available during the course of the Work to consult with Contractor, Architect, and Owner concerning both standard and electromechanical door hardware and keying.

D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type and variety of door hardware specified in this section from a single source unless otherwise indicated.

1 Electrified modifications or enhancements made to a source manufacturer's product line by a secondary or third party source will not be accepted.

2 Provide electromechanical door hardware from the same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Each unit to bear third party permanent label demonstrating compliance with the referenced standards.

F. Keying Conference: Conduct conference to comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings." Keying conference to incorporate the following criteria into the final keying schedule document:

1 Function of building, purpose of each area and degree of security required.

2 Plans for existing and future key system expansion.

3 Requirements for key control storage and software.

4 Installation of permanent keys, cylinder cores and software.

5 Address and requirements for delivery of keys.



G. Pre-Submittal Conference: Conduct coordination conference in compliance with requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Meetings" with attendance by representatives of Supplier(s), Installer(s), and Contractor(s) to review proper methods and the procedures for receiving, handling, and installing door hardware.

- 1 Prior to installation of door hardware, conduct a project specific training meeting to instruct the installing contractors' personnel on the proper installation and adjustment of their respective products. Product training to be attended by installers of door hardware (including electromechanical hardware) for aluminum, hollow metal and wood doors. Training will include the use of installation manuals, hardware schedules, templates and physical product samples as required.
- 2 Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in, power supply connections, and other preparatory work performed by other trades.
- 3 Review sequence of operation narratives for each unique access controlled opening.
- 4 Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials.
- 5 Review the required inspecting, testing, commissioning, and demonstration procedures

H. At completion of installation, provide written documentation that components were applied to manufacturer's instructions and recommendations and according to approved schedule.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up and shelving for door hardware delivered to Project site. Do not store electronic access control hardware, software or accessories at Project site without prior authorization.
- B. Tag each item or package separately with identification related to the final Door Hardware Schedule, and include basic installation instructions with each item or package.
- C. Deliver, as applicable, permanent keys, cylinders, cores, access control credentials, software and related accessories directly to Owner via registered mail or overnight package service. Instructions for delivery to the Owner shall be established at the "Keying Conference".

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing standard and electrified hardware. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing hardware to comply with indicated requirements.
- B. Door Hardware and Electrical Connections: Coordinate the layout and installation of scheduled electrified door hardware and related access control equipment with required connections to source power junction boxes, low voltage power supplies, detection and monitoring hardware, and fire and detection alarm systems.
- C. Door and Frame Preparation: Doors and corresponding frames are to be prepared, reinforced and pre-wired (if applicable) to receive the installation of the specified electrified, monitoring, signaling and access control system hardware without additional in-field modifications.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. General Warranty: Reference Division 01, General Requirements. Special warranties specified in this Article
- |               |                |          |
|---------------|----------------|----------|
| Door Hardware | Specifications | 087100-4 |
|---------------|----------------|----------|

shall not deprive Owner of other rights Owner may have under other provisions of the Contract Documents and shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties made by Contractor under requirements of the Contract Documents.

B. Warranty Period: Written warranty, executed by manufacturer(s), agreeing to repair or replace components of standard and electrified door hardware that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period after final acceptance by the Owner. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- 1 Structural failures including excessive deflection, cracking, or breakage.
- 2 Faulty operation of the hardware.
- 3 Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
- 4 Electrical component defects and failures within the systems operation.

C. Standard Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Special Warranty Periods:

- 1 Ten years for mortise locks and latches.
- 2 Seven years for heavy duty cylindrical (bored) locks and latches.
- 3 Five years for exit hardware.
- 4 Twenty five years for manual surface door closer bodies.
- 5 Twenty five years for manual surface door closer bodies.
- 6 Twenty five years for manual surface door closer bodies.
- 7 Five years for motorized electric latch retraction exit devices.
- 8 Two years for electromechanical door hardware.

#### 1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of door hardware.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SCHEDULED DOOR HARDWARE

A. General: Provide door hardware for each door to comply with requirements in Door Hardware Sets and each referenced section that products are to be supplied under.

B. Designations: Requirements for quantity, item, size, finish or color, grade, function, and other distinctive qualities of each type of door hardware are indicated in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Products are identified by using door hardware designations, as follows:

1. Named Manufacturer's Products: Product designation and manufacturer are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in the Door Hardware Schedule.

C. Substitutions: Requests for substitution and product approval for inclusive mechanical and electromechanical door hardware in compliance with the specifications must be submitted in writing and in accordance with the procedures and time frames outlined in Division 01, Substitution Procedures. Approval of requests is at the discretion of the architect, owner, and their designated consultants.

## 2.2 HANGING DEVICES

A. Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.1 certified butt hinges with number of hinge knuckles and other options as specified in the Door Hardware Sets.

1. Quantity: Provide the following hinge quantity:

- a. Two Hinges: For doors with heights up to 60 inches.
- b. Three Hinges: For doors with heights 61 to 90 inches.
- c. Four Hinges: For doors with heights 91 to 120 inches.
- d. For doors with heights more than 120 inches, provide 4 hinges, plus 1 hinge for every 30 inches of door height greater than 120 inches.

2. Hinge Size: Provide the following, unless otherwise indicated, with hinge widths sized for door thickness and clearances required:

- a. Widths up to 3'0": 4-1/2" standard or heavy weight as specified.
- b. Sizes from 3'1" to 4'0": 5" standard or heavy weight as specified.

3. Hinge Weight and Base Material: Unless otherwise indicated, provide the following:

- a. Exterior Doors: Heavy weight, non-ferrous, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate standard weight.
- b. Interior Doors: Standard weight, steel, ball bearing or oil impregnated bearing hinges unless Hardware Sets indicate heavy weight.

4. Hinge Options: Comply with the following:

- a. Non-removable Pins: Provide set screw in hinge barrel that, when tightened into a groove in hinge pin, prevents removal of pin while door is closed; for the all out-swinging lockable doors.

5. Manufacturers:

- a. Hager Companies (HA) - CB Series.
- b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) TA Series.
- c. Stanley Hardware (ST) - CB Series.

B. Continuous Geared Hinges: ANSI/BHMA A156.26 Grade 1-600 certified continuous geared hinge. with minimum 0.120-inch thick extruded 6060 T6 aluminum alloy hinge leaves and a minimum overall width of 4 inches. Hinges are non-handed, reversible and fabricated to template screw locations. Factory trim hinges to suit door height and prepare for electrical cutouts.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Bommer Industries (BO).
- b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK).
- c. Pemko Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (PE).
- d. Stanley Hardware (ST).

## 2.3 POWER TRANSFER DEVICES

A. Electrified Quick Connect Transfer Hinges: Provide electrified transfer hinges with Molex™ standardized

plug connectors and sufficient number of concealed wires (up to 12) to accommodate the electrified functions specified in the Door Hardware Sets. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Wire nut connections are not acceptable.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Hager Companies (HA) - ETW-QC (# wires) Option.
- b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) QC (# wires) Option.
- c. Stanley Hardware (ST) – C Option.

B. Concealed Quick Connect Electric Power Transfers: Provide concealed wiring pathway housing mortised into the door and frame for low voltage electrified door hardware. Furnish with Molex™ standardized plug connectors and sufficient number of concealed wires (up to 12) to accommodate the electrified functions specified in the Door Hardware Sets. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Wire nut connections are not acceptable.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Securitron (SU) - EL-CEPT Series.
- b. Stanley Hardware (ST) EPT-12C Series.
- c. Von Duprin (VD) - EPT-10-CON Series.

C. Electric Door Wire Harnesses: Provide electric/data transfer wiring harnesses with standardized plug connectors to accommodate up to twelve (12) wires. Connectors plug directly to through-door wiring harnesses for connection to electric locking devices and power supplies. Provide sufficient number and type of concealed wires to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Provide a connector for through-door electronic locking devices and from hinge to junction box above the opening. Wire nut connections are not acceptable. Determine the length required for each electrified hardware component for the door type, size and construction, minimum of two per electrified opening.

1. Provide one each of the following tools as part of the base bid contract:

- a. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) Electrical Connecting Kit: QC-R001.
- b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) Connector Hand Tool: QC-R003.

2. Manufacturers:

- a. Hager Companies (HA) - Quick Connect.
- b. McKinney Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (MK) – QC-C Series.
- c. Stanley Hardware (ST) – WH Series.

## 2.4 DOOR OPERATING TRIM

A. Flush Bolts and Surface Bolts: ANSI/BHMA A156.3 and A156.16, Grade 1, certified.

- 1. Flush bolts to be furnished with top rod of sufficient length to allow bolt retraction device location approximately six feet from the floor.
- 2. Furnish dust proof strikes for bottom bolts.
- 3. Surface bolts to be minimum 8” in length and U.L. listed for labeled fire doors and U.L. listed for

windstorm components where applicable.

4. Provide related accessories (mounting brackets, strikes, coordinators, etc.) as required for appropriate installation and operation.

5. Manufacturers:

- a. Burns Manufacturing (BU).
- b. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).
- c. Trimco (TC).

B. Door Push Plates and Pulls: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified door pushes and pulls of type and design specified in the Hardware Sets. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates.

1. Push/Pull Plates: Minimum .050 inch thick, size as indicated in hardware sets, with beveled edges, secured with exposed screws unless otherwise indicated.
2. Door Pull and Push Bar Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door unless otherwise indicated.
3. Offset Pull Design: Size, shape, and material as indicated in the hardware sets. Minimum clearance of 2 1/2-inches from face of door and offset of 90 degrees unless otherwise indicated.
4. Fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as indicated in Hardware Sets.
5. Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing (BU).
  - b. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).
  - c. Trimco (TC).

## 2.5 CYLINDERS AND KEYING

A. General: Cylinder manufacturer to have minimum (10) years experience designing secured master key systems and have on record a published security keying system policy.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Stanley Best (BE).
- b. No Substitution.

B. Cylinders: Original manufacturer cylinders complying with the following:

- 1 Mortise Type: Threaded cylinders with rings and cams to suit hardware application.
- 2 Rim Type: Cylinders with back plate, flat-type vertical or horizontal tailpiece, and raised trim ring.
- 3 Bored-Lock Type: Cylinders with tailpieces to suit locks.
- 4 Mortise and rim cylinder collars to be solid and recessed to allow the cylinder face to be flush and be free spinning with matching finishes.
- 5 Keyway: Match Facility Restricted Keyway.

C. Permanent Cores: Manufacturer's standard; finish face to match lockset; complying with the following:

1. Interchangeable Cores: Core insert, removable by use of a special key; usable with other manufacturers' cylinders.

D. Keying System: Each type of lock and cylinders to be factory keyed to Owner's existing Best Cormax key system.

- 1 Conduct specified "Keying Conference" to define and document keying system instructions and requirements.
- 2 Furnish factory cut, nickel-silver large bow permanently inscribed with a visual key control number as

directed by Owner.

3 Existing System: Key locks to Owner's existing system.

E. Key Quantity: Provide the following minimum number of keys:

- 1 Change Keys per Cylinder: Two (2)
- 2 Master Keys (per Master Key Level/Group): Five (5).
- 3 Construction Keys (where required): Ten (10).
- 4 Construction Control Keys (where required): Two (2).
- 5 Permanent Control Keys (where required): Two (2).

F. Construction Keying: Provide temporary keyed construction cores.

G. Key Registration List (Bitting List):

- 1 Provide keying transcript list to Owner's representative in the proper format for importing into key control software.
- 2 Provide transcript list in writing or electronic file as directed by the Owner.

## 2.6 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHING DEVICES

A. Mortise Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.13, Series 1000, Operational Grade 1 certified. Locksets are to be manufactured with a corrosion resistant steel case and be field-reversible for handing without disassembly of the lock body.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) – ML2000 Series.
- b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) – 8200 Series.
- c. Schlage (SC) – L9000 Series.

B. Cylindrical Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.2, Series 4000, Grade 1 certified.

1. Furnish with solid cast levers, standard 2 3/4" backset, and 1/2" (3/4" at rated paired openings) throw brass or stainless steel latchbolt.
2. Locks are to be non-handed and fully field reversible.
3. Extended cycle test: Locks to have been cycle tested in ordinance with ANSI/BHMA 156.2 requirements to 2 million cycles.
4. Manufacturers:
  - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) – CL3300 Series.
  - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) – 10 Line.
  - c. Stanley Best (BE) – 9K Series.

## 2.7 ELECTROMECHANICAL LOCKING DEVICES

A. Electromechanical Mortise Locksets, Grade 1 (Heavy Duty): Subject to same compliance standards and requirements as mechanical mortise locksets, electrified locksets to be of type and design as specified below.

1. Electrified Lock Options: Where indicated in the Hardware Sets, provide electrified options including: outside door lock/unlock trim control, latchbolt and lock/unlock status monitoring, deadbolt monitoring, and request-to-exit signaling. Support end-of-line resistors contained within the lock case.

Unless otherwise indicated, provide electrified locksets standard as fail secure.

2. Energy Efficient Design: Provide lock bodies which have a holding current draw of 15mA maximum, and can operate on either 12 or 24 volts. Locks are to be field configurable for fail safe or fail secure operation.
3. Manufacturers:
  - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - ML20900 Series.
  - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 8200 Series.
  - c. Schlage (SC) - L9000 EL/EU/RX Series.

## 2.8 CONVENTIONAL EXIT DEVICES

A. General Requirements: All exit devices specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:

1. At doors not requiring a fire rating, provide devices complying with NFPA 101 and listed and labeled for "Panic Hardware" according to UL305. Provide proper fasteners as required by manufacturer including sex nuts and bolts at openings specified in the Hardware Sets.
2. Where exit devices are required on fire rated doors, provide devices complying with NFPA 80 and with UL labeling indicating "Fire Exit Hardware". Provide devices with the proper fasteners for installation as tested and listed by UL. Consult manufacturer's catalog and template book for specific requirements.
3. Except on fire rated doors, provide exit devices with hex key dogging device to hold the pushbar and latch in a retracted position. Provide optional keyed cylinder dogging on devices where specified in Hardware Sets.
4. Devices must fit flat against the door face with no gap that permits unauthorized dogging of the push bar. The addition of filler strips is required in any case where the door light extends behind the device as in a full glass configuration.
5. Flush End Caps: Provide flush end caps made of architectural metal in the same finish as the devices as in the Hardware Sets. Plastic end caps will not be acceptable.
6. Energy Efficient Design: Provide lock bodies which have a holding current draw of 15mA maximum, and can operate on either 12 or 24 volts. Locks are to be field configurable for fail safe or fail secure operation.
7. Electromechanical Options: Subject to same compliance standards and requirements as mechanical exit devices, electrified devices to be of type and design as specified in hardware sets. Include any specific controllers when conventional power supplies are not sufficient to provide the proper inrush current.
8. Motorized Electric Latch Retraction: Devices with an electric latch retraction feature must use motors which have a maximum current draw of 600mA. Solenoid driven latch retraction is not acceptable.
9. Lever Operating Trim: Where exit devices require lever trim, furnish manufacturer's heavy duty escutcheon trim with threaded studs for thru-bolts.
  - a. Lock Trim Design: As indicated in Hardware Sets, provide finishes and designs to match that of the specified locksets.
  - b. Where function of exit device requires a cylinder, provide a cylinder (Rim or Mortise) as specified in Hardware Sets.
10. Vertical Rod Exit Devices: Where surface or concealed vertical rod exit devices are used at interior openings, provide as less bottom rod (LBR) unless otherwise indicated. Provide dust proof strikes where thermal pins are required to project into the floor.

11. Narrow Stile Applications: At doors constructed with narrow stiles, or as specified in Hardware Sets, provide devices designed for maximum 2" wide stiles.
  12. Dummy Push Bar: Nonfunctioning push bar matching functional push bar.
  13. Rail Sizing: Provide exit device rails factory sized for proper door width application.
  14. Through Bolt Installation: For exit devices and trim as indicated in Door Hardware Sets.
- B. Conventional Push Rail Exit Devices (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.3, Grade 1 certified panic and fire exit hardware devices furnished in the functions specified in the Hardware Sets. Exit device latch to be stainless steel, pullman type, with deadlock feature.
1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - ED4000 / ED5000 Series.
    - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 80 Series.
    - c. Stanley Precision (PR) - Apex 2000 Series.
- C. Tube Steel Removable Mullions: ANSI/BHMA A156.3 removable steel mullions with malleable-iron top and bottom retainers and a primed paint finish.
1. Provide keyed removable feature where specified in the Hardware Sets.
  2. Provide stabilizers and mounting brackets as required.
  3. Provide electrical quick connection wiring options as specified in the hardware sets.
  4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - 700/900 Series.
    - b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 980S Series.
    - c. Stanley Precision (PR) - Apex 2000 Series.

## 2.9 DOOR CLOSERS

- A. All door closers specified herein shall meet or exceed the following criteria:
- 1 General: Door closers to be from one manufacturer, matching in design and style, with the same type door preparations and templates regardless of application or spring size. Closers to be non-handed with full sized covers including installation and adjusting information on inside of cover.
  - 2 Standards: Closers to comply with UL-10C for Positive Pressure Fire Test and be U.L. listed for use of fire rated doors.
  - 3 Cycle Testing: Provide closers which have surpassed 15 million cycles in a test witnessed and verified by UL.
  - 4 Size of Units: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for sizing of door closers depending on size of door, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use. Where closers are indicated for doors required to be accessible to the physically handicapped, provide units complying with ANSI ICC/A117.1.
  - 5 Closer Arms: Provide heavy duty, forged steel closer arms unless otherwise indicated in Hardware Sets.
  - 6 Closers shall not be installed on exterior or corridor side of doors; where possible install closers on door for optimum aesthetics.



7 Closer Accessories: Provide door closer accessories including custom templates, special mounting brackets, spacers and drop plates as required for proper installation. Provide through-bolt and security type fasteners as specified in the hardware sets.

B. Door Closers, Surface Mounted (Large Body Cast Iron): ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 surface mounted, heavy duty door closers with complete spring power adjustment, sizes 1 thru 6; and fully operational adjustable according to door size, frequency of use, and opening force. Closers to be rack and pinion type, one piece cast iron body construction, with adjustable backcheck and separate non-critical valves for closing sweep and latch speed control.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - DC8000 Series.
- b. Norton Door Controls (NO) – 9500 Series.
- c. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 281 Series.

C. Door Closers, Surface Mounted (Heavy Duty): ANSI/BHMA A156.4, Grade 1 surface mounted, heavy duty door closers with complete spring power adjustment, sizes 1 thru 6; and fully operational adjustable according to door size, frequency of use, and opening force. Closers to be rack and pinion type, one piece cast iron or aluminum alloy body construction, with adjustable backcheck and separate non-critical valves for closing sweep and latch speed control. Provide non-handed units standard.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Corbin Russwin Hardware (RU) - DC6000 Series.
- b. Sargent Manufacturing (SA) - 351 Series.
- c. Norton Door Controls (NO) - 7500 Series.

## 2.10 ARCHITECTURAL TRIM

### A. Door Protective Trim

1. General: Door protective trim units to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
2. Size: Fabricate protection plates (kick, armor, or mop) not more than 2" less than door width (LDW) on stop side of single doors and 1" LDW on stop side of pairs of doors, and not more than 1" less than door width on pull side. Coordinate and provide proper width and height as required where conflicting hardware dictates. Height to be as specified in the Hardware Sets.
3. Where plates are applied to fire rated doors with the top of the plate more than 16" above the bottom of the door, provide plates complying with NFPA 80. Consult manufacturer's catalog and template book for specific requirements for size and applications.
4. Protection Plates: ANSI/BHMA A156.6 certified protection plates (kick, armor, or mop), fabricated from the following:
  - a. Stainless Steel: 300 grade, .050-inch thick.
5. Options and fasteners: Provide manufacturer's designated fastener type as specified in the Hardware Sets. Provide countersunk screw holes.
6. Manufacturers:
  - a. Burns Manufacturing (BU).
  - b. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).
  - c. Trimco (TC).

## 2.11 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. General: Door stops and holders to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets.
- B. Door Stops and Bumpers: ANSI/BHMA A156.16, Grade 1 certified door stops and wall bumpers. Provide wall bumpers, either convex or concave types with anchorage as indicated, unless floor or other types of door stops are specified in Hardware Sets. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic. Where floor or wall bumpers are not appropriate, provide overhead type stops and holders.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Burns Manufacturing (BU).
- b. Rockwood Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (RO).
- c. Trimco (TC).

- C. Overhead Door Stops and Holders: ANSI/BHMA A156.6, Grade 1 certified overhead stops and holders to be surface or concealed types as indicated in Hardware Sets. Track, slide, arm and jamb bracket to be constructed of extruded bronze and shock absorber spring of heavy tempered steel. Provide non-handed design with mounting brackets as required for proper operation and function.

1. Manufacturers:

- a. Architectural Builders Hardware (AH).
- b. Glynn Johnson (GJ).
- c. Rixson Door Controls (RF).

## 2.12 ARCHITECTURAL SEALS

- A. General: Thresholds, weatherstripping, and gasket seals to be of type and design as specified below or in the Hardware Sets. Provide continuous weatherstrip gasketing on exterior doors and provide smoke, light, or sound gasketing on interior doors where indicated. At exterior applications provide non-corrosive fasteners and elsewhere where indicated.
- B. Smoke Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 105 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for smoke control ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL 1784.

1. Provide smoke labeled perimeter gasketing at all smoke labeled openings.

- C. Fire Labeled Gasketing: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated, based on testing according to UL-10C.

1. Provide intumescent seals as indicated to meet UL10C Standard for Positive Pressure Fire Tests of Door Assemblies, and NPFA 252, Standard Methods of Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

- D. Sound-Rated Gasketing: Assemblies that are listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency, for sound ratings indicated.

- E. Replaceable Seal Strips: Provide only those units where resilient or flexible seal strips are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.

## F. Manufacturers:

- 1 National Guard Products (NG).
- 2 Pemko Products; ASSA ABLOY Architectural Door Accessories (PE).
- 3 Reese Enterprises, Inc. (RE).

## 2.13 ELECTRONIC ACCESSORIES

A. Exit Delay Locking Systems: Exit delay locking systems are fully integrated units consisting of a minimum 1200 pound holding force magnetic lock, movement initiating device, reset bypass switch, and exit delay timer module. Unit to include an adjustable initiation gap allowing door travel of up to 1 inch before going into alarm condition. Operates on either 12VDC or 24VDC.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Security Door Controls (SD) - 101 Exit Check Series.
- b. Securitron (SU) - iMXD Series.

B. Door Position Switches: Door position magnetic reed contact switches specifically designed for use in commercial door applications. On recessed models the contact and magnetic housing snap-lock into a 1" diameter hole. Surface mounted models include wide gap distance design complete with armored flex cabling. Provide SPDT, N/O switches with optional Rare Earth Magnet installation on steel doors with flush top channels.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Security Door Controls (SD) - DPS Series.
- b. Securitron (SU) - DPS Series.

C. Power Supplies: Provide Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory Listed 12VDC or 24VDC (field selectable) filtered and regulated power supplies. Include battery backup option with integral battery charging capability in addition to operating the DC load in event of line voltage failure. Provide the least number of units, at the appropriate amperage level, sufficient to exceed the required total draw for the specified electrified hardware and access control equipment.

## 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Security Door Controls (SD) - 630 Series.
- b. Securitron (SU) - BPS Series.

## 2.14 FABRICATION

A. Fasteners: Provide door hardware manufactured to comply with published templates generally prepared for machine, wood, and sheet metal screws. Provide screws according to manufacturers recognized installation standards for application intended.

## 2.15 FINISHES

A. Standard: Designations used in the Hardware Sets and elsewhere indicate hardware finishes complying with ANSI/BHMA A156.18, including coordination with traditional U.S. finishes indicated by certain manufacturers for their products.

- B. Provide quality of finish, including thickness of plating or coating (if any), composition, hardness, and other qualities complying with manufacturer's standards, but in no case less than specified by referenced standards for the applicable units of hardware
- C. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine scheduled openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Notify architect of any discrepancies or conflicts between the door schedule, door types, drawings and scheduled hardware. Proceed only after such discrepancies or conflicts have been resolved in writing.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Hollow Metal Doors and Frames: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115 series.
- B. Wood Doors: Comply with ANSI/DHI A115-W series.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install each item of mechanical and electromechanical hardware and access control equipment to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and according to specifications.
  - 1. Installers are to be trained and certified by the manufacturer on the proper installation and adjustment of fire, life safety, and security products including: hanging devices; locking devices; closing devices; and seals.
- B. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated in following applicable publications, unless specifically indicated or required to comply with governing regulations:
  - 1 Standard Steel Doors and Frames: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Standard Steel Doors and Frames."
  - 2 Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."
  - 3 Where indicated to comply with accessibility requirements, comply with ANSI A117.1 "Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."
  - 4 Provide blocking in drywall partitions where wall stops or other wall mounted hardware is located.
- C. Retrofitting: Install door hardware to comply with manufacturer's published templates and written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work specified in Division 9 Sections. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.

- D. Thresholds: Set thresholds for exterior and acoustical doors in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Storage: Provide a secure lock up for hardware delivered to the project but not yet installed. Control the handling and installation of hardware items so that the completion of the work will not be delayed by hardware losses before and after installation.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field Inspection: Supplier will perform a final inspection of installed door hardware and state in report whether work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed, operating and adjusted.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Protect all hardware stored on construction site in a covered and dry place. Protect exposed hardware installed on doors during the construction phase. Install any and all hardware at the latest possible time frame.
- B. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.
- C. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper finish. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of owner occupancy.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Instruct Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain mechanical and electromechanical door hardware.

### 3.8 DOOR HARDWARE SETS

- A. The hardware sets represent the design intent and direction of the owner and architect. They are a guideline only and should not be considered a detailed hardware schedule. Discrepancies, conflicting hardware and missing items should be brought to the attention of the architect with corrections made prior to the bidding process. Omitted items not included in a hardware set should be scheduled with the appropriate additional hardware required for proper application and functionality.
- B. The supplier is responsible for handing and sizing all products and providing the correct option for the appropriate door type and material where more than one is presented in the hardware sets. Quantities listed are for each pair of doors, or for each single door.
- C. Manufacturer's Abbreviations:

- 1. MK - McKinney

2. PE - Pemko
3. RO - Rockwood
4. RU - Corbin Russwin
5. SU - Securitron
6. BE - dormakaba Best
7. RF - Rixson
8. NO - Norton
9. OT - OTHER

**Hardware Sets**

Refer to Door Schedule on drawings.

END OF SECTION 087100

SECTION 088000 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

- 1 Glass for windows, doors, interior borrowed lites, and storefront framing.
- 2 Glazing sealants and accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 081216 "Aluminum Frames"
- 2 Section 084113 "Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts."
- 3 Section 084413 "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls"
- 4 Section 088300 "Mirrors."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters according to ASTM C 1036.
- C. IBC: International Building Code.
- D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Glass Samples: For each type of the following products; 12 inches square.

- 1 Tinted glass.
- 2 Coated glass.
- 3 Laminated glass.
- 4 Insulating glass.

- C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants, in 12-inch lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of the adjoining framing system.
- D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturers of insulating-glass units with sputter-coated, low-E coatings, glass testing agency, and sealant testing agency.
- B. Product Certificates: For glass.
- C. Product Test Reports: For tinted glass, coated glass, insulating glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.
- D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications for Insulating-Glass Units with Sputter-Coated, Low-E Coatings: A qualified insulating-glass manufacturer who is approved by coated-glass manufacturer.
- B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs glass installers for this Project who are certified under the National Glass Association's Certified Glass Installer Program.
- C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.
- D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

## 1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

- A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.



- 1 Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
- 2 Use ASTM C 1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
- 3 Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
- 4 Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
- 5 For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including the use of specially formulated primers.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect glazing materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.
- B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.
  1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is the obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available manufacturers – select products from one of the following:
- 1 Guardian.
  - 2 Pilkington
  - 3 PPG
- B. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each glass type.
- 1 Obtain tinted glass from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2 Obtain reflective-coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer for each product and installation method.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to the following: defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined according to the IBC and ASTM E 1300.
1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Design Wind Pressures: Determine design wind pressures applicable to Project according to ASCE/SEI 7, based on heights above grade indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
  4. Differential Shading: Design glass to resist thermal stresses induced by differential shading within individual glass lites.

C. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:

- 1 For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
- 2 For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
- 3 For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
- 4 U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 100 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
- 5 Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 200 and based on LBL's WINDOW 5.2 computer program.
- 6 Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, according to NFRC 300.

### 2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

- 1 GANA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
- 2 IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

1. In lieu of permanent marking, contractor may submit affidavit, certificate or other evidence confirming compliance with the code.

C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of IGCC.

D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than the thickness indicated.

1. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

### 2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.

C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

D. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

E. Pyrolytic-Coated, Low-Maintenance Glass: Clear float glass with a coating on first surface having both photocatalytic and hydrophilic properties that act to loosen dirt and to cause water to sheet evenly over the glass instead of beading.

F. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C 1048, Type I, Condition B, Quality-Q3.

## 2.5 LAMINATED GLASS

A. Laminated Glass: ASTM C 1172. Use materials that have a proven record of no tendency to bubble, discolor, or lose physical and mechanical properties after fabrication and installation.

- 1 Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer, ionomeric polymer interlayer or cast-in-place and cured-transparent-resin interlayer to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
- 2 Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
- 3 Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 INSULATING GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified according to ASTM E 2190.

- 1 Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
- 2 Perimeter Spacer: Thermally broken aluminum, nonmetallic laminate, nonmetallic tube, or silicone with integral desiccant and vapor barrier.
- 3 Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

## 2.7 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:

1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.

3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
- B. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.
  1. Applications: Exterior doors, windows, curtain walls and storefront.
- C. Glazing Sealant: Neutral-curing silicone glazing sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
  1. Applications: Interior doors and borrowed lites.

## 2.8 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
  1. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
  - 1 AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
  - 2 AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, with requirements of manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.
- B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- C. Setting Blocks: Elastomeric material with a Shore, Type A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
- D. Spacers: Elastomeric blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
- E. Edge Blocks: Elastomeric material of hardness needed to limit glass lateral movement (side walking).

## 2.10 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

- A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.
  1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.
    - a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
- B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

- C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:
  - 1 Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
  - 2 Presence and functioning of weep systems.
  - 3 Minimum required face and edge clearances.
  - 4 Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.
- B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

### 3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.
- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.
  - 1 Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
  - 2 Provide 1/8-inch minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and according to requirements in referenced glazing publications.
- H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.
- I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.
- J. Where wedge-shaped gaskets are driven into one side of channel to pressurize sealant or gasket on opposite side, provide adequate anchorage so gasket cannot walk out when installation is subjected to movement.
- K. Square cut wedge-shaped gaskets at corners and install gaskets in a manner recommended by gasket manufacturer to prevent corners from pulling away; seal corner joints and butt joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

### 3.4 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Do not remove release paper from tape until right before each glazing unit is installed.
- F. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- G. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- H. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.5 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.

Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.

- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks, and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.6 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do come into contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.
- D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

### 3.8 LAMINATED GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Glass Type **GL-1**: Tinted laminated glass with two plies of fully tempered float glass with outer ply tinted and inner ply clear.
  - 1 Tint Color: **None**.
  - 2 Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 4 mm.
  - 3 Interlayer Thickness: 0.060 inch.
  - 4 Safety glazing required.
  - 5 Fire rating required; refer to Door Schedule
  - 6 Locations: Interior doors, windows and borrowed lites.



### 3.9 INSULATING GLASS SCHEDULE

#### A. Glass Type **GL-3**: Low-E-coated, tinted insulating glass.

- 1 Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian; SunGuard SNX 62/27.
- 2 Overall Unit Thickness: 1 inch.
- 3 Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Lite: 4 mm
- 4 Outdoor Lite: Tinted fully tempered float glass.
- 5 Tint Color: Light bronze.
- 6 Interspace Content: Air.
- 7 Indoor Lite: Clear fully tempered float glass.
- 8 Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface.
- 9 Winter Nighttime U-Factor: U-0.29 maximum.
- 10 Summer Daytime U-Factor: U-0.29 maximum.
- 11 Visible Light Transmittance: 30 percent minimum.
- 12 Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: .18 maximum.
- 13 Safety glazing required.
- 14 Locations: Exterior doors, windows, and storefront.

END OF SECTION 088000

SECTION 08 56 53

BALLISTIC RESISTANCE GLAZING (ALTERNATE NO 1)

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Bullet resistance Glazing

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 061000 – Rough Carpentry

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American National Standards Institute ANSI: 1 ANSI Z97.1 – Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings – Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Testing.
- B. Underwriters Laboratory UL 752-Standard for Bullet Resisting Equipment.
- C. ASTM E119-98- Standard Test Methods for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials
- D. ASTM C 1172 - Standard Specification for Laminated Architectural Flat Glass.
- E. ASTM B 209 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Sheet and Plate.
- F. ASTM B 221 - Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to Section 01 33 00 Submittal Procedures.
- B. Product Data: For each type of framing and glass including manufacturer recommended installation instructions.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachment to other work.
- D. Samples: For each exposed finish.

1.4 INFORMATION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Test Reports: Indicating compliance with requirements
- B. Warranty: Sample of finish warranty

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Refer to Section 01 77 00 Closeout Submittals

- B. Maintenance data.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Refer to Section 01 60 00 Product Requirements
- B. Deliver materials to the project site with the manufacturer's UL Listed Labels intact and legible. Handle the materials with care to prevent damage. Store materials inside and under cover, stack flat and off floor. Project conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) shall be within the maximum limit recommendations provided by manufacturer. Do not install products stored in conditions outside manufacturer's recommended limits.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Workmanship Warranty: All materials shall be warranted against defects for a period of [1] year for the date of receipt at the project site. Provide certificates of manufacturer's standard limited warranty with closeout documents.
- B. Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's warranty against deterioration of factory finishes for the period of 10 years from the date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Basis of Design:
  - 1. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Total Security Solutions, Inc., 935 Garden Lane, Fowlerville, MI 48836, 866 734-6277. Attn: Sales Department, sales@tssbulletproof.com. Web: www.tssbulletproof.com.
  - 2. Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers of products of equivalent design may be acceptable if approved in accordance with Section 016000 – Product Requirements.
- B. Design Performance:
  - 1. Through the design, manufacturing techniques and material application the TSS Bullet Resistant Aluminum two piece U-channel L3 be constructed of extruded aluminum in 6061-T6 alloy/tempered.
  - 2. Protection rating shall be UL Standard 752 Level 3.
  - 3. Corner joints shall consist of extruded and keyed aluminum spline with continuous 3/8" diameter steel tie rod at door top and bottom rails.

4. All joints and connections shall be tight, providing hairline points and true alignment of adjacent members.
  5. Panels shall not be removable from threat side.
- C. Field alterations to the construction of the assembly fabricated under the acceptable standards are not allowed unless approved in writing by the manufacturer and the Architect.
  - D. Standard manufacturing tolerances +/- 1/16" shall be maintained.
  - E. Materials shall meet or exceed UL 752 requirements.

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

### A. Ballistic Resistant:

1. Level 3 in accordance with UL 752 – Testing for Ballistic Resistance for the complete assembly including framing, glazing and panels.

## 2.3 FABRICATION

### A. Bullet Resistant Fixed Framing System:

1. Head and sill shall be one piece extrusions with no integral weep system at the sill.
  2. All joints and connections shall be tight, providing hairline joints and true alignment of adjacent members.
  3. Glazing must not be removable from the threat side of the sash.
  4. Provide to dimension heights and widths indicated on the Drawings.
- B. System shall be designed to defeat ballistic assaults from a .44 magnum handgun in accordance with UL 752, Level 3.
  - C. Glazing shall conform to UL 752 for protection Level 3.
  - D. Glazing Channel: U-Channel specifically designed for securing transparencies tightly in place. Angles and stops shall only be used for top attachment. All exposed aluminum edges shall be clean cut and have no burrs. Exposed corners shall be rounded and sanded.
  - E. Tolerances: All joints and connections shall be tight, providing hairline joints and true alignment of adjacent members

## 2.4 FRAME FINISH

### A. Factory-applied finish:

1. Clear Anodic Finish - Satin: Architectural Class I, clear coating AA-M10C22A41 Mechanical Finish Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; 0.70 mils minimum complying with AAMA 611 "Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum"
- B. Cap the bottom of glazing with the corresponding finish material selected for frame.

## 2.5 GLAZING

- A. Glazing shall be as shown on the drawings.
  1. Bullet Resistant Level 3  
1 1/4" LP 1250 Laminated  
1 1/4" All Poly 1250  
1 1/4" TSS-003 L/S Glass Clad
- B. Acrylic: All acrylic pieces shall meet or exceed UL 752 testing for ballistic integrity. All edges of acrylic shall be filed, sanded after cutting to remove rough edges and then polished until "water clear" transparent. All through holes for fasteners shall be 3/8" in diameter and be drilled clean. Chipped edges at through-hole exit points are not acceptable. All acrylic pieces shall be supported in the proper glazing channel designed for this purpose (see aluminum, Section D).
- C. Glazing gaskets:
  1. Interior: Closed cell neoprene.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Anchors: Fully concealed manufacturer recommended.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prior to beginning installation, verify that all supports have been installed as required by the Contract Documents and architectural drawings, and Shop Drawings have been approved.
- B. Notify Architect of any unsatisfactory preparation that is responsibility of others.
- C. Clean and prepare all surfaces per manufacturers recommendations as required for achieving the best results for the substrate under the project conditions.
- D. Verify field dimensions of openings prior to fabrication of framing.
- E. Coordinate structural requirements to ensure proper attachment and support.
- F. Do not begin installation of material until all unsatisfactory conditions have been resolved and approved by Architect.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Do not begin installation until openings have been verified and surfaces properly prepared in accordance with Drawings.
- B. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and UL 752. Set all equipment plumb.
- C. All products shall be installed per installation instructions provided by manufacturer.
- D. Security window units shall arrive on site completely pre-fabricated to field dimensions approved by Shop Drawings.
- E. Install framing and secure to structure in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and approved shop drawings.
- F. Provide required support and securely fasten and set windows plumb, square, and level without twist or bow.
- G. Apply sealant in accordance with window and sealant manufacturer's recommendations as indicated in installation instructions.
- H. Remove excess sealant and leave exposed surfaces clean and smooth.

### 3.3 PROTECTION

- I. Protect installed products until completion of project
- J. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products prior to Substantial Completion.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 092216 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1 Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
  - 2 Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
  - 3 Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.
- B. Evaluation Reports: For embossed steel studs and tracks, firestop tracks, post-installed anchors, and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association or the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

## 2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Subject to compliance, provide products from one of the following:

- 1 ClarkDietrich
- 2 Duraframe
- 3 Craco Manufacturing
- 4 MBA Metal Framing

- B. Framing Members, General: Comply with ASTM C 754 for conditions indicated.

- 1 Steel Sheet Components: Comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Studs and Tracks: ASTM C 645. Use either steel studs and tracks or embossed steel studs and tracks.

1. Steel Studs and Tracks:

- a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by performance requirements for horizontal deflection.

- b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Embossed Steel Studs and Tracks: Roll-formed and embossed with surface deformations to stiffen the framing members so that they are structurally equivalent to conventional ASTM C 645 steel studs and tracks.

- a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: As required by horizontal deflection performance requirements.

- b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

- D. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where indicated, provide one of the following:

- 1 Clip System: Clips designed for use in head-of-wall deflection conditions that provide a positive attachment of studs to tracks while allowing 2-inch minimum vertical movement.
- 2 Single Long-Leg Track System: ASTM C 645 top track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs, installed with studs friction fit into top track and with continuous bridging located within 12 inches of the top of studs to provide lateral bracing.
- 3 Double-Track System: ASTM C 645 top outer tracks, inside track with 2-inch-deep flanges in thickness not less than indicated for studs and fastened to studs, and outer track sized to friction-fit over inner track.
- 4 Deflection Track: Steel sheet top track manufactured to prevent cracking of finishes applied to interior partition framing resulting from deflection of structure above; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.



E. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

1. Provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

- a. ClarkDietrich
- b. Hilti
- c. RectorSeal
- d. Others by Substitution

F. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0296 inch.

G. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-metal thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1 Depth: 1-1/2 inches.

2 Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.

H. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.

1 Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0296 inch.

2 Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

## 2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Tie Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

B. Hanger Attachments to Concrete:

1. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC01, AC193, AC58, or AC308 as appropriate for the substrate.

a. Uses: Securing hangers to structure.

b. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.

c. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

C. Wire Hangers: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.

D. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-metal thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: 2-1/2 inches.

E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):

1. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645, 7/8 inch deep.

a. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0296 inch.

F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C 645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.

1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:

1 Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.

2 Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or ceiling tracks to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.

2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials

below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Installation Standard: ASTM C 754.

1. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C 840 that apply to framing installation.

B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.

C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.

D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.

E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

### 3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.

B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.

C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.

D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.

1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.

2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

- a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.

- b. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.

3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.

4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.

- a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.

6. Curved Partitions:

- a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.

- b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.

## E. Direct Furring:

- 1 Screw to wood framing.
- 2 Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.

F. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

### 3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.

- 1 Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
- 2 Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
- 3 Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.

B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.
  - a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  - a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.
    - 1 Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
    - 2 Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
    - 3 Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
    - 4 Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 092216

SECTION 092900 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Interior gypsum board.
- 2 Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 092216 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  - 1 Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
  - 2 Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.
- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.

### 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

### 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

- 1 Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- 2 Long Edges: Tapered.

- B. Foil-Backed Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

- 1 Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
- 2 Long Edges: Tapered.

- C. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M. With moisture- and mold-resistant core and paper surfaces.

- 1 Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.
- 2 Long Edges: Tapered.
- 3 Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.

### 2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.

- 1. Core: 5/8 inch, Type X.

### 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

- 1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, or plastic.
- 2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.
  - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - c. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - d. Expansion (control) joint.

## B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.
  - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

## 2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

## A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

## B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.
4. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
  - a. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - b. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - c. Finish Coat: For third and fourth coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - d. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
    1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

## 2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

## A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## B. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.

## C. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

## D. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard nonsag, paintable, nonstaining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

## E. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
  - 1 Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. in area.
  - 2 Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
  - 3 Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch-wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch-wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written instructions for locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.
- J. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

### 3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:



- 1 Wallboard Type: As indicated on Drawings.
- 2 Type X: Where required for fire-resistance-rated assembly.
- 3 Ceiling Type: Ceiling surfaces.
- 4 Mold-Resistant Type: Toilet rooms, shower and locker rooms, and kitchen/break room “wet” walls

B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels horizontally (perpendicular to framing) unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
  - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

### 3.4 APPLYING EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.

1. Install with 1/4-inch open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

### 3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings.

C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:

- 1 Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
- 2 LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:

- 1 Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
- 2 LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

### 3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:

1 Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.

2 Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated.

- a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.

B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1 Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.

2 Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 092900

## SECTION 093013 - CERAMIC TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Porcelain tile.
- 2 Metal transition strips.
- 3 Tile backing panels.
- 4 Waterproof membrane for thinset applications.
- 5 Crack isolation membrane.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.
- B. ANSI A108 Series: ANSI A108.01, ANSI A108.02, ANSI A108.1A, ANSI A108.1B, ANSI A108.1C, ANSI A108.4, ANSI A108.5, ANSI A108.6, ANSI A108.8, ANSI A108.9, ANSI A108.10, ANSI A108.11, ANSI A108.12, ANSI A108.13, ANSI A108.14, ANSI A108.15, ANSI A108.16, and ANSI A108.17, which are contained in its "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile."
- C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.
- D. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification:

- 1 Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
- 2 Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory for each color and finish required.
- 3 Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
- 4 Metal transition strips in 6-inch lengths.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products and certified porcelain tile.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1 Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.
- 2 Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Engage an installer with a minimum of 5 years of successful commercial tile installations similar in material, design and scope to that indicated.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.

B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

## 1.10 WARRANTIES

- A. Special Project Warranties: Furnish special project warranties as follows:

- 1 Tile Products: Manufacturer's 1-year warranty from date of purchase.
- 2 Metal Transition Strips: Manufacturer's 10-year warranty providing coverage against defects in materials and workmanship.
- 3 Installer's Warranty: 1-year from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile from single source or producer.

1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

- B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.

- 1 Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
- 2 Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.

- C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:

- 1 Waterproof membrane.
- 2 Crack isolation membrane.
- 3 Cementitious backer units.
- 4 Metal edge strips.
- 5 Grout or mortar.

### 2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.

1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.

- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.
- C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.
- D. Mounting: For factory-mounted tile, provide back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies as standard with manufacturer unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Where tile is indicated for installation in wet areas, do not use back- or edge-mounted tile assemblies unless tile manufacturer specifies in writing that this type of mounting is suitable for installation indicated and has a record of successful in-service performance.

## 2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

### A. Ceramic Tile Type CFT1: Unglazed porcelain tile.

- 1. Basis of Bid: Crossville, Owen Stone LTR
- 2. Substitutions: None
- 3. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
- 4. Face Size:
  - a. 12 by 24 (nominal). Used as floor tile. Refer to finish plans
- 5. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
- 6. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
- 7. Face: Plain with square edges.
- 8. Color: Down OST01
- 9. Grout Color: to be determined by architect.
- 10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
  - a. Cove Base: 6 x 12 cove base.

### B. Ceramic Tile Type CWT1: Unglazed porcelain tile.

- 1. Basis of Bid: Crossville, Owen Stone LTR
- 2. Substitutions: None
- 3. Certification: Tile certified by the Porcelain Tile Certification Agency.
- 4. Face Size:
  - a. 12 by 24 (nominal). Used as floor and wall tile. Refer to finish plans
- 5. Face Size Variation: Rectified.
- 6. Thickness: 3/8 inch.
- 7. Face: Plain with square edges.
- 8. Color: same as CFT1
- 9. Grout Color: to be determined by architect.
- 10. Trim Units: Coordinated with sizes and coursing of adjoining flat tile where applicable and matching characteristics of adjoining flat tile. Provide shapes as follows, selected from manufacturer's standard shapes:
  - a. Cove Base
  - c. Internal Corners: Field-buttled square corners.

## 2.4 FLOORING TRANSITION STRIPS

- A. Basis of Design: Drawings and Specifications are based on the use of products of Schluter Systems, L.P., 194 Pleasant Ridge Road, Plattsburgh, NY 12091-5841. Tel.: (800) 472-4588, Fax: (800) 477-9783, [www.schluter.com](http://www.schluter.com).
- B. Alternate Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products proven to be equivalent to, or better than the Basis of Design product may be proposed for use. Substitutions shall be submitted in accordance with Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures."
- C. Products:

1. Same Height Transitions: Schluter®-SCHIENE:

- a. Description: L-shaped profile with 1/8" (3.2 mm) wide top section and vertical wall section that together form the visible surface, integrated trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, and integrated grout joint spacer.
- b. Anchoring Leg:
- 1) Provide with straight anchoring leg for straight applications. 2) Provide with special radius anchoring leg for radius applications.
- c. Material and Finish: EB – Brushed Stainless Steel Type 304 = V2A.
- d. Height: As required.

2. Sloped Transitions: Schluter®-RENO-TK:

- a. Description: Profile with sloped exposed surface, 1/4" (6 mm) deep channel below exposed surface, integrated trapezoid-perforated anchoring leg, and integrated grout joint spacer.
- b. Anchoring Leg:
- 1) Provide with straight anchoring leg for straight applications. 2) Provide with special radius anchoring leg for radius applications.
- c. Material and Finish: EB – Brushed Stainless Steel Type 304 = V2A.
- d. Height: As required.

## 2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C 1325, Type A, in maximum lengths available to minimize end-to-end butt joints.
1. Manufacturers
- a. USG; Durock
- b. National Gypsum; PermaBase Plus Cement Board
- c. HardieBacker Cement Board
- d. Georgia-Pacific; DensShield Tile Backer
2. Thickness: 1/2 inch.

## 2.6 WATERPROOF MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the

manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

## 2.7 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE

- A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer. Provide one of the following:
- B. PVC Sheet: PVC heat-fused on both sides to facings of nonwoven polyester; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Polyethylene faced on both sides with fleece webbing; 0.008-inch nominal thickness.
- D. Fabric-Reinforced, Modified-Bituminous Sheet: Self-adhering, modified-bituminous sheet with fabric reinforcement facing; 0.040-inch nominal thickness.
- E. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and fabric reinforcement.
- F. Fluid-Applied Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.

## 2.8 SETTING MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement Mortar (Thickset) Installation Materials: ANSI A108.02.
  - 1 Cleavage Membrane: Asphalt felt, ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15); or polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
  - 2 Reinforcing Wire Fabric: Galvanized, welded-wire fabric, 2 by 2 inches by 0.062-inch diameter; comply with ASTM A 185/A 185M and ASTM A 82/A 82M, except for minimum wire size.
- B. Mortar:
  - 1 Provide mortar type and techniques as recommended and warrantied in writing by the tile manufacture, as appropriate for the application, and in accordance with the corresponding sections of ANSI A118
  - 2 For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.

## 2.9 GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.
- B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.
  - 1. Basis of Design; Solomon Colors, Inc. Subject to compliance with requirements, other manufacturers offering colored grout may include:
    - a. Mapei Corporation
    - b. Texrite Cement Products, Inc.
    - c. Others: Submit other manufacturers as acceptable to tile manufacturer



## 2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.
- B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D 4397, 4.0 mils thick.
- C. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.
- D. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

## 2.11 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

- A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.
- B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.
- C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
  - 2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
    - a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    - b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.
  - 3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
  - 4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with adhesives or thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.
- B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproofing by applying a reinforced mortar bed that

complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.

- C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

### 3.3 CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
- B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.
- C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.
- E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.
- F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
- 1 For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
  - 2 Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
  - 3 Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
1. Porcelain Tile: 1/4 inch.
- H. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.
1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.
- I. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.
- 1 At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
  - 2 Do not extend cleavage membrane, waterproofing or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in standard dry-set, modified dry-set or improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on cleavage membrane, waterproofing or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.

- J. Metal Transition Strips: Install where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated.
- K. Floor Sealer: Apply floor sealer to grout joints according to floor-sealer manufacturer's written instructions. As soon as floor sealer has penetrated grout joints, remove excess sealer and sealer from tile faces by wiping with soft cloth.

### 3.4 TILE BACKING PANEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated. Use modified dry-set mortar for bonding material unless otherwise directed in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 WATERPROOFING INSTALLATION

- A. Install waterproofing to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow waterproofing to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

- A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.
- B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.
- B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.
  - 1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
  - 2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

### 3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.
- B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.
- C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION 093013

## SECTION 095113 - ACOUSTICAL PANEL CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems for interior ceilings.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6 inches in size.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
  - 2. Structural members to which suspension systems will be attached.
  - 3. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
    - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
  - 4. Carrying channels or other supplemental support for hanger-wire attachment where conditions do not permit installation of hanger wires at required spacing.
  - 5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical panels.
  - 6. Items penetrating finished ceiling and ceiling-mounted items including the following:
    - a. Lighting fixtures.
    - b. Diffusers.
    - c. Grilles.
    - d. Speakers.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
    - g. Perimeter moldings.
  - 7. Show operation of hinged and sliding components covered by or adjacent to acoustical panels.
  - 8. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/4 inch = 1 foot

- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical panel ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.
- E. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1 Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size panels equal to 5 percent of quantity installed.
  - 2 Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each exposed component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical panels, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical panels, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical panel ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.
  - 1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical panel ceiling installation.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling panel and its supporting suspension system from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
    - a. Armstrong; (Basis of Design)

- b. USG
- c. CertainTeed
- d. Others by Substitution

## 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1 Flame-Spread Index: Class B according to ASTM E 1264.
- 2 Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

## 2.3 ACOUSTICAL PANELS: ACT-1

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Armstrong: Canyon #1492 with Prelude XL suspension system.

- B. Classification: Provide panels as follows:

- 1 Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish.
- 2 Pattern: Fine texture and as indicated by manufacturer's designation.

- C. Color: White.

- D. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less 0.75.

- E. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 30.

- F. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.80.

- G. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 180.

- H. Edge/Joint Detail: Square tegular.

- I. Thickness: 5/8 inch.

- J. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches and 24 by 48 inches as indicated on drawings

- K. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273, ASTM D 3274, or ASTM G 21 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

## 2.4 ACOUSTICAL PANEL: ACT-2

- A. Acoustical Panel Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard panels according to ASTM E 1264 and designated by type, form, pattern, acoustical rating, and light reflectance unless otherwise indicated.
- 1. Armstrong: CeramaGuard Fine Fissured #607 with Prelude Plus XL suspension system.

- B. Classification: Provide panels as follows:

- 3 Type and Form: Type III, mineral base with painted finish; Form 2, water felted.
- 4 Pattern: Fine texture and as indicated by manufacturer's designation.

- C. Color: White.
- D. Light Reflectance (LR): Not less 0.75.
- E. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Not less than 30.
- F. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Not less than 0.80.
- G. Articulation Class (AC): Not less than 180.
- H. Edge/Joint Detail: Square tegular.
- I. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
- J. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches and 24 by 48 inches as indicated on drawings
- K. Antimicrobial Treatment: Manufacturer's standard broad spectrum, antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273, ASTM D 3274, or ASTM G 21 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

## 2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, metal suspension system and accessories according to ASTM C 635/C 635M and designated by type, structural classification, and finish indicated.
- B. Wide-Face, Capped, Double-Web, Steel Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet; prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation; with prefinished 15/16-inch-wide metal caps on flanges.
  - 1 Structural Classification: Intermediate duty system.
  - 2 End Condition of Cross Runners: Override (stepped) type.
  - 3 Face Design: Flat, flush.
  - 4 Cap Material: Cold-rolled steel or aluminum.
  - 5 Cap Finish: Painted white.

## 2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- B. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires as follows:
  - 1 Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
  - 2 Size: Wire diameter sufficient for its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but not less than 0.135-inch-diameter wire.

## 2.7 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-



system runners.

- 1 Edge moldings shall fit acoustical panel edge details and suspension systems indicated and match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
- 2 For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

## 2.8 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing to which acoustical panel ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical panel ceilings.
- B. Examine acoustical panels before installation. Reject acoustical panels that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical panels to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width panels at borders unless otherwise indicated, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install acoustical panel ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
  1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
  2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
  3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
  4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling-suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly to structure or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.

5. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
  6. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
  7. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
  8. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
  9. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
  10. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical panels.
- 1 Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
  - 2 Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
  - 3 Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Install acoustical panels with undamaged edges and fit accurately into suspension-system runners and edge moldings. Scribe and cut panels at borders and penetrations to provide precise fit.
- 1 For square-edged panels, install panels with edges fully hidden from view by flanges of suspension-system runners and moldings.
  - 2 Paint cut edges of panel remaining exposed after installation; match color of exposed panel surfaces using coating recommended in writing for this purpose by acoustical panel manufacturer.

### 3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Suspended Ceilings: Install main and cross runners level to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.
- B. Moldings and Trim: Install moldings and trim to substrate and level with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet, non-cumulative.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical panel ceilings, including trim, edge moldings, and suspension-system members. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage.
- B. Remove and replace ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 095113

SECTION 096513 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1 Thermoplastic-rubber base.
- 2 Rubber molding accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, not less than 12 inches long.
- C. Product Schedule: For resilient base and accessory products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1. Furnish not less than 10 linear feet for every 500 linear feet or fraction thereof, of each type, color, pattern, and size of resilient product installed.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following periods:

- 1 48 hours before installation.
- 2 During installation.
- 3 48 hours after installation.

- B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

- C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 THERMOPLASTIC-RUBBER BASE: VB-1

#### A. Manufacturers:

- 1 Johnsonite (Basis of Design)
- 2 Roppe
- 3 Armstrong

#### B. Product Standard: ASTM F 1861, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic).

1. Group: I (solid, homogeneous).
2. Style and Location:
  - a. Style A, Straight: Provide in areas with carpet.
  - b. Style B, Cove: Provide in areas with resilient floor coverings or sealed concrete.

#### C. Thickness: 0.125 inch.

#### D. Height: 4 inches.

#### E. Lengths: Cut lengths 48 inches long or coils in manufacturer's standard length.

#### F. Outside Corners: Job formed or preformed.

#### G. Inside Corners: Job formed.

#### H. Colors: Refer to Finished Room Schedule for colors.

### 2.2 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by resilient-product manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by resilient-product manufacturer for resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Metal Edge Strips: Extruded aluminum with mill finish, nominal 2 inches wide, of height required to protect exposed edges of flooring, and in maximum available lengths to minimize running joints.
- D. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by resilient stair-tread manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Installation of resilient products indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates for Resilient Stair Accessories: Prepare horizontal surfaces according to ASTM F 710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
  - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
  - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.

C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

D. Do not install resilient products until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products.

### 3.3 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practical without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible and form with returns not less than 3 inches in length.
  - a. Miter or cope corners to minimize open joints.

### 3.4 RESILIENT ACCESSORY INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient accessories.

B. Resilient Molding Accessories: Butt to adjacent materials and tightly adhere to substrates throughout length of each piece. Install reducer strips at edges of floor covering that would otherwise be exposed.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient-product installation:

- 1 Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
- 2 Sweep and vacuum horizontal surfaces thoroughly.
- 3 Damp-mop horizontal surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from resilient flooring before applying liquid floor polish.

1. Apply two coat(s).

E. Cover resilient products subject to wear and foot traffic until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096513

SECTION 096519 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient floor tile.

- 1 Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
- 2 Show details of special patterns.

C. Samples: Full-size units of each color, texture, and pattern of floor tile required.

D. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

- 1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.

1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

## 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

## 1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:

- 1 48 hours before installation.
- 2 During installation.
- 3 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.

D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.

E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

### 2.2 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE – LVT-1

A. Manufacturer

1. Shaw
  - a. Style: Art + Science, Pivot 4499V
  - b. Color: Renew, 00155
  - c. Construction: Heavy Commercial PVC-free Ecoworx Resilient
  - d. Finish: ExoGuard
  - e. Size: 8" x 51" x 0.098"
  - f. Pattern: Ashlar



B. Substitutions: None

## 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.
- C. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1 Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2 Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3 Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 10 pH.
  - 4 Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.

- a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
  - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- D. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
- 1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- E. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
- 1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
- 1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.

- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.
- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
  - 1 Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
  - 2 Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
  - 3 Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.
- C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.
- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
  - 1. Apply two coat(s).
- E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 096519

## SECTION 096813 - TILE CARPETING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes modular carpet tile.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 096513 "Resilient Base and Accessories" for resilient wall base and accessories installed with carpet tile.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1 Include manufacturer's written data on physical characteristics, durability, and fade resistance.
  - 2 Include manufacturer's written installation recommendations for each type of substrate.

- B. Samples for Verification: For each of the following products and for each color and texture required. Label each Sample with manufacturer's name, material description, color, pattern, and designation indicated on Drawings and in schedules.

- 1. Carpet Tile: Full-size Sample.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For carpet tiles to include in maintenance manuals. Include the following:

- 1 Methods for maintaining carpet tile, including cleaning and stain-removal products and procedures and manufacturer's recommended maintenance schedule.
  - 2 Precautions for cleaning materials and methods that could be detrimental to carpet tile.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified by the International Certified Floorcovering Installers Association at the Commercial II certification level.

B. Mockups

1. Build minimum 10' x 10' mockup for each carpet tile color and pattern, and where combinations of carpet tiles are indicated. Carpet tiles shall be loose laid for review and acceptance by Owner.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard."

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard" for temperature, humidity, and ventilation limitations.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install carpet tiles until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet-work in spaces is complete and dry, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at levels planned for building occupants during the remainder of the construction period.

C. Do not install carpet tiles over concrete slabs until slabs have cured and are sufficiently dry to bond with adhesive and concrete slabs have pH range recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Carpet Tiles: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of carpet tile installation that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty does not include deterioration or failure of carpet tile due to unusual traffic, failure of substrate, vandalism, or abuse.
2. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. More than 10 percent edge raveling, snags, and runs.
  - b. Dimensional instability.
  - c. Excess static discharge.
  - d. Loss of tuft-bind strength.
  - e. Loss of face fiber.
  - f. Delamination.
3. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CARPET TILE

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the following Carpet Tiles:

1. CPT-1: Shaw Contract – Think Tile
  - a. Style Number: 5T186
  - b. Color(s): Nuance 86515
  - c. Construction: Multi-level pattern loop

- d. Fiber: 100% nylon
- e. Size: 24"x24"
- f. Backing: EcoWorx Tile
- g. Installation Method: Ashlar See Sheet A-950 for pattern details.

B. Use manufacturer's recommendation for adhesives.

C. Moisture Control (if needed): Moisture Shield is applied moisture control products.

D. Applied Treatments:

- 1. Soil-Resistance Treatment: Manufacturer's standard treatment.

E. Performance Characteristics:

- 1 Radiant Panel: Class I
- 2 NBS Smoke: Less than 450.
- 3 Electrostatic Propensity: Less than 3.5 kV according to AATCC 134.

## 2.2 INSTALLATION ACCESSORIES

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant, mildew-resistant, nonstaining, pressure-sensitive type to suit products and subfloor conditions indicated, that comply with flammability requirements for installed carpet tile, and are recommended by carpet tile manufacturer for releasable installation.
- C. Metal Edge/Transition Strips: Extruded aluminum with finish as selected by Architect of profile and width shown, of height required to protect exposed edge of carpet, and of maximum lengths to minimize running joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, alkalinity range, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting carpet tile performance.
- B. Examine carpet tile for type, color, pattern, and potential defects.
- C. Concrete Slabs: Verify that finishes comply with requirements specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" and that surfaces are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits.
  - 1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft. (18.6 sq. m), and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Perform additional moisture tests recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standards" and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions for preparing substrates indicated to receive carpet tile.
- B. Use trowelable leveling and patching compounds, according to manufacturer's written instructions, to fill cracks, holes, depressions, and protrusions in substrates. Fill or level cracks, holes and depressions 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider, and protrusions more than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) unless more stringent requirements are required by manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Concrete Substrates: Remove coatings, including curing compounds, and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, without using solvents. Use mechanical methods recommended in writing by adhesive and carpet tile manufacturers.
- D. Broom and vacuum clean substrates to be covered immediately before installing carpet tile.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with CRI's "CRI Carpet Installation Standard," Section 18, "Modular Carpet" and with carpet tile manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Installation Method: Glue down; install every tile with full-spread, releasable, pressure-sensitive adhesive.
- C. Maintain dye-lot integrity. Do not mix dye lots in same area.
- D. Maintain pile-direction patterns recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.
- E. Cut and fit carpet tile to butt tightly to vertical surfaces, permanent fixtures, and built-in furniture including cabinets, pipes, outlets, edgings, thresholds, and nosings. Bind or seal cut edges as recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
- F. Extend carpet tile into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, open-bottomed obstructions, removable flanges, alcoves, and similar openings.
- G. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on carpet tile as marked on subfloor. Use nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Perform the following operations immediately after installing carpet tile:
  - 1 Remove excess adhesive and other surface blemishes using cleaner recommended by carpet tile manufacturer.
  - 2 Remove yarns that protrude from carpet tile surface.
  - 3 Vacuum carpet tile using commercial machine with face-beater element.
- B. Protect installed carpet tile to comply with CRI's "Carpet Installation Standard," Section 20, "Protecting Indoor Installations."
- C. Protect carpet tile against damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during the remainder of construction period. Use protection methods indicated or recommended in writing by carpet tile manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 096813

SECTION 099113 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on exterior substrates:

- 1 Concrete.
- 2 Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
- 3 Steel and iron.
- 4 Galvanized metal.
- 5 Gypsum board.
- 6 Bituminous-coated surfaces.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
  - 1 Include printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
  - 2 Indicate VOC content.



- B. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

## 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

- 1 Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- 2 Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

## 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. PPG Industries, Inc.; [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com)
- B. The Sherwin-Williams Company; [www.sherwin-williams.com](http://www.sherwin-williams.com)
- C. Benjamin Moore; [www.benjaminmoore.com](http://www.benjaminmoore.com)
- D. Tnemec; [www.tnemec.com](http://www.tnemec.com)

### 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

- A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."
- B. Material Compatibility:
1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.
1. Ten percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

### 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:
- 1 Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
  - 2 Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
  - 3 Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
- 1 Concrete: 12 percent.
  - 2 Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
  - 3 Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual."
  - 1 Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2 Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
  - 3 Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
  - 4 Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5 Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged

condition.

- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

##### 1. Water-repellant, non-paintable system MPI EXT 3.1G:

- a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
- b. Top Coat: MPI Gloss Level 2; MPI # 117.

#### B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

##### 1. Clear Sealer System MPI EXT 3.2G:

- a. Prime Coat: Sealer, solvent based, matching topcoat.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Sealer, solvent based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Sealer, solvent based, for concrete floors, MPI #104.

#### C. CMU Substrates:

##### 1. Latex System MPI EXT 4.2A:

- a. Prime Coat: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.

#### D. Steel and Iron Substrates:

##### 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.1M:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, epoxy, anti-corrosive MPI #101.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #163.

#### E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

##### 1. Water-Based Light Industrial Coating System MPI EXT 5.3J:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
- b. Intermediate Coat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Light industrial coating, exterior, water based (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #161.

#### F. Exterior Bituminous-Coated Substrates:

##### 1. Latex System MPI EXT 10.2A:

- a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, exterior, matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: Latex, exterior, low sheen (MPI Gloss Level 3-4), MPI #15.

END OF SECTION 099113

SECTION 099123 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:

- 1 Concrete.
- 2 Concrete masonry units (CMUs).
- 3 Steel and iron.
- 4 Gypsum board.
- 5 ASJ insulation covering.
- 6 Bituminous-coated surfaces.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 051200 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming structural steel.
- 2 Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railings" for shop priming pipe and tube railings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MPI Gloss Level 1: Not more than five units at 60 degrees and 10 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- B. MPI Gloss Level 2: Not more than 10 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- C. MPI Gloss Level 3: 10 to 25 units at 60 degrees and 10 to 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- D. MPI Gloss Level 4: 20 to 35 units at 60 degrees and not less than 35 units at 85 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- E. MPI Gloss Level 5: 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- F. MPI Gloss Level 6: 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.
- G. MPI Gloss Level 7: More than 85 units at 60 degrees, according to ASTM D 523.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.

- 1 Include Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified, with the proposed product highlighted.
- 2 Indicate VOC content.

B. Product List: Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules. Include color designations.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.

- 1 Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
- 2 Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.

B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. PPG Industries, Inc.; [www.ppgpaints.com](http://www.ppgpaints.com)
- B. The Sherwin-Williams Company; [www.sherwin-williams.com](http://www.sherwin-williams.com)
- C. Benjamin Moore; [www.benjaminmoore.com](http://www.benjaminmoore.com)
- D. Tnemec; [www.tnemec.com](http://www.tnemec.com)

## 2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. Colors: As indicated in a color schedule.

1. Ten percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure:

- 1 Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials. Contractor will be notified in advance and may be present when samples are taken. If paint materials have already been delivered to Project site, samples may be taken at Project site. Samples will be identified, sealed, and certified by testing agency.
- 2 Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
- 3 Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

- 1 Concrete: 12 percent.
- 2 Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
- 3 Masonry (Clay and CMUs): 12 percent.
- 4 Wood: 15 percent.
- 5 Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
- 6 Plaster: 12 percent.



- C. Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is sanded smooth.
- D. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- E. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
  - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
  - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer, if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:
  - 1. SSPC-SP 3.
- G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

### 3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in "MPI Manual."
- 1 Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
  - 2 Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
  - 3 Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.
  - 4 Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
  - 5 Primers specified in painting schedules may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if acceptable to topcoat manufacturers.
- B. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.
- C. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- D. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
  2. Paint the following work where exposed in occupied spaces:
    - a. Equipment, including panelboards.
    - b. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
    - d. Pipe hangers and supports.
    - e. Metal conduit.
    - f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
    - g. Other items as directed by Architect.
  3. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.
  - 1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
  - 2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written recommendations, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written recommendations.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

#### A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

- 1. Latex System MPI INT 3.1E:
  - a. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 4), MPI #43.
- 2. Water-Based Concrete Floor Sealer System MPI INT 3.2G:
  - a. First Coat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, matching topcoat.
  - b. Topcoat: Sealer, water based, for concrete floors, MPI #99.

#### B. CMU Substrates:

- 1. Latex System MPI INT 4.2A:
  - a. Block Filler: Block filler, latex, interior/exterior, MPI #4.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 4), MPI #43. 1) In rooms and spaces except as indicated below.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54. 1) In "wet" rooms; toilet rooms, locker rooms, showers, janitor closets etc.

**C. CMU Substrates – Anti-Graffiti Coating:**

1. Single-Component, Non-Sacrificial Siloxane Semi-Gloss Coating:
  - a. Filler, prime and top-coats as indicated above
  - b. Topcoat: Siloxane, interior, semi-gloss, clear. 1) In Ball Field Toilet Rooms.

**D. Steel Substrates:**

1. Latex over Shop-Applied Quick-Drying Shop Primer System MPI INT 5.1X:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application, MPI #275.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.
2. High-Performance Architectural Latex System MPI INT 5.1R:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, quick dry, for metal, MPI #76.
  - b. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section where substrate is specified.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural, matching topcoat.
  - d. Topcoat: Latex, interior, high performance architectural (MPI Gloss Level 4), MPI #140.
3. Water-Based Dry-Fall System MPI INT 5.1CC:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, alkyd, anti-corrosive, for metal, MPI #79.
  - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, latex (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #155.
4. Water-Based Dry-Fall over Shop-Applied Quick-Drying Shop Primer System MPI INT 5.1CCC:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, quick dry, for shop application, MPI #275.
  - b. Topcoat: Dry fall, latex (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #155.

**E. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:**

1. Latex System MPI INT 5.3J:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer, galvanized, water based, MPI #134.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 4), MPI #43.

**F. Gypsum Board Substrates:**

1. Latex over Latex Sealer System MPI INT 9.2A:
  - a. Prime Coat: Primer sealer, latex, interior, MPI #50.
  - b. Prime Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.
  - c. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.

d. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 3), MPI #52. 1) In rooms and spaces except as indicated below.

e. Topcoat: Latex, interior, semi-gloss (MPI Gloss Level 5), MPI #54.

1) In “wet” rooms; toilet rooms, locker rooms, shower rooms, janitor closets etc.

G. Bituminous-Coated Substrates:

1. Latex System MPI INT 10.2A:

a. Prime Coat: Primer, rust inhibitive, water based, MPI #107.

b. Intermediate Coat: Latex, interior, matching topcoat.

c. Topcoat: Latex, interior (MPI Gloss Level 2), MPI #44.

END OF SECTION 099123

SECTION 101423.16 - ROOM-IDENTIFICATION PANEL SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes room-identification signs that are directly attached to the building.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Accessible: In accordance with the accessibility standard.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish templates for placement of sign-anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For room-identification signs.
  - 1 Include fabrication and installation details and attachments to other work.
  - 2 Show sign mounting heights, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by other installers, and accessories.
  - 3 Show message list, typestyles, graphic elements, including raised characters and Braille, and layout for each sign at least half size.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sign assembly, exposed component, and exposed finish.
  - 1. Include representative Samples of available typestyles and graphic symbols.
- D. Product Schedule: For room-identification signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings or specified.

## 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For Manufacturer.
- B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

## 1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For signs to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify locations of anchorage devices embedded in permanent construction by other installers by field measurements before fabrication, and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

## 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of signs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
    - b. Deterioration of embedded graphic image.
    - c. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design and ICC A117.1

### 2.2 ROOM-IDENTIFICATION SIGNS

- A. Room-Identification Sign: Sign with smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles; and as follows:
  - 1. Laminated-Sheet Sign: Sandblasted polymer face sheet with raised graphics laminated to phenolic backing sheet to produce composite sheet.
    - a. Composite-Sheet Thickness: 0.25 inch.
    - b. Surface-Applied Graphics: Applied vinyl film.
    - c. Color(s): As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2. Sign-Panel Perimeter: Finish edges smooth.

- a. Edge Condition at Vertical and Horizontal Edges: Beveled.
- b. Corner Condition in Elevation: Square.

1 Mounting: Surface mounted to wall with concealed anchors, or adhesive.

2 Text and Typeface: Accessible raised characters and Braille, typeface as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range Finish raised characters to contrast with background color, and finish Braille to match background color.

## 2.3 SIGN MATERIALS

A. Vinyl Film: UV-resistant vinyl film with pressure-sensitive, permanent adhesive; die cut to form characters or images as indicated on Drawings.

B. Paints and Coatings for Sheet Materials: Inks, dyes, and paints that are recommended by manufacturer for optimum adherence to surface and are UV and water resistant for colors and exposure indicated.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners and Anchors: Manufacturer's standard as required for secure anchorage of signs, noncorrosive and compatible with each material joined, and complying with the following:

1 Use concealed fasteners and anchors unless indicated to be exposed.

2 Sign Mounting Fasteners:

- a. Concealed Studs: Concealed (blind), threaded studs welded or brazed to back of sign material or screwed into back of sign assembly unless otherwise indicated.

B. Adhesive: As recommended by sign manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard sign assemblies according to requirements indicated.

- 1 Preassemble signs and assemblies in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs and assemblies only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation; apply markings in locations concealed from view after final assembly.
- 2 Mill joints to a tight, hairline fit. Form assemblies and joints exposed to weather to resist water penetration and retention.
- 3 Conceal connections if possible; otherwise, locate connections where they are inconspicuous.
- 4 Provide rabbets, lugs, and tabs necessary to assemble components and to attach to existing work. Drill and tap for required fasteners. Use concealed fasteners where possible; use exposed fasteners that match sign finish.



- B. Subsurface-Applied Graphics: Apply graphics to back face of clear face-sheet material to produce precisely formed image. Image shall be free of rough edges.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install signs using mounting methods indicated and according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- 1 Install signs level, plumb, true to line, and at locations and heights indicated, with sign surfaces free of distortion and other defects in appearance.
  - 2 Install signs so they do not protrude or obstruct according to the accessibility standard.
  - 3 Before installation, verify that sign surfaces are clean and free of materials or debris that would impair installation.
- B. Accessibility: Install signs in locations on walls as indicated on Drawings and according to the accessibility standard.
- C. Mounting Methods:
1. Concealed Studs: Using a template, drill holes in substrate aligning with studs on back of sign. Remove loose debris from hole and substrate surface.
    - a. Masonry Substrates: Fill holes with adhesive. Leave recess space in hole for displaced adhesive. Place sign in position and push until flush to surface, embedding studs in holes. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.
    - b. Thin or Hollow Surfaces: Place sign in position and flush to surface, install washers and nuts on studs projecting through opposite side of surface, and tighten.
  2. Adhesive: Clean bond-breaking materials from substrate surface and remove loose debris. Apply linear beads or spots of adhesive symmetrically to back of sign and of suitable quantity to support weight of sign after cure without slippage. Keep adhesive away from edges to prevent adhesive extrusion as sign is applied and to prevent visibility of cured adhesive at sign edges. Place sign in position, and push to engage adhesive. Temporarily support sign in position until adhesive fully sets.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove and replace damaged or deformed signs and signs that do not comply with specified requirements. Replace signs with damaged or deteriorated finishes or components that cannot be successfully repaired by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.
- B. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as signs are installed.
- C. On completion of installation, clean exposed surfaces of signs according to manufacturer's written instructions, and touch up minor nicks and abrasions in finish. Maintain signs in a clean condition during construction and protect from damage until acceptance by Owner.

END OF SECTION 101423.16

## SECTION 102113.19 - PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid-plastic toilet compartments configured as toilet enclosures and urinal screens.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for supports that attach ceiling-hung compartments and floor-and-ceiling-anchored compartments to overhead structural system.
- 2 Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry" for blocking.
- 3 Section 102800 "Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories" for toilet tissue dispensers, grab bars, purse shelves, and similar accessories mounted on toilet compartments.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for toilet compartments.

B. Shop Drawings: For toilet compartments.

- 1 Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachment details.
- 2 Show locations of cutouts for compartment-mounted toilet accessories.
- 3 Show locations of centerlines of toilet fixtures.
- 4 Show locations of floor drains.
- 5 Show ceiling grid, ceiling-mounted items, and overhead support or bracing locations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of toilet compartment material indicated.

1. Include Samples of hardware and accessories involving material and color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in manufacturer's standard sizes unless otherwise indicated:

- 1 Each type of material, color, and finish required for toilet compartments, prepared on 6inch-square Samples of same thickness and material indicated for Work.
- 2 Each type of hardware and accessory.

- E. Product Schedule: For toilet compartments, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing location and selected colors for toilet compartment material.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of toilet compartment.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For toilet compartments to include in maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents and source.

- 1 Door Hinges: Two hinges with associated fasteners.
- 2 Latch and Keeper: Two latches and keepers with associated fasteners.
- 3 Door Bumper: One bumpers with associated fasteners.
- 4 Door Pull: Two door pulls with associated fasteners.
- 5 Fasteners: Twenty fasteners of each size and type.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of toilet fixtures, walls, columns, ceilings, and other construction contiguous with toilet compartments by field measurements before fabrication.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1 Flame-Spread Index: 75 or less.
- 2 Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1 for toilet compartments designated as accessible.

## 2.2 SOLID-PLASTIC TOILET COMPARTMENTS; TC-1

### A. Manufacturers: Provide products from one of the following:

1. ASI Global Partitions
2. Bradley Crop.
3. Bobrick
4. Hadrian Manufacturing Inc.
5. General Partitions Mfg. Corp.
6. Metpar

### B. Toilet-Enclosure Style: Floor anchored, wall braced.

### C. Urinal-Screen Style: Wall hung.

### D. Door, Panel and Pilaster Construction: Solid, high-density polyethylene (HDPE) panel material, not less than 1 inch thick, seamless, with eased edges, no-sightline system, and with homogenous color and pattern throughout thickness of material.

1. Integral Hinges: Configure doors and pilasters to receive integral hinges.
2. Heat-Sink Strip: Manufacturer's standard continuous, stainless-steel strip fastened to exposed bottom edges of solid-plastic components to hinder malicious combustion.
3. Color and Pattern: Architect to select from standard manufactured colors by ASI Global Partitions (Basis of Design).

### E. Pilaster Shoes and Sleeves (Caps): Manufacturer's standard design; polymer.

1. Polymer Color and Pattern: Matching pilaster.

### F. Brackets (Fittings):

1. Full-Height (Continuous) Type: Manufacturer's standard design; stainless steel.

## 2.3 HARDWARE AND ACCESSORIES

### A. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard operating hardware and accessories for use in Office Toilet Rooms.

- 1 Material: Stainless steel.
- 2 Hinges: Manufacturer's standard integral hinge for solid-plastic doors, allowing emergency access by lifting door.
- 3 Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's standard surface-mounted latch unit designed for emergency access and with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible.
- 4 Coat Hook: Manufacturer's standard combination hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories.
- 5 Door Bumper: Manufacturer's standard rubber-tipped bumper at out-swinging doors.
- 6 Door Pull: Manufacturer's standard unit at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible.

B. Hardware and Accessories: Manufacturer's heavy-duty operating hardware and accessories for use in Locker Rooms.

- 1 Hinges: Manufacturer's minimum 0.062-inch-thick stainless-steel continuous, cam type that swings to a closed or partially open position, allowing emergency access by lifting door. Mount with through-bolts.
- 2 Latch and Keeper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty surface-mounted cast-stainless-steel latch unit designed to resist damage due to slamming, with combination rubber-faced door strike and keeper, and with provision for emergency access. Provide units that comply with regulatory requirements for accessibility at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.
- 3 Coat Hook: Manufacturer's heavy-duty combination cast-stainless-steel hook and rubber-tipped bumper, sized to prevent in-swinging door from hitting compartment-mounted accessories. Mount with through-bolts.
- 4 Door Bumper: Manufacturer's heavy-duty rubber-tipped cast-stainless-steel bumper at out-swinging doors. Mount with through-bolts.
- 5 Door Pull: Manufacturer's heavy-duty cast-stainless-steel pull at out-swinging doors that complies with regulatory requirements for accessibility. Provide units on both sides of doors at compartments designated as accessible. Mount with through-bolts.

C. Overhead Bracing: Manufacturer's standard continuous, extruded-aluminum head rail with antigrip profile and in manufacturer's standard finish.

D. Anchorages and Fasteners: Manufacturer's standard exposed fasteners of stainless steel, finished to match the items they are securing, with theft-resistant-type heads. Provide sex-type bolts for through-bolt applications. For concealed anchors, use stainless-steel, hot-dip galvanized-steel, or other rust-resistant, protective-coated steel compatible with related materials.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

A. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304, stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

B. Stainless-Steel Castings: ASTM A 743/A 743M.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

A. Fabrication, General: Fabricate toilet compartment components to sizes indicated. Coordinate requirements and provide cutouts for through-partition toilet accessories where required for attachment of toilet accessories.

B. Overhead-Braced Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant supports, leveling mechanism, and anchors at pilasters to suit floor conditions. Provide shoes at pilasters to conceal supports and leveling mechanism.

C. Ceiling-Hung Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at pilasters for connection to structural support above finished ceiling. Provide assemblies that support pilasters from structure without transmitting load to finished ceiling. Provide sleeves (caps) at tops of pilasters to conceal anchorage.

- D. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant anchoring assemblies with leveling adjustment nuts at tops and bottoms of pilasters. Provide shoes and sleeves (caps) at pilasters to conceal anchorage.
- E. Door Size and Swings: Unless otherwise indicated, provide 24-inch-wide, in-swinging doors for standard toilet compartments and 36-inch-wide, out-swinging doors with a minimum 32-inch-wide, clear opening for compartments designated as accessible.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for fastening, support, alignment, operating clearances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
  - 1. Confirm location and adequacy of blocking and supports required for installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions. Install units rigid, straight, level, and plumb. Secure units in position with manufacturer's recommended anchoring devices.
  - 1. Maximum Clearances:
    - a. Pilasters and Panels: 1/2 inch.
    - b. Panels and Walls: 1 inch.
  - 2. Stirrup Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with no fewer than three brackets attached at midpoint and near top and bottom of panel.
    - a. Locate wall brackets so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
  - 3. Full-Height (Continuous) Brackets: Secure panels to walls and to pilasters with full-height brackets.
    - a. Locate bracket fasteners so holes for wall anchors occur in masonry or tile joints.
    - b. Align brackets at pilasters with brackets at walls.
- B. Overhead-Braced Units: Secure pilasters to floor and level, plumb, and tighten. Set pilasters with anchors penetrating not less than 1-3/4 inches into structural floor unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written instructions. Secure continuous head rail to each pilaster with no fewer than two fasteners. Hang doors to align tops of doors with tops of panels, and adjust so tops of doors are parallel with overhead brace when doors are in closed position.

- C. Ceiling-Hung Units: Secure pilasters to supporting structure and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so bottoms of doors are level with bottoms of pilasters when doors are in closed position.
- D. Floor-and-Ceiling-Anchored Units: Secure pilasters to supporting construction and level, plumb, and tighten. Hang doors and adjust so doors are level and aligned with panels when doors are in closed position.
- E. Urinal Screens: Attach with anchoring devices to suit supporting structure. Set units level and plumb, rigid, and secured to resist lateral impact.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Hardware Adjustment: Adjust and lubricate hardware according to hardware manufacturer's written instructions for proper operation. Set hinges on in-swinging doors to hold doors open approximately 30 degrees from closed position when unlatched. Set hinges on out-swinging doors to return doors to fully closed position.

END OF SECTION 102113.19



## SECTION 10 22 39 FOLDING PANEL PARTITIONS

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes:
  - 1. Manually operated, paired panel operable partitions.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Division 06 Sections for wood framing and supports, and all blocking at head and jambs as required.
  - 2. Division 09 Sections for wall and ceiling framing at head and jambs.

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: An experienced installer who is certified in writing by the operable partition manufacturer, as qualified to install the manufacturer's partition systems for work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project.
- B. Acoustical Performance: Test operable partitions in an independent acoustical laboratory in accordance with ASTM E90 test procedure and classified in accordance with ASTM E413 to attain no less than the STC rating specified. Provide a complete and unedited written test report by the testing laboratory upon request.
- C. Preparation of the opening shall conform to the criteria set forth per ASTM E557 *Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions*.
- D. The operable wall must be manufactured by a certified ISO-9001-2015 company or an equivalent quality control system.
- E. Indoor Air Quality: Operable partition, movable wall manufacturer's non-wood products must meet the SCS Indoor Advantage™ Gold Certification or equivalent. This approval guarantees conformance to indoor air concentrations meeting Indoor Advantage Gold Indoor Air Quality Certified to SCS-105 v4.2-2023 Conforms to ANSI/BIFMA M7.1 and X7.1 and the CDPH/EHLB Standard Method (CA 01350) v1.2-2017 conducted in an independent third-party air quality testing laboratory.

### 1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. ASTM International
  - 1. ASTM E557 Standard Practice for Architectural Application and Installation of Operable Partitions.
  - 2. ASTM E90 - Standard Test Method for Laboratory Measurement of Airborne Sound Transmission Loss of Building Partitions and Elements.
  - 3. ASTM E84 - Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
  - 4. ASTM E413 - Classification for Rating Sound Insulation
- B. Health Product Declaration Collaborative
  - 1. Health Product Declaration Open Standard v2.1
- C. International Standards Organization

1. ISO 14021 - Environmental Labels and Declarations - Self-Declared Environmental Claims (Type II Environmental Labeling).
  2. ISO 14025:2011-10, Environmental Labels and Declarations - Type III Environmental Declarations - Principles and Procedures.
  3. ISO 14040:2009-11, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Principles and Framework.
  4. ISO 14044:2006-10, Environmental Management - Life Cycle Assessment - Requirements and Guidelines.
  5. ISO 21930 – Sustainability in Buildings and Civil Engineering Works — Core Rules for Environmental Product Declarations of Construction Products and Services.
- D. Other Standards
1. ADA – Americans with Disabilities Act

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Material descriptions, construction details, finishes, installation details, and operating instructions for each type of operable partition, component, and accessory specified.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show location and extent of operable partitions. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, attachments to other construction, and accessories. Indicate dimensions, weights, conditions at openings, and at storage areas, and required installation, storage, and operating clearances. Indicate location and installation requirements for hardware and track, including floor tolerances required and direction of travel. Indicate blocking to be provided by others.
- C. Setting Drawings: Show imbedded items and cutouts required in other work, including support beam punching template.
- D. Samples: Color samples demonstrating full range of finishes available by architect. Verification samples will be available in same thickness and material indicated for the work.
- E. Reports: Provide a complete and unedited written sound test report indicating glass thickness and spacing in test specimen matches product as submitted.
- F. Create spaces that are healthy for occupants.
  1. Furnish products and materials with Health Product Declaration (HPD), Manufacturer Inventory, or other material health disclosure documentation. Products without an HPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.
- G. Furnish materials that generate the least amount of pollution.
  1. Furnish products and materials that have third party verified environmental product declarations (EPD's). Consider products and materials that have optimized environmental performance (reduced life cycle impacts). Products without an EPD or other disclosure documentation are not acceptable.
- H. Buy American: Folding door to be manufactured in the United States in compliance with applicable U.S. Federal Trade Commission (FTC) and U.S. Customs Service and Border Protections regulations and be labeled "Made in America".

## 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Clearly mark packages and panels with numbering systems used on Shop Drawings. Do not use permanent markings on panels.
- B. Protect panels during delivery, storage, and handling to comply with manufacturer's direction and as required to prevent damage.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Provide written warranty by manufacturer of operable partitions agreeing to repair or replace any components with manufacturing defects.

- B. Partition Warranty period: Three (3) years.
- C. Suspension System Warranty:
  - 1. OP-01: Five (5) years.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS, PRODUCTS, AND OPERATIONS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Modernfold, Inc.(Basis of Design)
  - 2. Panelfold, Inc.
- B. Doors to be manufactured in the U.S.A.
- C. Products: Subject to compliance with the requirements, provide the following product:

### 2.2 OPERATION

- A. OP-01: Acousti-Seal Encore - Paired Panel: Series of paired flat panels hinged together in pairs, manually operated, top supported with operable floor seals and automatic top seals.
- B. Final Closure:
  - 1. OP-01: Horizontally expanding panel edge with removable crank

### 2.3 PANEL CONSTRUCTION

- A. Nominal 4.25-inch (108mm) thick panels in manufacturer's standard 51-inch (1295mm) widths. All panel horizontal and vertical framing members fabricated from minimum 16-gage formed steel with overlapped and welded corners for rigidity. Top channel is reinforced to support suspension system components. Frame is designed so that full vertical edges of panels are of formed steel and provide concealed protection of the edges of the panel skin.
- B. Panel skin shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Roll-formed steel wrapping around panel edge. Panel skins shall be lock formed and welded directly to the frame for unitized construction. Acoustical ratings of panels with this construction minimum:
    - a. 54 STC
- C. Hinges for Panels, Closure Panels and Pocket Doors shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Full leaf butt hinges, attached directly to the panel frame with welded hinge anchor plates within panel to further support hinge mounting to frame. Lifetime warranty on hinges. Hinges mounted into panel edge or vertical astragal are not acceptable.
- D. Panel Trim: No vertical or horizontal trim required or allowed on edges of panels; minimal groove appearance at panel joints.
- E. Panel Weights:
  - 1. OP-01: 54 STC - 9.5 lbs./square foot

### 2.4 PANEL FINISH

- A. Panel finish shall be factory applied, Class "A" rated material. Finish shall be:
  - 1. OP-01: Reinforced vinyl with woven backing weighing not less than 20 ounces (567 grams) per lineal yard.
- B. Panel Trim: Exposed panel trim of one consistent color:

## 1. OP-01: To Be Advised

## 2.5 SOUND SEALS

- A. Vertical Interlocking Sound Seals between panels: Aluminum astragals, with tongue and groove configuration in each panel edge. Rigid plastic astragals are not acceptable.
- B. Horizontal Top Seals shall be Modernfold SureSet™ automatic operable top seals, manually operated top seals not required or permitted.
- C. Horizontal bottom floor seals shall be Modernfold Sureset™ bottom seal:
  - 1. OP-01: Modernfold SM2 Bottom Seal. Manually activated seals providing nominal 2" (51mm) operating clearance with an operating range of + 0.50" (13mm) to -1.50" (38mm). Seal shall be operable from panel edge or face. Extended seal shall exert nominal 120 pounds (54 kg) downward force to the floor throughout operating range.

## 2.6 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. OP-01: #17 Suspension System
  - 1. Suspension Tracks: Minimum 11-gauge, 0.12-inch (3.04mm) roll-formed steel track, suitable for either direct mounting to a wood header or supported by adjustable steel hanger brackets, supporting the load-bearing surface of the track, connected to structural support by pairs of 0.38-inch (10mm) diameter threaded rods. Aluminum track is not acceptable.
    - a. Exposed track soffit: Steel, integral to track, and pre-painted off-white.
  - 2. Carriers: One all-steel trolley with steel tired ball bearing wheels per panel (except hinged panels). Non-steel tires are not acceptable.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with ASTM E557, operable partition manufacturer's written installation instructions, Drawings and approved Shop Drawings.
- B. Install operable partitions and accessories after other finishing operations, including painting have been completed.
- C. Match operable partitions by installing panels from marked packages in numbered sequence indicated on Shop Drawings.
- D. Broken, cracked, chipped, deformed or unmatched panels are not acceptable.

## 3.2 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean partition surfaces upon completing installation of operable partitions to remove dust, dirt, adhesives, and other foreign materials according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions in a manner acceptable to the manufacturer and Installer that ensure operable partitions are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

## 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust operable partitions to operate smoothly, easily, and quietly, free from binding, warp, excessive deflection, distortion, nonalignment, misplacement, disruption, or malfunction, throughout entire operational range. Lubricate hardware and other moving parts.

### 3.4 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine flooring, structural support, and opening, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of operable partitions. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.5 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Demonstrate proper operation and maintenance procedures to Owner's representative.
- B. Provide Operation and Maintenance Manual to Owner's representative.

END OF SECTION 102239

## SECTION 102600 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Wall guards- corner and crashguards.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
  - 2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.

- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

- 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.

- 1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of handrail.

- B. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.

- C. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

## 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1 Corner-Guard Covers: Full-size plastic covers of maximum length equal to 2 percent of each type, color, and texture of cover installed, but no fewer than two, 48-inch long units.
  - 2 Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well-ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.
  - 1 Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F during the period plastic materials are stored.
  - 2 Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
  - 3 Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F.
    - a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
    - b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.
  2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency.
- |                          |                |          |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------|
| Wall and Door Protection | Specifications | 102600-2 |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------|

Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

- 1 Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
- 2 Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1

## 2.3 WALL GUARDS

A. Opaque-Plastic Chair Rail: Standard-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on cover installed over continuous retainer.

1. Manufacturers: Available manufactures providing products meeting requirements of this section include, but are not limited to:
  - a. Construction Specialties, Inc.(Basis of Design): Acrovyn SCR80N (crash rail)
  - b. Inpro;
  - c. Koroseal
  - d. Wallprotex
  - e. Others by Substitution
2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.070-inch wall thickness.
  - a. Profile: Rounded bullnose profile, nominal 4 inches high by 3/4 inch deep.
  - b. Color and Texture: (Basis of Design) to be determined from standard solid colors and/or woodgrains.
- 1 Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch-thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
- 2 Bumper: Continuous, resilient bumper cushion(s).
- 3 End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
- 4 Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
- 5 Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.

B. Plastic Corner Guards

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Construction Specialties, Inc. (Basis of Design): SM-20MN
  - b. Inpro;
  - c. Koroseal
  - d. Wallprotex
  - e. Others by Substitution
2. Cover: Snap-on cover with surface mounted guards consisting of continuous retainer.



## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- C. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.
- B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.
- C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

## 2.6 FINISHES

- A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds, and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.
  - 1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.
- B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Adjust top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

### 3.4 CLEANING

- A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean plastic covers and accessories using a standard ammonia-based household cleaning agent.
- B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 102600

## SECTION 102800 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

- 1 Public-use washroom accessories.
- 2 Private-use bathroom accessories.
- 3 Under lavatory guards.

B. Related Requirements:

- 1 Section 088300 "Mirrors" for frameless mirrors.
- 2 Section 093013 "Ceramic Tiling" for ceramic toilet and bath accessories.
- 3 Section 102813.63 "Detention Toilet Accessories" for accessories designed for installation in detention facilities.

#### 1.3 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate accessory locations with other work to prevent interference with clearances required for access by people with disabilities, and for proper installation, adjustment, operation, cleaning, and servicing of accessories.
- B. Deliver inserts and anchoring devices set into concrete or masonry as required to prevent delaying the Work.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1 Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
- 2 Include anchoring and mounting requirements, including requirements for cutouts in other work and substrate preparation.
- 3 Include electrical characteristics.

- B. Product Schedule: Indicating types, quantities, sizes, and installation locations by room of each accessory required.

- 1 Identify locations using room designations indicated.
- 2 Identify accessories using designations indicated.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For accessories to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Mirrors: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace mirrors that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1 Failures include, but are not limited to, visible silver spoilage defects.
- 2 Warranty Period: **15** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

### 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain public-use washroom accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

- A. Single-Roll Toilet Tissue (Roll) Dispenser:

1. Basis of Design: B-66997 Surface-Mounted Toilet Tissue Dispenser with Hood; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Satin finish stainless steel. Hood protects paper. Chrome-plated plastic spindle holds rolls up to 5-1/8" (130mm) diameter (1500 sheets). Unit 63/16"W, 6-3/16"H (155 x 155mm); hood projects 4-3/4" (120mm) from wall with full roll in place.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

**A. Combination Paper Towel Dispenser/Waste Receptacle:**

1. Basis of Design: B-3699 ClassicSeries® Surface-Mounted Paper Towel Dispenser/ Waste Receptacle; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Satin finish stainless steel. Seamless beveled flange. Dispenses 350 C-fold or 475 multifold towels. Knob-latch retains door. Removable waste container has 2-gal. (7.6-L) capacity. Stainless steel skirt for surface-mounting.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

**B. Liquid-Soap Dispenser:**

1. Basis of Design: B-2111 ClassicSeries® Surface-Mounted Soap Dispenser; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Vertical tank is satin-finish stainless steel. Valve dispenses all-purpose hand soaps. Capacity: 40-fl oz (1.2-L). Soap refill window. Concealed wall fastening. Hinged filler-top requires special key to open. Vandal resistant. Unit 4-3/4"W, 8-1/8"H (120 x 205mm); wall to push-button, 3-1/2" (90mm).
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Or Approved Equal.

**C. Grab Bars:**

1. Basis of Design: B-6806.99 1-1/2" Diameter Straight Grab Bar, Peened; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: 1-1/2" (38mm) diameter tubing, peened finish, constructed of 18gauge (1.2mm), type 304 satin-finish stainless steel tubing. Concealed mounting flange 1/8" (3mm) thick, type 304 stainless steel plate, 2"W x 3-1/8"H (50 x 80mm), with screw holes for concealed anchors. Provide cover of 22-gauge (0.8mm), type 304 stainless steel with satin finish, 3-1/4" (85mm) diameter to snap over mounting flange to conceal screws.

1) Lengths: As indicated on Drawings.

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. AJW Architectural Products
- b. American Specialties, Inc.
- c. Bradley Corporation
- d. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- e. Or Approved Equal.

D. Sanitary Napkin Disposal:

1. Basis of Design: B-270 Contura Series® Surface-Mounted Sanitary Napkin Disposal (Women's only); Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.

- a. Description: Satin-finish stainless steel. Cover is drawn, one-piece construction; secured to cabinet with full-length stainless steel piano-hinge. Capacity: 1.0-gal. (3.8-L). Unit 7-1/2"W, 10"H, 3-13/16"D (190 x 255 x 95mm).

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. American Specialties, Inc.
- b. Bradley Corporation
- c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- d. Or Approved Equal.

E. Mirrors:

1. Basis of Design: B-165 2436 Channel-Frame Mirror; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.

- a. Description: 24"W x 36"H (61 x 91cm). One-piece, 1/2" x 1/2" x 3/8" (13 x 13 x 9.5mm) channel-frame. Type 430 stainless steel with bright-polished finish. Mitered corners. Frame screw permits easy replacement of glass. No. 1 quality, 1/4" (6mm) glass mirror; warranted against silver spoilage for 15 years. Galvanized steel back. Secured to concealed wall hanger with theft-resistant mounting.

2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. AJW Architectural Products
- b. American Specialties, Inc.
- c. Bradley Corporation
- d. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
- e. Or Approved Equal.

## F. Coat Hook:

1. Basis of Design: B-212 Clothes Hook with bumper; Bobrick Washroom Equipment Company.
  - a. Description: Solid aluminum casting, matte finish. Rubber bumper protects wall or partition surfaces.
2. Alternative Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering equivalent products which may be incorporated in the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. American Specialties, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation
  - c. Tubular Specialties Manufacturing, Inc.
  - d. Or Approved Equal.

## 2.3 UNDERLAVATORY GUARDS

## A. Underlavatory Guard

- 1 Description: Insulating pipe covering for supply and drain piping assemblies that prevents direct contact with and burns from piping; allow service access without removing coverings.
- 2 Material and Finish: Antimicrobial, molded plastic, white.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

- A. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304, 0.031-inch (0.8-mm) minimum nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Designation CS (cold rolled, commercial steel), 0.036inch (0.9-mm) minimum nominal thickness.
- C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with G60 (Z180) hot-dip zinc coating.
- D. Galvanized-Steel Mounting Devices: ASTM A 153/A 153M, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication.
- E. Fasteners: Screws, bolts, and other devices of same material as accessory unit and tamper-andtheft resistant where exposed, and of galvanized steel where concealed.
- F. Chrome Plating: ASTM B 456, Service Condition Number SC 2 (moderate service).
- G. Mirrors: ASTM C 1503, Mirror Glazing Quality, clear-glass mirrors, nominal 6.0 mm thick.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate units with tight seams and joints, and exposed edges rolled. Hang doors and access panels with full-length, continuous hinges. Equip units for concealed anchorage and with corrosion-resistant backing plates.
- B. Keys: Provide universal keys for internal access to accessories for servicing and resupplying. Provide minimum of [six] <Insert number> keys to Owner's representative.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories according to manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to withstand a downward load of at least 250 lbf, when tested according to ASTM F 446.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Adjust accessories for unencumbered, smooth operation. Replace damaged or defective items.
- B. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- C. Clean and polish exposed surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 102800



## SECTION 104413 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

- a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 104416 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- 1 Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semi-recessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
- 2 Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

- D. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semi-recessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

## 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-1

- A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.
- B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.
- C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.
  - 1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.
- D. Recessed Cabinet:
  - 1. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.
- E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.
- F. Door Material: Steel sheet.
- G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.
- H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).
- I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.
  - 1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.
  - 2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.
- J. Accessories:
  - 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
  - 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
  - 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.

4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

- a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
- b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.

3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

## 2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-2

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

D. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

F. Door Material: Steel sheet.

G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.

2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Accessories:

- 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
- 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
- 4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

#### K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

- a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
- b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
- c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.

- a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.

3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

#### 2.4 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET FEC-3

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

1. Shelf: Same metal and finish as cabinet.

D. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed. And mounted directly on wall with no trim.

E. Cabinet Trim Material: Steel sheet.

F. Door Material: Steel sheet.

G. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

H. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (bronze tint).

I. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

- 1 Provide projecting lever handle with cam-action latch.

- 2 Provide manufacturer's standard hinge, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

J. Accessories:

- 1 Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
- 2 Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
- 3 Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
- 4 Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated.

- a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER"

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door. 2) Application Process: Silk-screened or Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters. 3) Lettering Color: White. 4) Orientation: Horizontal.

K. Materials:

1. Cold-Rolled Steel: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
  - a. Finish: Baked enamel, TGIC polyester powder coat, HAA polyester powder coat, epoxy powder coat, or polyester/epoxy hybrid powder coat, complying with AAMA 2603.
  - b. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
  - c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
  - a. Finish: No. 4 directional satin finish,.
3. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C 1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 2 tinted, heat absorbing, and light reducing), bronze tint.

## 2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

- 1 Weld joints and grind smooth.
- 2 Miter corners and grind smooth.
- 3 Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
- 4 Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
- 5 Install door locks at factory.

- B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

- 1 Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
- 2 Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.

- C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.
- D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at heights acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. Fire-Protection Cabinets: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.

- B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

- 1 Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semirecessed fire-protection cabinets.

- 2 Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.

- 3 Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

- C. Identification:

- 1. Apply vinyl lettering at locations indicated.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
- B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.
- C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.
- D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.
- E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 104413

## SECTION 104416 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 104413 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.
- B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

### 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

- a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10.
    - b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.

- 2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."
- B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

### 2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.
  - 1 Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
  - 2 Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
  - 3 Handles and Levers: Stainless steel.
  - 4 Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.
- B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container FE-1: 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.
- C. Clean-Agent Type (Halotron I) in Aluminum Container FE-2: UL-rated 5-B:C, 4.75-lb nominal capacity, with HFC Blend B agent and inert material in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

### 2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS - MB-1

- A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or black baked-enamel finish.
  - 1. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.
  - 1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.
  - 1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Mounting Brackets: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.

B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

END OF SECTION 104416

## SECTION 210517

### SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

##### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.

##### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

##### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

##### 2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 2. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 4. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

#### A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 210518  
ESCUTCHEONS FOR FIRE SUPPRESSION PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

#### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 210553  
IDENTIFICATION FOR FIRE-SUPPRESSION PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Valve tags.
  - 5. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled and the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve Schedules: Valve numbering scheme.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance Data: For each piping system to be included in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

- A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  2. Letter Color: Black.
  3. Background Color: White.
  4. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
  5. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  6. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
  7. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.
- C. Equipment-Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

### 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretension Pipe Labels: Pre-coiled, semi-rigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe-Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings; pipe size; and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping-system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.
- E. Pipe-Label Colors:
  - 1. Background Color: Red.
  - 2. Letter Color: White.

### 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard or metal.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping-system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: aluminum, 0.032 inch thick, with predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
  - 3. Valve-Tag Color: Red.
  - 4. Letter Color: White.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as "DANGER," "CAUTION," or "DO NOT OPERATE."
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.
- C. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- D. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.
- E. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- F. Pipe-Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection excluding short takeoffs. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.

7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

### 3.3 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems. List tagged valves in a valve-tag schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and with captions similar to those indicated in “Valve-Tag Size and Shape” Subparagraph below:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: 1-1/2 inches, round.

### 3.4 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTIONS 211313  
WET-PIPE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
  - 2. Fire-protection valves.
  - 3. Fire-department connections.
  - 4. Sprinklers.
  - 5. Alarm devices.
  - 6. Pressure gages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175 psig maximum.

1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

- A. Wet-Pipe Sprinkler System: Automatic sprinklers are attached to piping containing water and that is connected to water supply through alarm valve. Water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened. Sprinklers open when heat melts fusible link or destroys frangible device. Hose connections are included if indicated.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: Listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.
- B. Delegated Design: Design sprinkler system(s), including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- C. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Margin of Safety for Available Water Flow and Pressure: 10 percent, including losses through water-service piping, valves, and backflow preventers.
2. Sprinkler Occupancy Hazard Classifications:
  - a. Building Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - b. Electrical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - c. General Storage Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - d. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
  - e. Office and Public Areas: Light Hazard.
  - f. Classrooms: Light Hazard.
  - g. Restaurant Service Areas: Ordinary Hazard, Group 1.
3. Minimum Density for Automatic-Sprinkler Piping Design:
  - a. Light-Hazard Occupancy: 0.10 gpm over 1500-sq. ft. area.
  - b. Ordinary-Hazard, Group 1 Occupancy: 0.15 gpm over 1500-sq. ft.
4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
  - a. Office Spaces: 225 sq. ft.
  - b. Storage Areas: 130 sq. ft.
  - c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
  - d. Electrical Equipment Rooms: 130 sq. ft.
  - e. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13 recommendations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Total Combined Hose-Stream Demand Requirement: According to NFPA 13 unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Light-Hazard Occupancies: 100 gpm for 30 minutes.
  - b. Ordinary-Hazard Occupancies: 250 gpm for 60 to 90 minutes.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: For wet-pipe sprinkler systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Coordination Drawings: Sprinkler systems, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Domestic water piping.
  2. HVAC system.

3. Items penetrating finished ceiling include the following:

- a. Lighting fixtures.
- b. Air outlets and inlets.

- E. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and professional engineer.
- F. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.
- G. Welding certificates.
- H. Fire-hydrant flow test report.
- I. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."
- J. Field quality-control reports.
- K. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications:
  - 1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems and providing professional engineering services needed to assume engineering responsibility. Base calculations on results of fire-hydrant flow test.
    - a. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. NFPA Standards: Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with the following:
  - 1. NFPA 13, "Installation of Sprinkler Systems."
  - 2. NFPA 24, "Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances."



## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

## 1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench. Include separate cabinet with sprinklers and wrench for each type of sprinkler used on Project.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, and fitting materials, and for joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Standard Weight, Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method.
- B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or ASTM A 795/A 795M, Schedule 10 in NPS 5 and smaller; and NFPA 13-specified wall thickness in NPS 6 to NPS 10, plain end.
- C. Galvanized- and Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.
- D. Galvanized and Uncoated, Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.
- E. Galvanized and Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.
- F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.
- G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.
- H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.
- I. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - c. National Fittings, Inc.
  - d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
  3. Galvanized and Uncoated, Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47/A 47M, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting; with dimensions matching steel pipe.
  4. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213, rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

## 2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free.
  1. Class 125, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 150, Bronze Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
  2. Class 250, Cast-Iron Flanges and Class 300, Steel Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 LISTED FIRE-PROTECTION VALVES

- A. General Requirements:
  1. Valves shall be UL listed or FM approved.
  2. Minimum Pressure Rating for Standard-Pressure Piping: 175 psig.
- B. Ball Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Anvil International, Inc.
    - b. Victaulic Company.
  2. Standard: UL 1091 except with ball instead of disc.
  3. Valves NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Bronze body with threaded ends.
  4. Valves NPS 2 and NPS 2-1/2: Bronze body with threaded ends or ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
  5. Valves NPS 3 Ductile-iron body with grooved ends.
- C. Bronze Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fivalco Inc.
  - b. Global Safety Products, Inc.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Bronze.
5. End Connections: Threaded.

D. Iron Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Global Safety Products, Inc.
  - c. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - g. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.
4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
5. End Connections: Grooved.

E. Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - d. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  - e. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - f. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - h. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Potter Roemer.
  - k. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - l. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - m. Victaulic Company.
  - n. Viking Corporation.
  - o. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 312.

3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Type: Swing check.
5. Body Material: Cast iron.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

F. Iron OS&Y Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - h. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 262.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

G. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - f. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 1091.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:
  - a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Bronze.
  - c. End Connections: Threaded.
5. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
  - a. Valve Type: Butterfly.
  - b. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
  - c. End Connections: Flanged, grooved, or wafer.
6. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, single-circuit, supervisory switch indicating device.

## H. NRS Gate Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
2. Standard: UL 262.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig (1725 minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast iron with indicator post flange.
5. Stem: Nonrising.
6. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

## I. Indicator Posts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Cast Iron Pipe Company; Waterous Company Subsidiary.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - f. Mueller Co.; Water Products Division.
  - g. NIBCO INC.
  - h. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
2. Standard: UL 789.
3. Type: Horizontal for wall mounting.
4. Body Material: Cast iron with extension rod and locking device.
5. Operation: Hand wheel.

## 2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

## A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.

## B. Angle Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- b. United Brass Works, Inc.

C. Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Anvil International, Inc.
- b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
- c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
- d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
- e. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
- f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- g. NIBCO INC.
- h. Potter Roemer.
- i. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
- j. Victaulic Company.
- k. Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

## 2.6 SPECIALTY VALVES

A. General Requirements:

1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
2. Pressure Rating:
  - a. Standard-Pressure Piping Specialty Valves: 175 psig minimum.
3. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron.
4. Size: Same as connected piping.
5. End Connections: Flanged or grooved.

B. Alarm Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFAC Inc.
  - b. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  - c. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - e. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  - f. Victaulic Company.
  - g. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 193.

3. Design: For horizontal or vertical installation.
4. Include trim sets for bypass, drain, electrical sprinkler alarm switch, pressure gages, retarding chamber, and fill-line attachment with strainer.
5. Drip Cup Assembly: Pipe drain without valves and separate from main drain piping.

C. Automatic (Ball Drip) Drain Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFAC Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
2. Standard: UL 1726.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Type: Automatic draining, ball check.
5. Size: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).
6. End Connections: Threaded.

2.7 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTIONS

A. Exposed-Type, Fire-Department Connection:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFAC Inc.
  - b. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
  - c. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  - d. Fire Protection Products, Inc.
  - e. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
  - f. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
  - g. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - h. Wilson & Cousins Inc.
2. Standard: UL 405.
3. Type: Exposed, projecting, for wall mounting.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Body Material: Corrosion-resistant metal.
6. Inlets: Brass with threads according to NFPA 1963 and matching local fire-department sizes and threads. Include extension pipe nipples, brass lugged swivel connections, and check devices or clappers.
7. Caps: Brass, lugged type, with gasket and chain.
8. Escutcheon Plate: Round, brass, wall type.
9. Outlet: Back, with pipe threads.
10. Number of Inlets: Two.
11. Escutcheon Plate Marking: Similar to "AUTO SPKR."
12. Finish: Rough brass or bronze.
13. Outlet Size: NPS 4.

## 2.8 SPRINKLER SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Branch Outlet Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. National Fittings, Inc.
  - c. Shurjoint Piping Products.
  - d. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL 213.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
5. Type: Mechanical-T and -cross fittings.
6. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
7. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
8. Branch Outlets: Grooved, plain-end pipe, or threaded.

### B. Flow Detection and Test Assemblies:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
  - b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with orifice, sight glass, and integral test valve.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

### C. Branch Line Testers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elkhart Brass Mfg. Company, Inc.
  - b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
  - c. Potter Roemer.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig.



4. Body Material: Brass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet: Threaded.
7. Drain Outlet: Threaded and capped.
8. Branch Outlet: Threaded, for sprinkler.

D. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AGF Manufacturing Inc.
  - b. Triple R Specialty.
  - c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - d. Victaulic Company.
  - e. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
3. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

E. Adjustable Drop Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. CECA, LLC.
  - b. Corcoran Piping System Co.
  - c. Merit Manufacturing; a division of Anvil International, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Pressure Rating: 250 psig minimum.
4. Body Material: Steel pipe with EPDM-rubber O-ring seals.
5. Size: Same as connected piping.
6. Length: Adjustable.
7. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

F. Flexible, Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fivalco Inc.
  - b. FlexHead Industries, Inc.
  - c. Gateway Tubing, Inc.
2. Standard: UL 1474.

3. Type: Flexible hose for connection to sprinkler, and with bracket for connection to ceiling grid.
4. Pressure Rating: 175 psig minimum.
5. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

## 2.9 SPRINKLERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  1. AFAC Inc.
  2. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  3. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  4. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  5. Venus Fire Protection Ltd.
  6. Victaulic Company.
  7. Viking Corporation.
- B. General Requirements:
  1. Standard: UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" listing or "Approval Guide," published by FM Global, listing.
  2. Pressure Rating for Automatic Sprinklers: 175 psig minimum.
- C. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
  1. Early-Suppression, Fast-Response Applications: UL 1767.
  2. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199.
  3. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.
- D. Sprinkler Finishes:
  1. Chrome plated.
  2. Bronze.
  3. Painted.
- E. Special Coatings:
  1. Wax.
  2. Lead.
  3. Corrosion-resistant paint.
- F. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.
  1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.
  2. Sidewall Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, one piece, flat.

## G. Sprinkler Guards:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 199.
3. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

## 2.10 ALARM DEVICES

## A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

## B. Water-Motor-Operated Alarm:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
  - b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
  - d. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 753.
3. Type: Mechanically operated, with Pelton wheel.
4. Alarm Gong: Cast aluminum with red-enamel factory finish.
5. Size: 10-inch diameter.
6. Components: Shaft length, bearings, and sleeve to suit wall construction.
7. Inlet: NPS 3/4.
8. Outlet: NPS 1 drain connection.

## C. Electrically Operated Alarm Bell:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
  - b. Notifier; a Honeywell company.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
2. Standard: UL 464.
3. Type: Vibrating, metal alarm bell.
4. Size: 6-inch minimum- diameter.
5. Finish: Red-enamel factory finish, suitable for outdoor use.

## D. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ADT Security Services, Inc.
  - b. McDonnell & Miller; ITT Industries.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  - e. Viking Corporation.
  - f. Watts Industries (Canada) Inc.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.
5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Pressure Rating: 250 psig.
7. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

E. Pressure Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AFAC Inc.
  - b. Barksdale, Inc.
  - c. Detroit Switch, Inc.
  - d. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - e. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
  - f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
  - g. United Electric Controls Co.
  - h. Viking Corporation.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised water-flow switch with retard feature.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design Operation: Rising pressure signals water flow.

F. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.; a Honeywell company.
  - b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - c. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - d. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.

4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.

G. Indicator-Post Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Potter Electric Signal Company.
  - b. System Sensor; a Honeywell company.
2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled indicator-post valve is in other than fully open position.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. AMETEK; U.S. Gauge Division.
  2. Ashcroft, Inc.
  3. Brecco Corporation.
  4. WIKA Instrument Corporation.
- B. Standard: UL 393.
- C. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.
- D. Pressure Gage Range: 0 to 250 psig minimum.
- E. Water System Piping Gage: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Perform fire-hydrant flow test according to NFPA 13 and NFPA 291. Use results for system design calculations required in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- B. Report test results promptly and in writing.

3.2 SERVICE-ENTRANCE PIPING

- A. Connect sprinkler piping to water-service piping for service entrance to building. Comply with requirements for exterior piping.

- B. Install shutoff valve, double detector check valve, pressure gage, drain, and other accessories indicated at connection to water-service piping.

### 3.3 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated, as far as practical.
  - 1. Deviations from approved working plans for piping require written approval from authorities having jurisdiction. File written approval with Architect before deviating from approved working plans.
- B. Piping Standard: Comply with requirements for installation of sprinkler piping in NFPA 13.
- C. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.
- D. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- E. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- F. Install "Inspector's Test Connections" in sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13.
- G. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage.
- H. Install sprinkler control valves, test assemblies, and drain risers adjacent to standpipes when sprinkler piping is connected to standpipes.
- I. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection, to drain piping between fire-department connection and check valve. Install drain piping to and spill over floor drain or to outside building.
- J. Install alarm devices in piping systems.
- K. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.
- L. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main, at each sprinkler test connection, and at top of each standpipe. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal and install where they will not be subject to freezing.
- M. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.
- N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."

- O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 210517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Fire-Suppression Piping."
- P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 210518 "Escutcheons for Fire-Suppression Piping."

### 3.4 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.
- C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.
- D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- E. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.
- G. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- H. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.
- I. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.
- J. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.5 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

- A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.
- C. Install check valve in each water-supply connection. Install backflow preventers instead of check valves in potable-water-supply sources.
- D. Specialty Valves:
  - 1. General Requirements: Install in vertical position for proper direction of flow, in main supply to system.
  - 2. Alarm Valves: Include bypass check valve and retarding chamber drain-line connection.

### 3.6 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

- A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings within six (6) inches of the ceiling grid.
- B. Install dry-type sprinklers with water supply from heated space. Do not install pendent or sidewall, wet-type sprinklers in areas subject to freezing.
- C. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

### 3.7 FIRE-DEPARTMENT CONNECTION INSTALLATION

- A. Install wall-type, fire-department connections.
  - 1. Install two protective pipe bollards on sides of each fire-department connection. Comply with requirements for bollards in Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications."
- B. Install automatic (ball drip) drain valve at each check valve for fire-department connection.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.
- B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.



## B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.
6. Verify that equipment hose threads are same as local fire-department equipment.

C. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.
- B. Clean pipe to prevent microbially influenced corrosion (MIC).
- C. Remove and replace sprinklers with paint other than factory finish.

## 3.11 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Piping between Fire-Department Connections and Check Valves: Galvanized, standard-weight steel pipe with grooved ends; grooved-end fittings; grooved-end-pipe couplings; and grooved joints.
- B. Sprinkler specialty fittings may be used, downstream of control valves, instead of specified fittings.
- C. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  3. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- D. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
  1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

3. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
- E. Standard-pressure, wet-pipe sprinkler system, NPS 5 and larger, shall be one of the following:
1. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with threaded ends; uncoated, gray-iron threaded fittings; and threaded joints.
  2. Standard-weight, black-steel pipe with cut- or roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.
  3. Schedule 10 black-steel pipe with roll-grooved ends; uncoated, grooved-end fittings for steel piping; grooved-end-pipe couplings for steel piping; and grooved joints.

### 3.12 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

- A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:
1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
  2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.
  3. Finished Spaces in Storage Rooms and Janitor Closets: White, pendent sprinklers.
  4. Wall Mounting: Sidewall sprinklers.
  5. Spaces Subject to Freezing: Upright, pendent, dry sprinklers; and sidewall, dry sprinklers as indicated.
  6. Special Applications: Extended-coverage, flow-control, and quick-response sprinklers where indicated.
- B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.
1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
  2. Upright, Pendent and Sidewall Sprinklers: Chrome plated in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view; wax coated where exposed to acids, chemicals, or other corrosive fumes.
  3. Exposed Sprinklers in Gymnasium, Locker/Shower Rooms, Mechanical Rooms: Provide wire guard on each head.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220517  
SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Sleeves.
  - 2. Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - 3. Sleeve-seal systems.
  - 4. Grout.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.
- C. Galvanized-Steel-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, with plain ends.

2.2 STACK-SLEEVE FITTINGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.
2. Zurn Specification Drainage Operation; Zurn Plumbing Products Group.

B. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring, bolts, and nuts for membrane flashing.

1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with setscrews.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
2. CALPICO, Inc.
3. Metraflex Company (The).
4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
5. Proco Products, Inc.

B. Description: Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.

1. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
2. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
3. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.4 GROUT

A. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

B. Characteristics: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior applications.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

- C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
    - a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.
- D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
  - 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
  - 2. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements for sealants specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."
- E. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 STACK-SLEEVE-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install stack-sleeve fittings in new slabs as slabs are constructed.
  - 1. Secure flashing between clamping flanges for pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Comply with requirements for flashing specified in Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
  - 2. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to 2 inches above finished floor level.
  - 3. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
  - 4. Using grout, seal the space around outside of stack-sleeve fittings.
- B. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Comply with requirements for firestopping specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.
- B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

### 3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

#### A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:

1. Exterior Concrete Walls above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves.
2. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
3. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Cast-iron wall sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
    - 1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
4. Concrete Slabs above Grade:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Stack-sleeve fittings.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and Larger Stack-sleeve fittings.
5. Interior Partitions:
  - a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel-pipe sleeves.
  - b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Galvanized-steel-sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220518  
ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Escutcheons.
  - 2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.
- D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.
- E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

## 2.2 FLOOR PLATES

- A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.
- B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.
- B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
    - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    - g. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge.
- C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.
- D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
  - 1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 220519  
METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bimetallic-actuated thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.
5. Test plugs.
6. Test-plug kits.
7. Sight flow indicators.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems"
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters inside the building.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage, from manufacturer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 BIMETALLIC-ACTUATED THERMOMETERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Ashcroft Inc.
  - 2. Terice, H. O. Co.
  - 3. Weksler
  - 4. MilJOCO
- B. Standard: ASME B40.200.
- C. Case: Liquid-filled type; stainless steel with 5-inch nominal diameter.
- D. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings and scales in deg F (deg C).
- E. Connector Type(s): Union joint, adjustable angle, with unified-inch screw threads.
- F. Connector Size: 1/2 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
- G. Stem: 0.25 or 0.375 inch in diameter; stainless steel.
- H. Window: Plain glass.
- I. Ring: Stainless steel.
- J. Element: Bimetal coil.
- K. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
- L. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range.

## 2.2 THERMOWELLS

- A. Thermowells:
  - 1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
  - 2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
  - 3. Material for Use with Copper Tubing: CNR or CUNI.
  - 4. Material for Use with Steel Piping: CRES.
  - 5. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
  - 6. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
  - 7. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
  - 8. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 9. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
  - 10. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.

11. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

## 2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ashcroft Inc.
  - b. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - c. Weksler
2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled types; drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass or plastic.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

## 2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

- A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and [piston] [porous-metal]-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.
- B. Valves: Brass ball, with NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

## 2.5 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. Miljoco Corporation.
  3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  4. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  5. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

- B. Description: Test-station fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
- C. Body: Brass or stainless steel with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap. Include extended stem on units to be installed in insulated piping.
- D. Thread Size: NPS 1/4 or NPS 1/2, ASME B1.20.1 pipe thread.
- E. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200 deg F.
- F. Core Inserts: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic and EPDM self-sealing rubber.

## 2.6 TEST-PLUG KITS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Flow Design, Inc.
  - 2. Miljoco Corporation.
  - 3. Trerice, H. O. Co.
  - 4. Watts Regulator Co.; a div. of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - 5. Weiss Instruments, Inc.
- B. Furnish one test-plug kit containing one thermometer, one pressure gage and adapter, and carrying case. Thermometer sensing elements, pressure gage, and adapter probes shall be of diameter to fit test plugs and of length to project into piping.
- C. High-Range Thermometer: Small, bimetallic insertion type with 1- to 2-inch- diameter dial and tapered-end sensing element. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 220 deg F.
- D. Pressure Gage: Small, Bourdon-tube insertion type with 2- to 3-inch- diameter dial and probe. Dial range shall be at least 0 to 200 psig.
- E. Carrying Case: Metal or plastic, with formed instrument padding.

## 2.7 SIGHT FLOW INDICATORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Dwyer Instruments, Inc.
  - 2. Emerson Process Management; Brooks Instrument.
  - 3. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc. - USA; KOBOLD Messring GmbH.
  - 4. OPW Engineered Systems; a Dover company.
  - 5. Penberthy; A Brand of Tyco Valves & Controls - Prophetstown.
- B. Description: Piping inline-installation device for visual verification of flow.

- C. Construction: Bronze or stainless-steel body, with sight glass and ball, flapper, or paddle wheel indicator, and threaded or flanged ends.
- D. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
- E. Minimum Temperature Rating: 200 deg F.
- F. End Connections for NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded.
- G. End Connections for NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.
- B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.
- C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.
- D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.
- E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.
- G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- H. Install test plugs in piping tees.
- I. Install thermometers in the following locations:
  - 1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
- J. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
  - 1. Building water service entrance into building.
  - 2. Inlet and outlet of each pressure-reducing valve.
  - 3. Suction and discharge of each domestic water pump.

#### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

### 3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

- A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, bimetallic-actuated type.
  - 2. Direct-mounted, metal-case, vapor-actuated type.
  - 3. Industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.
- B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

### 3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Domestic Cold-Water Piping: 0 to 100 deg F.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 0 to 240 deg F.

### 3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

- A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- B. Pressure gages at inlet and outlet of each water pressure-reducing valve shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.
- C. Pressure gages at suction and discharge of each domestic water pump shall be the following:
  - 1. Liquid-filled, direct-mounted, metal case.

### 3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

- A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 100 psi.
- B. Scale Range for Domestic Water Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220523  
GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bronze angle valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.
3. Iron ball valves.
4. Iron, single-flange butterfly valves.
5. Iron, grooved-end butterfly valves.
6. Bronze lift check valves.
7. Bronze swing check valves.
8. Iron swing check valves.
9. Iron swing check valves with closure control.
10. Iron, grooved-end swing check valves.
11. Bronze globe valves.
12. Iron globe valves.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for valves applicable only to this piping.
3. Section 221319 "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.
4. Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for valves applicable only to this piping.
5. Section 226313 "Natural Gas Piping Systems" for valves applicable only to this piping.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Nonrising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. RS: Rising stem.
- G. SWP: Steam working pressure.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.
- B. ASME Compliance:
  - 1. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
  - 2. ASME B31.1 for power piping valves.
  - 3. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
- C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  - 2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  - 3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  - 4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.
  - 5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  - 6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
  - 1. Maintain valve end protection.
  - 2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.



## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

- A. Refer to valve schedule articles for applications of valves.
- B. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- C. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Gear Actuator: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  - 2. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 3. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- E. Valves in Insulated Piping: With 2-inch stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Ball Valves: With extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 2. Butterfly Valves: With extended neck.
- F. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Flanged: With flanges according to ASME B16.1 for iron valves.
  - 2. Grooved: With grooves according to AWWA C606.
  - 3. Solder Joint: With sockets according to ASME B16.18.
  - 4. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- G. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### 2.2 BRONZE ANGLE VALVES

- A. Class 125, Bronze Angle Valves with Bronze Disc:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Hammond Valve.
    - b. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - 2. Description:
    - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
    - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Threaded.

- e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
- f. Packing: Asbestos free.
- g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

## 2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

### A. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
  - b. SWP Rating: 150 psig.
  - c. CWP Rating: 600 psig.
  - d. Body Design: Two piece.
  - e. Body Material: Bronze.
  - f. Ends: Threaded.
  - g. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
  - h. Stem: Bronze.
  - i. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - j. Port: Full.

## 2.4 IRON BALL VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Ball Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - c. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-72.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Split body.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron.

- e. Ends: Flanged.
- f. Seats: PTFE or TFE.
- g. Stem: Stainless steel.
- h. Ball: Stainless steel.
- i. Port: Full.

## 2.5 IRON, SINGLE-FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. 200 CWP, Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves with EPDM Seat and Stainless-Steel Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. ABZ Valve and Controls; a division of ABZ Manufacturing, Inc.
  - b. American Valve, Inc.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - d. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corporation.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - g. DeZurik Water Controls.
  - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - i. Mueller Steam Specialty; a division of SPX Corporation.
  - j. NIBCO INC.
  - k. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Lug type; suitable for bidirectional dead-end service at rated pressure without use of downstream flange.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, cast iron or ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - e. Seat: EPDM.
  - f. Stem: One- or two-piece stainless steel.
  - g. Disc: Stainless steel.

## 2.6 IRON, GROOVED-END BUTTERFLY VALVES

### A. 175 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:

- a. Standard: MSS SP-67, Type I.
- b. CWP Rating: 175 psig.
- c. Body Material: Coated, ductile iron.
- d. Stem: Two-piece stainless steel.
- e. Disc: Coated, ductile iron.
- f. Seal: EPDM.

## 2.7 BRONZE LIFT CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Lift Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Vertical flow.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM B 61 or ASTM B 62, bronze.
  - e. Ends: Threaded.
  - f. Disc: Bronze.

## 2.8 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Swing Check Valves with Bronze Disc:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - f. NIBCO INC.
  - g. Powell Valves.
  - h. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.

- d. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze.
- e. Ends: Threaded.
- f. Disc: Bronze.

## 2.9 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. NIBCO INC.
  - f. Powell Valves.
  - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.

## 2.10 IRON SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL

### A. Class 125, Iron Swing Check Valves with Lever- and Spring-Closure Control:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. NIBCO INC.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-71, Type I.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Design: Clear or full waterway.
  - d. Body Material: ASTM A 126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  - e. Ends: Flanged.
  - f. Trim: Bronze.
  - g. Gasket: Asbestos free.
  - h. Closure Control: Factory-installed, exterior lever and spring.

## 2.11 IRON, GROOVED-END SWING CHECK VALVES

### A. 300 CWP, Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Anvil International, Inc.
  - b. Tyco Fire Products LP; Grinnell Mechanical Products.
  - c. Victaulic Company.
2. Description:
  - a. CWP Rating: 300 psig.
  - b. Body Material: ASTM A 536, ductile iron.
  - c. Seal: EPDM.
  - d. Disc: Spring-operated, ductile iron or stainless steel.

## 2.12 BRONZE GLOBE VALVES

### A. Class 125, Bronze Globe Valves with Bronze Disc:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Division.
  - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - d. NIBCO INC.
  - e. Powell Valves.
  - f. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
2. Description:
  - a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 1.
  - b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
  - c. Body Material: ASTM B 62, bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
  - d. Ends: Threaded or solder joint.
  - e. Stem and Disc: Bronze.
  - f. Packing: Asbestos free.
  - g. Handwheel: Malleable iron.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.
- E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

#### 3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

#### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

#### 3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
  - 1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly valves.
  - 2. Butterfly Valve Dead-End Service: Single-flange (lug) type.
  - 3. Throttling Service: Globe or ball valves.
  - 4. Pump-Discharge Check Valves:

- a. NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with bronze disc.
  - b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Domestic Water: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or with spring or iron, center-guided, resilient-seat check valves.
  - c. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger for Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage: Iron swing check valves with lever and weight or spring.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  3. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
  5. For Grooved-End Copper Tubing and Steel Piping: Valve ends may be grooved.

### 3.5 DOMESTIC, HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Pipe NPS 2 and Smaller:
1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
  2. Bronze Angle Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
  3. Ball Valves: Two piece, full port, bronze with bronze trim.
  4. Bronze Swing Check Valves: Class 125, bronze disc.
- B. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
1. Iron Ball Valves: Class 150.
  2. Iron, Single-Flange Butterfly Valves: 200 CWP, EPDM seat, stainless-steel disc.
  3. Iron, Grooved-End Butterfly Valves: 175 CWP.
  4. Iron Swing Check Valves: Class 125, metal seats.
  5. Iron Swing Check Valves with Closure Control: Class 125, lever and spring.
  6. Iron, Grooved-End Swing Check Valves: 300 CWP.

END OF SECTION



## SECTION 220529

## HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Pipe stands.
7. Pipe positioning systems.
8. Equipment supports.

## B. Related Sections:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for structural-steel shapes and plates for trapeze hangers for pipe and equipment supports.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society of The Valve and Fittings Industry Inc.

## 1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
  1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.

2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
  1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
  2. Metal framing systems.
  3. Pipe stands.
  4. Equipment supports.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Welding certificates.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pre-galvanized or hot dipped.
  3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
  4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
  5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
- B. Copper Pipe Hangers:
  1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-coated-steel, factory-fabricated components.
  2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-coated steel.

## 2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

- A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

## 2.3 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
  - c. Flex-Strut Inc.
  - d. GS Metals Corp.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - f. Unistrut Corporation; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: MFMA-4.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted steel channel with inturred lips.
5. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped steel nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
6. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.
7. Metallic Coating: Electroplated zinc or Hot-dipped galvanized.

## 2.4 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
  2. Clement Support Services.
  3. ERICO International Corporation.
  4. National Pipe Hanger Corporation.
  5. PHS Industries, Inc.
  6. Pipe Shields, Inc.; a subsidiary of Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  7. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
  8. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  9. Value Engineered Products, Inc.
- B. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade I polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

- C. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig, ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.
- D. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.
- E. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
- F. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

## 2.5 FASTENER SYSTEMS

- A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

## 2.6 PIPE STANDS

- A. General Requirements for Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated assemblies made of manufactured corrosion-resistant components to support roof-mounted piping.
- B. Compact Pipe Stand: One-piece plastic unit with integral-rod roller, pipe clamps, or V-shaped cradle to support pipe, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- C. Low-Type, Single-Pipe Stand: One-piece stainless-steel base unit with plastic roller, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
- D. High-Type, Single-Pipe Stand:
  - 1. Description: Assembly of base, vertical and horizontal members, and pipe support, for roof installation without membrane penetration.
  - 2. Base: Stainless steel.
  - 3. Vertical Members: Two or more cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel, continuous-thread rods.
  - 4. Horizontal Member: Cadmium-plated-steel or stainless-steel rod with plastic or stainless-steel, roller-type pipe support.
- E. Curb-Mounting-Type Pipe Stands: Shop- or field-fabricated pipe supports made from structural-steel shapes, continuous-thread rods, and rollers, for mounting on permanent stationary roof curb.

## 2.7 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

- A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

## 2.8 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
  - 1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.
- B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
  - 1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
  - 2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
- C. Metal Framing System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping, and support together on field-assembled metal framing systems.
- D. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.
- E. Fastener System Installation:
  - 1. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Pipe Stand Installation:
  - 1. Pipe Stand Types except Curb-Mounted Type: Assemble components and mount on smooth roof surface. Do not penetrate roof membrane.

2. Curb-Mounted-Type Pipe Stands: Assemble components or fabricate pipe stand and mount on permanent, stationary roof curb. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for curbs.
- G. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture.
- H. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- I. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.
- J. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.
- K. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.
- L. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- M. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- N. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
- O. Insulated Piping:
  1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
    - a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
    - b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
    - c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
  2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.

- a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
- 4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
  - a. NPS ¼ to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 8 to DN 90): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.048 inch (1.22 mm) thick.
  - b. NPS 4 (DN 100): 12 inches (305 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6 (DN 125 and DN 150): 18 inches (457 mm) long and 0.06 inch (1.52 mm) thick.
  - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14 (DN 200 to DN 350): 24 inches (610 mm) long and 0.075 inch (1.91 mm) thick.
- 5. Pipes NPS 8 (DN 200) and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
- 6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.
- C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

### 3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.
- B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches (40 mm).

### 3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

- A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
- D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports, metal trapeze pipe hangers, and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.
- F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.
- G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.
- H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.
- I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
  - 1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS ½ to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
  - 2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F (566 deg C), pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24 (DN 100 to DN 600), requiring up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.



3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  to NPS 36 (DN 20 to DN 900), requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches (100 mm) of insulation.
4. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 24 (DN 15 to DN 600) if little or no insulation is required.
5. Pipe Hangers (MSS Type 5): For suspension of pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 4 (DN 15 to DN 100), to allow off-center closure for hanger installation before pipe erection.
6. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  to NPS 8 (DN 20 to DN 200).
7. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
8. Adjustable Band Hangers (MSS Type 9): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
9. Adjustable, Swivel-Ring Band Hangers (MSS Type 10): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 8 (DN 15 to DN 200).
10. Split Pipe Ring with or without Turnbuckle Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{3}{8}$  to NPS 8 (DN 10 to DN 200).
11. Extension Hinged or Two-Bolt Split Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 12): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS  $\frac{3}{8}$  to NPS 3 (DN 10 to DN 80).
12. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS  $\frac{1}{2}$  to NPS 30 (DN 15 to DN 750).
13. Clips (MSS Type 26): For support of insulated pipes not subject to expansion or contraction.
14. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
15. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36 (DN 100 to DN 900), with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
16. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion-type support for pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36 (DN 65 to DN 900) if vertical adjustment is required, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
17. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30 (DN 25 to DN 750), from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
18. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 24 (DN 65 to DN 600), from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
19. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 (DN 50 to DN 1050) if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
20. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 24 (DN 50 to DN 600) if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
21. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 30 (DN 50 to DN 750) if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.

- J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  to NPS 24 (DN 24 to DN 600).
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  to NPS 24 (DN 20 to DN 600) if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches (150 mm) for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F (49 to 232 deg C) piping installations.
- L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
  8. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
  9. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  10. Linked-Steel Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 29): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads, with link extensions.
  11. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  12. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb (340 kg).
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb (680 kg).
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb (1360 kg).

13. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
  14. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.
  15. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.
- M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
  2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.
- N. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Restraint-Control Devices (MSS Type 47): Where indicated to control piping movement.
  2. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches (32 mm).
  3. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41, roll hanger with springs.
  4. Spring Sway Braces (MSS Type 50): To retard sway, shock, vibration, or thermal expansion in piping systems.
  5. Variable-Spring Hangers (MSS Type 51): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from hanger.
  6. Variable-Spring Base Supports (MSS Type 52): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from base support.
  7. Variable-Spring Trapeze Hangers (MSS Type 53): Preset to indicated load and limit variability factor to 25 percent to allow expansion and contraction of piping system from trapeze support.
  8. Constant Supports: For critical piping stress and if necessary to avoid transfer of stress from one support to another support, critical terminal, or connected equipment. Include auxiliary stops for erection, hydrostatic test, and load-adjustment capability. These supports include the following types:
    - a. Horizontal (MSS Type 54): Mounted horizontally.
    - b. Vertical (MSS Type 55): Mounted vertically.
    - c. Trapeze (MSS Type 56): Two vertical-type supports and one trapeze member.
- O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- P. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.
- Q. Use mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

- R. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220553  
IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Equipment labels.
  - 2. Warning signs and labels.
  - 3. Pipe labels.
  - 4. Stencils.
  - 5. Valve tags.
  - 6. Warning tags.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.
- D. Valve numbering scheme.
- E. Valve Schedules: For each piping system to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with locations of access panels and doors.

- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

#### A. Metal Labels for Equipment:

1. Material and Thickness: Brass, 19-Gauge minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
2. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
3. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
4. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
5. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

#### B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

#### C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

### 2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

- A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
- B. Letter Color: Black.
- C. Background Color: Yellow.
- D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F (71 deg C).
- E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch (64 by 19 mm).
- F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

- G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
- H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.
- I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

## 2.3 PIPE LABELS

- A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.
- C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.
- D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.
  - 1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
  - 2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) high.

## 2.4 STENCILS

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door labels, equipment labels, and similar operational instructions.
  - 1. Stencil Material: Fiberboard.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  - 3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1 unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.5 VALVE TAGS

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch (13-mm) numbers.
  - 1. Tag Material: Brass, 19-Gauge minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
  - 2. Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.
- B. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch (A4) bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve

(room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-tag schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

## 2.6 WARNING TAGS

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags, of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Reinforced grommet and wire or string.
  3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as “DANGER,” “CAUTION,” or “DO NOT OPERATE.”
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

### 3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.
- B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

### 3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

- A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Section 099123 “Interior Painting.”
- B. Stenciled Pipe Label Option: Stenciled labels may be provided instead of manufactured pipe labels, at Installer’s option. Install stenciled pipe labels, complying with ASME A13.1, on each piping system.
  1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.



2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

D. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
  - a. Background Color: Green.
  - b. Letter Color: White.
2. Sanitary Waste and Storm Drainage Piping:
  - a. Background Color: White.
  - b. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.4 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following subparagraphs:
  1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
    - a. Cold Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.
    - b. Hot Water: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm), round.

### 3.5 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 220719  
PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SECTION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Submittals: Product Data.
- B. Quality Assurance: Labeled with maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 according to ASTM E 84.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

- A. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.
- B. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C 534, Type I for tubular materials and Type II for sheet materials.
- C. Mineral-Fiber Blanket Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 553, Type II and ASTM C 1290, Type I.
- D. Mineral-Fiber Board Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 612, Type IA or Type IB.
- E. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation: Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, with factory-applied ASJ.
- F. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB; and having factory-applied jacket. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. (40 kg/cu. m) or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F (55 deg C) is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F (0.042 W/m x K) or less.
- G. Polyolefin Insulation: Unicellular, polyethylene thermal plastic insulation. Comply with ASTM C 534 or ASTM C 1427, Type I, Grade 1 for tubular materials and Type II, Grade 1 for sheet materials.
- H. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-24179A, Type II, Class I.
- I. Mineral-Fiber Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

- J. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.
- K. Factory-Applied Jackets: When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
  - 1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
  - 2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
- L. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.
- M. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements of the Midwest Insulation Contractors Association's "National Commercial & Industrial Insulation Standards" for insulation installation on pipes and equipment.
- B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.
- C. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall, Partition, and Floor Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations. Seal penetrations. Comply with requirements in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."
- D. Flexible Elastomeric Insulation Installation:
  - 1. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
  - 2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows: Install mitered sections of pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
- E. Mineral-Fiber Insulation Installation:
  - 1. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes: Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
  - 2. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches (150 mm) o.c.

3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

F. Polyolefin Insulation Installation:

1. Seal split-tube longitudinal seams and end joints with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.
2. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows: Install mitered sections of polyolefin pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

G. Interior Piping System Applications: Insulate the following piping systems:

1. Domestic hot water.
2. Recirculated domestic hot water.
3. Roof drain bodies and horizontal rainwater leaders of storm water piping.
4. Exposed water supplies and sanitary drains of fixtures for people with disabilities.

H. Do not apply insulation to the following systems, materials, and equipment:

1. Flexible connectors.
2. Sanitary drainage and vent piping.
3. Drainage piping located in crawlspaces unless otherwise indicated.
4. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings, except for plumbing fixtures for people with disabilities.
5. Piping specialties, including air chambers, unions, strainers, check valves, plug valves, and flow regulators.

### 3.2 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:

1. Drainage piping located in crawlspaces.
2. Underground piping.
3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

B. Domestic Cold Water:

1. NPS 1 inch (DN 25mm) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/4 inch (DN 32mm) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

## C. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Hot Water:

1. NPS 1-1/4 inch (DN 32mm) and Smaller: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
2. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Larger: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

## D. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

## E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities:

1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following:
  - a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.
  - c. Polyolefin: 1 inch (25 mm) thick.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221116  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Under-building-slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, and fittings inside buildings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For transition fittings and dielectric fittings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. System purging and disinfecting activities report.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.
- B. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 14 and NSF 61.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B) water tube, drawn temper.

- B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K (ASTM B 88M, Type A) water tube, annealed temper.
- C. Wrought-Copper, Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
- D. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
- E. Copper Unions:
  - 1. MSS SP-123.
  - 2. Cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body.
  - 3. Ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces.
  - 4. Solder-joint or threaded ends.
- F. Copper Pressure-Seal-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkhart Products Corporation.
    - b. NIBCO Inc.
    - c. Viega.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
  - 3. Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting with EPDM-rubber, O-ring seal in each end.
- G. Copper-Tube, Extruded-Tee Connections:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. T-Drill Industries Inc.
  - 2. Description: Tee formed in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014.

## 2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials:
  - 1. AWWA C110/A21.10, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick or ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Full-face or ring type unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys.
- D. Flux: ASTM B 813, water flushable.

## 2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Same size as pipes to be joined.
2. Pressure rating at least equal to pipes to be joined.
3. End connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

### B. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.

### C. Sleeve-Type Transition Coupling: AWWA C219.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cascade Waterworks Manufacturing.
  - b. Dresser, Inc.; Piping Specialties Products.
  - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Inc. (The).
  - d. JCM Industries.
  - e. Romac Industries, Inc.
  - f. Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
  - g. Viking Johnson.

## 2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

### A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.

### B. Dielectric Unions:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
  - d. Jomar International.
  - e. Matco-Norca.
  - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
4. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

### C. Dielectric Flanges:



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company; member of the Phoenix Forge Group.
  - b. Central Plastics Company.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1079.
3. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
4. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
5. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Central Plastics Company.
  - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
2. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
3. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
4. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
5. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
6. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

E. Dielectric Nipples:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Elster Perfection Corporation.
  - b. Grinnell Mechanical Products; Tyco Fire Products LP.
  - c. Matco-Norca.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Victaulic Company.
2. Standard: IAPMO PS 66.
3. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
4. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
5. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
6. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve inside the building at each domestic water-service entrance. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" and with requirements for drain valves and strainers in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."
- D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.
- E. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.
- F. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.
- G. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- H. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- I. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.
- J. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- K. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than the system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- M. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- N. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

- O. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping for each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump. Comply with requirements for pressure gages in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping. Comply with requirements for thermostats in Division 22 Section "Domestic Water Pumps."
- Q. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping from each water heater. Comply with requirements for thermometers in Division 22 Section "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."
- R. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- S. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- T. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
- D. Soldered Joints for Copper Tubing: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- E. Pressure-Sealed Joints for Copper Tubing: Join copper tube and pressure-seal fittings with tools recommended by fitting manufacturer.
- F. Extruded-Tee Connections: Form tee in copper tube according to ASTM F 2014. Use tool designed for copper tube; drill pilot hole, form collar for outlet, dimple tube to form seating stop, and braze branch tube into collar.
- G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

- H. Joints for Dissimilar-Material Piping: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

### 3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.
- B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
  - 1. Fittings for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
  - 2. Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.
- C. Transition Fittings in Aboveground Domestic Water Piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Plastic-to-metal transition fittings or unions.

### 3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
- B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings.
- C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.

### 3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger, support products, and installation in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 4. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch (10 mm).
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Smaller: 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.

2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4 (DN 25 and DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 3 to NPS 5 (DN 80 to DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.7 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. When installing piping adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
1. Domestic Water Booster Pumps: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
  2. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
  3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than that required by plumbing code. Comply with requirements for connection sizes in Division 22 plumbing fixture Sections.
  4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water-supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification materials and installation in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
- B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
1. Piping Inspections:

- a. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- b. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
  - 1) Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing in after roughing in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2) Final Inspection: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified in "Piping Tests" Subparagraph below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- c. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- d. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

2. Piping Tests:

- a. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
- b. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
- c. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
- d. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow it to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
- e. Repair leaks and defects with new materials, and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
- f. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

B. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Perform the following adjustments before operation:

1. Close drain valves, hydrants, and hose bibbs.
2. Open shutoff valves to fully open position.
3. Open throttling valves to proper setting.
4. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
  - a. Manually adjust ball-type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide hot-water flow in each branch.

- b. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.
5. Remove plugs used during testing of piping and for temporary sealing of piping during installation.
6. Remove and clean strainer screens. Close drain valves and replace drain plugs.
7. Remove filter cartridges from housings and verify that cartridges are as specified for application where used and are clean and ready for use.
8. Check plumbing specialties and verify proper settings, adjustments, and operation.

### 3.11 CLEANING

#### A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
    - 1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm (50 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
    - 2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm (200 mg/L) of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
  - c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
  - d. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.
  - e. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### B. Clean non-potable domestic water piping as follows:

1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or; if methods are not prescribed, follow procedures described below:
  - a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
  - b. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

#### C. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities. Include copies of water-sample approvals from authorities having jurisdiction.

#### D. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

### 3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Fitting Option: Extruded-tee connections and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.
- D. Under-building-slab, domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 50) and smaller, shall be the following:
  - 1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.
- E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.
- F. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100), shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L (ASTM B 88M, Type B); copper pressure-seal-joint fittings; and pressure-sealed joints.

### 3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
  - 1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly, ball, or gate valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
  - 3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
  - 4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.
- C. Iron grooved-end valves may be used with grooved-end piping.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 221119  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Vacuum breakers.
2. Water pressure-reducing valves.
3. Balancing valves.
4. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.
5. Strainers.
6. Wall Hydrants
7. Drain valves.
8. Water-hammer arresters.
9. Air vents.
10. Trap-seal primer valves.
11. Flexible connectors.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping" for thermometers, pressure gages, and flow meters in domestic water piping.
2. Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping" for water meters.
3. Section 224716 "Pressure Water Coolers" for water filters for water coolers.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For domestic water piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

- A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.

### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig (860 kPa) unless otherwise indicated.

### 2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

- A. Pipe-Applied, Atmospheric-Type Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - d. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - e. Rain Bird Corporation.
  - f. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1001.
3. Size: NPS ¼ to NPS 3 (DN 8 to DN 80), as required to match connected piping.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: Threaded.
6. Finish: Rough bronze.

- B. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Arrowhead Brass Products.
  - b. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - c. Conbraco Industries, Inc.

- d. Legend Valve.
  - e. MIFAB, Inc.
  - f. Prier Products, Inc.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
  - j. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1011.
  - 3. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
  - 4. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
  - 5. Finish: Chrome or nickel plated.

C. Pressure Vacuum Breakers:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Ames Fire & Waterworks; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. FEBCO; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - d. Flomatic Corporation.
  - e. Toro Company (The); Irrigation Div.
  - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1020.
- 3. Operation: Continuous-pressure applications.
- 4. Pressure Loss: 5 psig (35 kPa) maximum, through middle third of flow range.
- 5. Accessories:
  - a. Valves: Ball type, on inlet and outlet.

## 2.4 WATER PRESSURE-REDUCING VALVES

A. Water Regulators:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cla Val
  - b. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - c. Hoffman
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1003.
- 3. Pressure Rating: Initial working pressure of 150 psig (1035 kPa).
- 4. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

5. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and NPS 3 (DN 65 and DN 80).

## 2.5 BALANCING VALVES

### A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Flo Fab Inc.
  - c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - d. NIBCO Inc.
  - e. TAC.
  - f. TACO Incorporated.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Type: Ball valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator.
3. Body: Brass or bronze.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2 (DN 50).
5. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### B. Cast-Iron Calibrated Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Armstrong International, Inc.
  - b. Flo Fab Inc.
  - c. ITT Corporation; Bell & Gossett Div.
  - d. NIBCO Inc.
  - e. TAC.
  - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Type: Adjustable with Y-pattern globe valve, two readout ports, and memory-setting indicator.
3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not smaller than NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65).

### C. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.

### D. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.

- d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Hammond Valve.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO Inc.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corp.
- 2. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
  - 3. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
  - 4. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50) or smaller.
  - 5. Body: Copper alloy.
  - 6. Port: Standard or full port.
  - 7. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 8. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
  - 9. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
  - 10. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## 2.6 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

### A. Individual-Fixture, Water Tempering Valves:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Cash Acme; a division of Reliance Worldwide Corporation.
  - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - c. Honeywell International Inc.
  - d. Lawler Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - e. Leonard Valve Company.
  - f. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
  - g. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
- 2. Standard: ASSE 1070, thermostatically controlled, water tempering valve.
- 3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Body: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
- 5. Temperature Control: Adjustable.
- 6. Inlets and Outlet: Threaded.
- 7. Finish: Rough or chrome-plated bronze.

## 2.7 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

### A. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- 2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
5. Perforation Size:
  - a. Strainers NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: 0.020 inch (0.51 mm).
  - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): 0.045 inch (1.14 mm).
  - c. Strainers NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: 0.10 inch (2.54 mm).
6. Drain: Factory-installed, hose-end drain valve.

## 2.8 WALL HYDRANTS

### A. Nonfreeze Wall Hydrants:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company.
  - b. MIFAB, Inc.
  - c. Prier Products, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - f. Watts Drainage Products.
  - g. Woodford Manufacturing Company; a division of WCM Industries, Inc.
  - h. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Light Commercial Products.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASME A112.21.3M for concealed-outlet, self-draining wall hydrants.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
4. Operation: Loose key.
5. Casing and Operating Rod: Of length required to match wall thickness. Include wall clamp.
6. Inlet: NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  or NPS 1 (DN 20 or DN 25).
7. Outlet: Concealed, with integral vacuum breaker and garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
8. Box: Deep, flush mounted with cover.
9. Box and Cover Finish: Polished nickel bronze.
10. Operating Keys(s): Two with each wall hydrant.

## 2.9 DRAIN VALVES

### A. Ball-Valve-Type, Hose-End Drain Valves:

1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for standard-port, two-piece ball valves.
2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig (2760-kPa) minimum CWP.
3. Size: NPS  $\frac{3}{4}$  (DN 20).
4. Body: Copper alloy.

5. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
6. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
7. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel.
8. Inlet: Threaded or solder joint.
9. Outlet: Threaded, short nipple with garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7 and cap with brass chain.

## 2.10 WATER-HAMMER ARRESTERS

### A. Water-Hammer Arresters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. AMTROL, Inc.
  - b. Josam Company.
  - c. MIFAB, Inc.
  - d. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - e. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - h. Watts Drainage Products.
  - i. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Products.
2. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
3. Type: Metal bellows.
4. Size: ASSE 1010, Sizes AA and A through F, or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through F.

## 2.11 AIR VENTS

### A. Bolted-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Bronze.
2. Pressure Rating and Temperature: 125-psig (860-kPa) minimum pressure rating at 140 deg F (60 deg C).
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

### B. Welded-Construction Automatic Air Vents:

1. Body: Stainless steel.
2. Pressure Rating: 150-psig (1035-kPa) minimum pressure rating.
3. Float: Replaceable, corrosion-resistant metal.
4. Mechanism and Seat: Stainless steel.
5. Size: NPS 3/8 (DN 10) minimum inlet.
6. Inlet and Vent Outlet End Connections: Threaded.

## 2.12 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

### A. Supply-Type, Trap-Seal Primer Device:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. MIFAB, Inc.
  - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - d. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - e. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Company.
2. Standard: ASSE 1018.
3. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum.
4. Body: Bronze.
5. Inlet and Outlet Connections: NPS ½ (DN 15) threaded, union, or solder joint.
6. Gravity Drain Outlet Connection: NPS ½ (DN 15) threaded or solder joint.
7. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze for units used with pipe or tube that is not chrome finished.

## 2.13 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

### A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Flex-Hose Co., Inc.
2. Flexicraft Industries.
3. Flex Pression, Ltd.
4. Flex-Weld Incorporated.
5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
6. Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.
7. Metraflex, Inc.
8. Proco Products, Inc.
9. TOZEN Corporation.
10. Unaflex.Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan company.

### B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig (1380 kPa).
2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

### C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.

1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum [200 psig (1380 kPa)] [250 psig (1725 kPa)].



2. End Connections NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be sources of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or system.
  2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- B. Install water regulators with inlet and outlet shutoff valves and bypass with memory-stop balancing valve. Install pressure gages on inlet and outlet.
- C. Install balancing valves in locations where they can easily be adjusted.
- D. Install temperature-actuated, water mixing valves with check stops or shutoff valves on inlets and with shutoff valve on outlet.
  1. Install cabinet-type units recessed in or surface mounted on wall as specified.
- E. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each water pressure-reducing valve, solenoid valve and pump.
- F. Install outlet boxes recessed in wall or surface mounted on wall. Install 2-by-4-inch (38-by-89-mm) fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking, wall reinforcement between studs. Comply with requirements for fire-retardant-treated-wood blocking in Section 061000 "Rough Carpentry."
- G. Install water-hammer arresters in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- H. Install air vents at high points of water piping. Install drain piping and discharge onto floor drain.
- I. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.
- J. Install trap-seal primer systems with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust system for proper flow.

### 3.2 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  - 1. Pressure vacuum breakers.
  - 2. Intermediate atmospheric-vent backflow preventers.
  - 3. Reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventers.
  - 4. Double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventers.
  - 5. Water pressure-reducing valves.
  - 6. Calibrated balancing valves.
  - 7. Primary, thermostatic, water mixing valves.
  - 8. Manifold, thermostatic, water mixing-valve assemblies.
  - 9. Outlet boxes.
  - 10. Supply-type, trap-seal primer valves.
- B. Distinguish among multiple units, inform operator of operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, and warn of hazards and improper operations, in addition to identifying unit. Nameplates and signs are specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Test each pressure vacuum breaker, reduced-pressure-principle backflow preventer, and double-check, detector-assembly backflow preventer according to authorities having jurisdiction and the device's reference standard.
- B. Domestic water piping specialties will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Set field-adjustable pressure set points of water pressure-reducing valves.
- B. Set field-adjustable flow set points of balancing valves.
- C. Set field-adjustable temperature set points of temperature-actuated, water mixing valves.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221316  
SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
  - 2. Specialty pipe fittings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 22 Section "Sanitary Sewerage Pumps" for effluent and sewage pumps.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Soil, Waste, and Vent Piping: 10-foot head of water (30 kPa).
  - 2. Waste, Force-Main Piping: 50 psig (345 kPa).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

- B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, “Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials,” for plastic piping components. Include marking with “NSF-dwv” for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and “NSF-sewer” for plastic sewer piping.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

- A. Comply with requirements in “Piping Schedule” Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

### 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.
- C. Calking Materials: ASTM B 29, pure lead and oakum or hemp fiber.

### 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. ANACO-Husky.
    - b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - c. Fernco Inc.
    - d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - e. MIFAB, Inc.
    - f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - g. Stant.
    - h. Tyler Pipe.
  - 2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

### 2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

- A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L and Type M (ASTM B 88M, Type B and Type C), water tube, drawn temper.
- B. Copper Pressure Fittings:

1. Copper Fittings: ASME B16.18, cast-copper-alloy or ASME B16.22, wrought-copper, solder-joint fittings. Furnish wrought-copper fittings if indicated.
  2. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body with ball-and-socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
- C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.
1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
  2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

## 2.5 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

### A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD's or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Fernco Inc.
    - 3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    - 4) Plastic Oddities; a division of Diverse Corporate Technologies, Inc.
  - b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
  - d. Sleeve Materials:
    - 1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
    - 2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
    - 3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.
4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

- b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
  - c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
5. Pressure Transition Couplings:
- a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - 2) Dresser, Inc.
    - 3) EBAA Iron, Inc.
    - 4) JCM Industries, Inc.
    - 5) Romac Industries, Inc.
    - 6) Smith-Blair, Inc.; a Sensus company.
    - 7) The Ford Meter Box Company, Inc.
    - 8) Viking Johnson.
  - b. Standard: AWWA C219.
  - c. Description: Metal, sleeve-type same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to, and ends compatible with, pipes to be joined.
  - d. Center-Sleeve Material: Manufacturer's standard.
  - e. Gasket Material: Natural or synthetic rubber.
  - f. Metal Component Finish: Corrosion-resistant coating or material.

B. Dielectric Fittings:

- 1. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- 2. Dielectric Unions:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 2) Central Plastics Company.
    - 3) Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - 4) Jomar International Ltd.
    - 5) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 6) McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - 7) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 8) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - 3) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

3. Dielectric Flanges:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - 2) Central Plastics Company.
    - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 4) Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - 5) Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - 2) Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - 3) Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - 4) End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
4. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - 2) Calpico, Inc.
    - 3) Central Plastics Company.
    - 4) Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
    - 2) Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
    - 3) Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
    - 4) Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
    - 5) Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.
5. Dielectric Nipples:
  - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - 1) Elster Perfection.
    - 2) Grinnell Mechanical Products.
    - 3) Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - 4) Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
    - 5) Victaulic Company.
  - b. Description:
    - 1) Standard: IAPMO PS 66

- 2) Electroplated steel nipple.
- 3) Pressure Rating: 300 psig (2070 kPa) at 225 deg F (107 deg C).
- 4) End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
- 5) Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- F. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- G. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- J. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep ¼ bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.



- K. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.
- L. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Sanitary Drain: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Sanitary Drainage Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow.
  - 3. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.
- M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
- N. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- O. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- P. Install underground, copper, force-main tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."
- Q. Install force mains at elevations indicated.
- R. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in sanitary drainage force-main piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
- S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 22 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 22 Section "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828. Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.
- D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.
- E. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
  - 1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  - 2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### 3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Transition Couplings:
  - 1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
  - 2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
  - 3. In Aboveground Force Main Piping: Fitting-type transition couplings.
  - 4. In Underground Force Main Piping:
    - a. NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and Smaller: Fitting-type transition couplings.
    - b. NPS 2 (DN 50) and Larger: Pressure transition couplings.
- B. Dielectric Fittings:
  - 1. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.
  - 2. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Use dielectric nipples.
  - 3. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4 (DN 65 to DN 100): Use dielectric flanges.
  - 4. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 5 (DN 125) and Larger: Use dielectric flange kits.

### 3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."
  - 1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 2. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  - 3. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.

4. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  5. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  6. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
  6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).
- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): 72 inches (1800 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 96 inches (2400 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65): 108 inches (2700 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 3 and NPS 5 (DN 80 and DN 125): 10 feet (3 m) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 6 (DN 150): 10 feet (3 m) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  6. NPS 8 (DN 200): 10 feet (3 m) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
- H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet (3 m).
- I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.6 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
  - 4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 5. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Division 22 Section "Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties."
  - 6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.
- E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

### 3.7 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  - 2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
  - 4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent-stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg (250 Pa). Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
  - 5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.
- E. Test force-main piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced force-main piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  - 2. Cap and subject piping to static-water pressure of 50 psig (345 kPa) above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  - 3. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
  - 4. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- C. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- D. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- E. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Shielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- F. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  - 3. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.
- G. Underground, soil and waste piping NPS 5 (DN 125) and larger shall be any of the following:
  - 1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  - 2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; coupled joints.
  - 3. Solid-wall PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.
  - 4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

- H. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50) shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- I. Aboveground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 6 (DN 65 to DN 150) shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
- J. Underground sanitary-sewage force mains NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller shall be the following:
  - 1. Hard copper tube, Type L (Type B); wrought-copper pressure fittings; and soldered joints.
  - 2. Fitting-type transition coupling for piping smaller than NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and pressure transition coupling for NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) and larger if dissimilar pipe materials.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221319  
SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Cleanouts.
  - 2. Floor drains.
  - 3. Floor sinks.
  - 4. Trench Drains
  - 5. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.
  - 6. Flashing materials.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
- B. FOG: Fats, oils, and greases.
- C. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced plastic.
- D. HDPE: High-density polyethylene plastic.
- E. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
- F. PP: Polypropylene plastic.
- G. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and accessories for the following:
  - 1. Grease interceptors.



## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control test reports.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For drainage piping specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Components and Related Materials," for plastic sanitary piping specialty components.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Coordinate size and location of roof penetrations.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CLEANOUTS

- A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule
- B. Exposed Metal Cleanouts:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
    - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
    - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
    - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
    - e. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for cast iron for cleanout test tee.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping
4. Body Material: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head, brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.

C. Metal Floor Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
  - e. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - f. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - g. Josam Company; Blucher-Josam Div.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for threaded, adjustable housing cleanout.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Type: Threaded, adjustable housing.
5. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
6. Clamping Device: Required.
7. Outlet Connection: Inside calk.
8. Closure: Brass plug with straight threads and gasket.
9. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
10. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
11. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
12. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
13. Riser: ASTM A 74, Service class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

D. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; d of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: Countersunk or raised-head brass plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as or not more than one size smaller than cleanout size.
7. Wall Access: Round, deep, chrome-plated bronze cover plate with screw.

## 2.2 FLOOR DRAINS (FD-1)

A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule

B. Cast-Iron Floor Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3.
3. Pattern: Floor drain.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.
10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: Not required.
11. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.

## 2.3 FLOOR SINKS (FS-1)

A. Refer to Plumbing Fixture Schedule

B. Cast-Iron Floor Sinks:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Josam Company; Josam Div.
  - b. Smith, Jay R. Mfg. Co.; Division of Smith Industries, Inc.
  - c. Tyler Pipe; Wade Div.
  - d. Zurn Plumbing Products Group; Specification Drainage Operation.
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.7
3. Pattern: Floor sink.
4. Body Material: Gray iron.
5. Seepage Flange: Required.
6. Anchor Flange: Not required.
7. Clamping Device: Required.
8. Outlet: Bottom.
9. Backwater Valve: Not required.

10. Coating on Interior and Exposed Exterior Surfaces: White porcelain enamel.
11. Sediment Bucket: Not required.
12. Top or Strainer Material: Nickel bronze.
13. Top of Body and Strainer Finish: Nickel bronze.

## 2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

### A. Trench Drains (TD-1):

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Zurn, Z882
  - b. Klassik Drain, K300
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.3 for trench drains.
3. Material: Ductile or gray iron.
4. Flange: Anchor.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Grate Material: Ductile iron.
7. Grate Finish: Not required.
8. Dimensions of Frame and Grate: 12" wide, 9" throat polyethylene trench drain with 1.04% bottom slope, integral tie-down/leveling devices every 24", class E ductile iron slotted grate with lockdowns, h-0 and faa rated, heavy-duty frame assembly with anchor studs.
9. Top Loading Classification: Heavy Duty.
10. Trap Material: Cast iron.
11. Trap Pattern: Standard P-trap.

## 2.5 ROOF FLASHING ASSEMBLIES

### A. Roof Flashing Assemblies:

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - a. Acorn Engineering Company; Elmdor/Stoneman Div.
  - b. Thaler Metal Industries Ltd.

- B. Description: Manufactured assembly made of 4.0-lb/sq. ft. (20-kg/sq. m), 0.0625-inch- (1.6-mm-) thick, lead flashing collar and skirt extending at least 6 inches (150 mm) from pipe, with galvanized-steel boot reinforcement and counterflashing fitting.

1. Open-Top Vent Cap: Without cap.

## 2.6 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

### A. Open Drains:

1. Description: Shop or field fabricate from ASTM A 74, Service class, hub-and-spigot, cast-iron, soil-pipe fittings. Include P-trap, hub-and-spigot riser section; and where required, increaser fitting joined with ASTM C 564, rubber gaskets.
2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.

### B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:

1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 (DN 15) side inlet.

### C. Air-Gap Fittings:

1. Standard: ASME A112.1.2, for fitting designed to ensure fixed, positive air gap between installed inlet and outlet piping.
2. Body: Bronze or cast iron.
3. Inlet: Opening in top of body.
4. Outlet: Larger than inlet.
5. Size: Same as connected waste piping and with inlet large enough for associated indirect waste piping.

### D. Sleeve Flashing Device:

1. Description: Manufactured, cast-iron fitting, with clamping device that forms sleeve for pipe floor penetrations of floor membrane. Include galvanized-steel pipe extension in top of fitting that will extend 1 inch (25 mm) above finished floor and galvanized-steel pipe extension in bottom of fitting that will extend through floor slab.
2. Size: As required for close fit to riser or stack piping.

### E. Stack Flashing Fittings:

1. Description: Counterflashing-type, cast-iron fitting, with bottom recess for terminating roof membrane, and with threaded or hub top for extending vent pipe.
2. Size: Same as connected stack vent or vent stack.

### F. Expansion Joints:

1. Standard: ASME A112.21.2M.
2. Body: Cast iron with bronze sleeve, packing, and gland.
3. End Connections: Matching connected piping.
4. Size: Same as connected soil, waste, or vent piping.

## 2.7 FLASHING MATERIALS

- A. Copper Sheet: ASTM B 152/B 152M, of the following minimum weights and thicknesses, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. General Applications: 12 oz./sq. ft. (3.7 kg/sq. m or 0.41-mm thickness).
  - 2. Vent Pipe Flashing: 8 oz./sq. ft. (2.5 kg/sq. m or 0.27-mm thickness).
- B. Zinc-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, with 0.20 percent copper content and 0.04-inch (1.01-mm) minimum thickness, unless otherwise indicated. Include G90 (Z275) hot-dip galvanized, mill-phosphatized finish for painting if indicated.
- C. Elastic Membrane Sheet: ASTM D 4068, flexible, chlorinated polyethylene, 40-mil (1.01-mm) minimum thickness.
- D. Fasteners: Metal compatible with material and substrate being fastened.
- E. Metal Accessories: Sheet metal strips, clamps, anchoring devices, and similar accessory units required for installation; matching or compatible with material being installed.
- F. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloy.
- G. Bituminous Coating: SSPC-Paint 12, solvent-type, bituminous mastic.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Size same as drainage piping up to NPS 4 (DN 100). Use NPS 4 (DN 100) for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  - 2. Locate at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  - 3. Locate at minimum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and smaller and 100 feet (30 m) for larger piping.
  - 4. Locate at base of each vertical soil and waste stack.
- B. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- C. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- D. Install floor drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Position floor drains for easy access and maintenance.

2. Set floor drains below elevation of surrounding finished floor to allow floor drainage. Set with grates depressed according to the following drainage area radii:
    - a. Radius, 30 Inches (750 mm) or Less: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not less than 1/4-inch (6.35-mm) total depression.
    - b. Radius, 30 to 60 Inches (750 to 1500 mm): Equivalent to 1 percent slope.
    - c. Radius, 60 Inches (1500 mm) or Larger: Equivalent to 1 percent slope, but not greater than 1-inch (25-mm) total depression.
  3. Install floor-drain flashing collar or flange so no leakage occurs between drain and adjoining flooring. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  4. Install individual traps for floor drains connected to sanitary building drain, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Install roof flashing assemblies on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- F. Install flashing fittings on sanitary stack vents and vent stacks that extend through roof.
- G. Assemble open drain fittings and install with top of hub 1 inch (25 mm) above floor.
- H. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
  2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.
- I. Install air-gap fittings on draining-type backflow preventers and on indirect-waste piping discharge into sanitary drainage system.
- J. Install sleeve flashing device with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.
- K. Install expansion joints on vertical stacks and conductors. Position expansion joints for easy access and maintenance.
- L. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
1. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
  2. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.
- M. Install solids interceptors with cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors that do not have integral cleanout on outlet. Install trap on interceptors that do not have integral trap and are connected to sanitary drainage and vent systems.
- N. Install wood-blocking reinforcement for wall-mounting-type specialties.

- O. Install traps on plumbing specialty drain outlets. Omit traps on indirect wastes unless trap is indicated.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Grease Interceptors: Connect inlet and outlet to unit and connect flow-control fitting and vent to unit inlet piping. Install valve on outlet of automatic draw-off type unit.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required. Join flashing according to the following if required:
  - 1. Copper Sheets: Solder joints of copper sheets.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
  - 1. Pipe Flashing: Sleeve type, matching pipe size, with minimum length of 10 inches (250 mm), and skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around pipe.
  - 2. Sleeve Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around sleeve.
  - 3. Embedded Specialty Flashing: Flat sheet, with skirt or flange extending at least 8 inches (200 mm) around specialty.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.
- E. Install flashing for piping passing through roofs with counterflashing or commercially made flashing fittings, according to Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- F. Extend flashing up vent pipe passing through roofs and turn down into pipe, or secure flashing into cast-iron sleeve having calking recess.
- G. Fabricate and install flashing and pans, sumps, and other drainage shapes.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during the remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.



Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221323  
SANITARY WASTE INTERCEPTORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grease interceptors.
2. Grease removal devices.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of interceptor.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type and size of precast concrete interceptor indicated.

1. Include materials of construction, dimensions, rated capacities, retention capacities, location and size of each pipe connection, furnished specialties, and accessories.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Interceptors, drawn to scale, and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Piping connections. Include size, location, and elevation of each.
2. Interface with underground structures and utility services.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GREASE INTERCEPTORS

A. Cast-Iron or Steel Grease Interceptors:

1. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Zurn
  - b. J.R. Smith
  - c. Jensen
  - d. Schier
  - e. Approved equal.

2. Standard: ASME A112.14.3 and PDI-G101, for intercepting and retaining fats, oils, and greases from food-preparation or food-processing wastewater.
  3. Plumbing and Drainage Institute Seal: Required.
  4. Body Material: Cast iron or steel.
  5. Interior Lining: Not required.
  6. Exterior Coating: Not required.
- B. Capacities and Characteristics:
1. Flow Rate: match existing.
  2. Inlet and Outlet Pipe Size: 4" NPS.
    - a. Centerline of Inlet to Floor: match existing.
    - b. Centerline of Outlet to Floor: match existing.
  3. End Connections: match existing.
  4. Cleanout: Integral.
  5. Trapped Outlet Required: Integral.
  6. Vent Pipe Size: match existing.
  7. Mounting: match existing.
  8. Flow-Control Fitting: Not required.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavating, trenching, and backfilling are specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
1. Install grease interceptors on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s).
  2. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
- B. Install precast concrete interceptors according to ASTM C 891.
- C. Set interceptors level and plumb.
- D. Install manhole risers from top of underground concrete interceptors to manholes and gratings at finished grade.
- E. Set tops of manhole frames and covers flush with finished surface in pavements.
- F. Set tops of grating frames and grates flush with finished surface.
- G. Set interceptors level and plumb.
- H. Set tops of metal interceptor covers flush with finished surface in pavements.

- I. Install grease interceptors, including trapping, venting, and flow-control fitting, according to authorities having jurisdiction and with clear space for servicing.
  1. Flush with Floor Installation: Set unit and extension, if required, with cover flush with finished floor.
  2. Install cleanout immediately downstream from interceptors not having integral cleanout on outlet.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Make piping connections between interceptors and piping systems.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Equipment Nameplates and Signs: Install engraved plastic-laminate equipment nameplate or sign on or near each of the following:
  1. Grease interceptors.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221413  
FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

B. Related Section:

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF/ANSI 14, "Plastics Piping System Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic drain piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

## 2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.
- B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

## 2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.
- B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
  - 2. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.
- C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
  - 1. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
  - 2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

## 2.4 ABS PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall ABS Pipe: ASTM D 2661, Schedule 40.
- B. Cellular-Core ABS Pipe: ASTM F 628, Schedule 40.
- C. ABS Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2661, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns.
- D. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2235.
  - 1. ABS solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 325 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  - 2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

## 2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

- A. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.
- B. Cellular-Core PVC Pipe: ASTM F 891, Schedule 40.
- C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.
- D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
  - 1. Adhesive primer shall have a VOC content of 550 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2. Adhesive primer shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."
- E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
1. PVC solvent cement shall have a VOC content of 510 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
  2. Solvent cement shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EARTH MOVING

- A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

#### 3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.
- B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- E. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- F. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- H. Make changes in direction for storm drainage piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.
- I. Lay buried building storm drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping

upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

- J. Install storm drainage piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Building Storm Drain: 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 (DN 80) and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 (DN 100) and larger.
  - 2. Horizontal Storm-Drainage Piping: 1 percent downward in direction of flow.
- K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
  - 1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.
- L. Install underground ABS and PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.
- M. Plumbing Specialties:
  - 1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
  - 2. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
- O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 220517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."
- Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

### 3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasketed joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.
- B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.
- C. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.



- D. Plastic, Nonpressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
  2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 Appendixes.
  3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 Appendixes.

### 3.4 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Section 220529 “Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.”
1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
  2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
  3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
  4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
  5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  6. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
    - a. 100 Feet (30 m) and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m): MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet (30 m) if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet (30 m) or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches (300 mm) of each fitting, valve, and coupling.
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch (10-mm) minimum rods.
- E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/8-inch (10-mm) rod.
  2. NPS 3 (DN 80): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 1/2-inch (13-mm) rod.
  3. NPS 4 and NPS 5 (DN 100 and DN 125): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 5/8-inch (16-mm) rod.
  4. NPS 6 and NPS 8 (DN 150 and DN 200): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 3/4-inch (19-mm) rod.
  5. NPS 10 and NPS 12 (DN 250 and DN 300): 60 inches (1500 mm) with 7/8-inch (22-mm) rod.
  6. Spacing for 10-foot (3-m) pipe lengths may be increased to 10 feet (3 m). Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches (1500 mm).

- F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet (4.5 m).
- G. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
  - 1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
  - 2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

### 3.6 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

### 3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
  - 2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
- B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
- C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
  - 1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.

2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Test Procedure: Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water (30 kPa). From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.
- B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.
- C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

### 3.9 PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Aboveground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be any of the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- C. Aboveground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
- D. Underground storm drainage piping NPS 6 (DN 150) and smaller shall be[ any of] the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
  2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
  3. ABS pipe, ABS socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
  4. PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
- E. Underground, storm drainage piping NPS 8 (DN 200) and larger shall be any of the following:
  1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.

2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI, heavy-duty, cast-iron, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Cellular-core, sewer and drain series, PVC pipe; PVC socket fittings; and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 221423  
STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Metal roof drains.
  - 2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
  - 3. Cleanouts.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for penetrations of roofs.
  - 2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping roof penetrations.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

- A. Cast-Iron, Small-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains (RD-1 & ORD-1):

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co
  - b. Josam Company
  - c. MIFAB, Inc
  - d. WATTS
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: Nominal 8-inch diameter.
5. Combination Flashing Ring and Gravel Stop: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Outlet Type: No hub.
8. Extension Collars: Not required.
9. Underdeck Clamp: Required.
10. Expansion Joint: Not required.
11. Sump Receiver Plate: Required.
12. Dome Material: Cast iron.
13. Wire Mesh: Not required.
14. Vandal-Proof Dome: Not required.

## 2.2 CLEANOUTS

### A. Cast-Iron Exposed Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co
  - b. Josam Company
  - c. MIFAB, Inc
  - d. WATTS
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M.
3. Size: Same as connected branch.
4. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure: cast-iron plug.
6. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

### B. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co
  - b. Josam Company
  - c. MIFAB, Inc
  - d. WATTS
  - e. Zurn Industries, LLC

2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
4. Body: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil pipe T-branch as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
  - a. Cast iron.
  - b. Countersunk head.
  - c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
  - d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access: Round, flat, chrome-plated stainless-steel cover plate with screw.
7. Wall Access: Round, stainless-steel wall-installation frame and cover.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas according to roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
  1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
  2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
  3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.
- B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.
- C. Install conductor nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.
- D. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping according to the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
  2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
  3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 100 feet.
  4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.
- E. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.
- F. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.
- G. Install horizontal backwater valves in floor with cover flush with floor.

- H. Install drain-outlet backwater valves in outlet of drains.
- I. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.
- J. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.
- K. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.
- L. Assemble channel drainage system components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that top will be flush with adjacent surface.
- M. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetrations of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
  - 1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

### 3.3 FLASHING INSTALLATION

- A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.
- B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.
- C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.
- D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.
- B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 224213.13  
COMMERCIAL WATER CLOSETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Water closets.
2. Flushometer valves.
3. Toilet seats.
4. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 FLOOR-MOUNTED, BOTTOM-OUTLET WATER CLOSETS

- A. Water Closets (WC-1, WC-A): Floor mounted, bottom outlet, top spud.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sloan: ST-2009
    - b. Toto: CT705EN(G)
    - c. Kohler: K-96059-SS-0
  2. Bowl:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Type: Siphon jet.
    - d. Style: Flushometer valve.
    - e. Height: Standard.

- f. Rim Contour: Elongated.
  - g. Water Consumption: 1.28 gal. (4.8 L) per flush.
  - h. Spud Size and Location: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40); top.
  - i. Color: White.
- 3. Bowl-to-Drain Connecting Fitting: ASTM A 1045 or ASME A112.4.3.
- 4. Flushometer Valve.
- 5. Toilet Seat: Slow-close.

## 2.2 FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Slow-closing, Piston Flushometer Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kohler: K-7521
    - b. Approved alternate.
  - 2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  - 3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
  - 4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  - 5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  - 6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  - 7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  - 8. Style: Exposed.
  - 9. Consumption: 1.28 gal. (4.8 L) per flush.
  - 10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 1 (DN 25).
  - 11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).

## 2.3 TOILET SEATS

- A. Toilet Seats:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Church Seats
    - b. Kohler Co
    - c. Toto USA
    - d. Sloan
  - 2. Standard: IAPMO/ANSI Z124.5.
  - 3. Material: Plastic.
  - 4. Type: Commercial (Standard).
  - 5. Shape: Elongated rim, open front.
  - 6. Hinge: Check.
  - 7. Hinge Material: Noncorroding metal.
  - 8. Seat Cover: Not required.
  - 9. Color: White.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Water-Closet Installation:

1. Install level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install floor-mounted water closets on bowl-to-drain connecting fitting attachments to piping or building substrate.

#### B. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve, water-supply fitting on each supply to each water closet.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible water closets with handle mounted on open side of water closet.
4. Install actuators in locations that are easy for people with disabilities to reach.

#### C. Install toilet seats on water closets.

#### D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations and within cabinets and millwork.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

#### E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between water closets and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to water-closet color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect water closets with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match water closets.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to water closets, allow space for service and maintenance.

3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust water closets and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning water closets, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean water closets and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed water closets and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of water closets for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 224213.16  
COMMERCIAL URINALS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Urinals.
  - 2. Flushometer valves.
  - 3. Supports.
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 224600 "Security Plumbing Fixtures" for security urinals.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for urinals.
  - 2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For flushometer valves to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Flushometer-Valve Repair Kits: Equal to 10 percent of amount of each type installed, but no fewer than one of each type.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WALL-HUNG URINALS

- A. Urinals (UR-1) Wall hung, back outlet, washout, accessible.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kohler: K-4991-ET
    - b. Toto: UT447E#01
    - c. Mansfield: 410UHE
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standards: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1 and ASME A112.19.5.
    - b. Material: Vitreous china.
    - c. Type: Washout with extended shields.
    - d. Strainer or Trapway: Manufacturer's standard strainer with integral trap.
    - e. Water Consumption: Low.
    - f. Spud Size and Location: NPS 3/4 (DN 20), top.
    - g. Outlet Size and Location: NPS 2 (DN 50), back.
    - h. Color: White.
  3. Waste Fitting:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2 for coupling.
    - b. Size: NPS 2 (DN 50).
  4. Support: Type I Urinal Carrier with fixture support plates and coupling with seal and fixture bolts and hardware matching fixture.
  5. Urinal Mounting Height: Standard.

### 2.2 URINAL FLUSHOMETER VALVES

- A. Lever-Handle, Diaphragm Flushometer Valves:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Sloan Valve Company
    - b. Approved Alternate
  2. Standard: ASSE 1037.
  3. Minimum Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa).
  4. Features: Include integral check stop and backflow-prevention device.
  5. Material: Brass body with corrosion-resistant components.
  6. Exposed Flushometer-Valve Finish: Chrome plated.
  7. Panel Finish: Chrome plated or stainless steel.
  8. Style: Exposed.
  9. Consumption: 0.5 gal. (3.8 L) per flush.
  10. Minimum Inlet: NPS 3/4 (DN 20).

11. Minimum Outlet: NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32).

## 2.3 SUPPORTS

### A. Type I Urinal Carrier:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co
  - b. Josam Company
  - c. Zurn Industries, LLC
2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before urinal installation.
- B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where urinals will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. Urinal Installation:

1. Install urinals level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
2. Install wall-hung, back-outlet urinals onto waste fitting seals and attached to supports.
3. Install wall-hung, bottom-outlet urinals with tubular waste piping attached to supports.
4. Install accessible, wall-mounted urinals at mounting height for the handicapped/elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
5. Install trap-seal liquid in waterless urinals.

#### B. Support Installation:

1. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung urinals.
2. Use off-floor carriers with waste fitting and seal for back-outlet urinals.
3. Use carriers without waste fitting for urinals with tubular waste piping.
4. Use chair-type carrier supports with rectangular steel uprights for accessible urinals.

#### C. Flushometer-Valve Installation:

1. Install flushometer-valve water-supply fitting on each supply to each urinal.
2. Attach supply piping to supports or substrate within pipe spaces behind fixtures.
3. Install lever-handle flushometer valves for accessible urinals with handle mounted on open side of compartment.

4. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

D. Wall Flange and Escutcheon Installation:

1. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations.
2. Install deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings.
3. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

E. Joint Sealing:

1. Seal joints between urinals and walls and floors using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant.
2. Match sealant color to urinal color.
3. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect urinals with water supplies and soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match urinals.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."
- D. Where installing piping adjacent to urinals, allow space for service and maintenance.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust urinals and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning urinals, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at flushometer valves to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Clean urinals and fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- B. Install protective covering for installed urinals and fittings.
- C. Do not allow use of urinals for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 224216.13  
COMMERCIAL LAVATORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Lavatories.
2. Faucets.
3. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring of automatic faucets.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lavatories and faucets to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Servicing and adjustments of automatic faucets.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- A. Lavatory (L-1, L-A): Ledge back, vitreous china, wall mounted.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kohler: Model K-2861-0.
    - b. Approved alternate.
  2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.2/CSA B45.1.

- b. Type: For wall hanging.
  - c. Nominal Size: 19 by 17 inches (483 by 432 mm).
  - d. Faucet-Hole Punching: Three holes, 4-inch (102-mm) centers.
  - e. Faucet-Hole Location: Top.
  - f. Color: White.
  - g. Mounting Material: Chair carrier.
- 3. Faucet: Delta model #520-SSPPU-DST.
  - 4. Support: Type II, concealed-arm lavatory carrier.
  - 5. Lavatory Mounting Height: Standard.

## 2.2 SUPPORTS

- A. Type II Lavatory Carrier:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Zurn Industries, LLC
  - 2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

## 2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF/ANSI 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects," for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated-brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated-brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated-brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Loose key.
- F. Risers:
  - 1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10).
  - 2. ASME A112.18.6, braided- or corrugated-stainless-steel, flexible hose riser.

## 2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32) offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  - 1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 by NPS 1-1/4 (DN 40 by DN 32).

1. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before lavatory installation.
- B. Examine counters and walls for suitable conditions where lavatories will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install lavatories level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted lavatories.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted lavatories at handicapped/elderly mounting height for people with disabilities or the elderly, according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- E. Seal joints between lavatories and counters and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- F. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible lavatories. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."

#### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."
- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust lavatories and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning lavatories, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.
- C. Install fresh batteries in battery-powered, electronic-sensor mechanisms.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of lavatories, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean lavatories, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed lavatories and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of lavatories for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 224216.16  
COMMERCIAL SINKS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service basins.
2. Sink faucets.
3. Supply fittings.
4. Waste fittings.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Counter cutout templates for mounting of counter-mounted lavatories.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SERVICE BASINS

A. Service Basins (S-1): Terazzo, floor mounted.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Acorn: Model TSH-24
  - b. Approved equal.
2. Fixture:
  - a. Shape: Square.
  - b. Nominal Size: 24 by 24 inches.
  - c. Height: 12 inches.
  - d. Tiling Flange: Not required.

- e. Color: Not applicable.
  - f. Drain: Grid with NPS 3 outlet.
- 3. Mounting: On floor and flush to wall.
- 4. Faucet: SF-2.
- B. Utility Sinks (S-A): Stainless steel, undercounter mounted.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Elkay Manufacturing Co: ELUHAD191655PD
    - b. Just Manufacturing: USF-ADA-1821-A
  - 2. Fixture:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4.
    - b. Type: Ledge back.
    - c. Number of Compartments: One.
    - d. Overall Dimensions: 19x16.
    - e. Metal Thickness: 0.050 inch (1.3 mm).
    - f. Faucet-Hole Punching: No holes.
    - g. Faucet-Hole Location: On countertop.
    - h. Compartment:
      - 1) Dimensions: 22x16.
      - 2) Drain: Grid with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) tailpiece and twist drain.
      - 3) Drain Location: Near back of compartment.
  - 3. Faucet(s): SF-1.
    - a. Number Required: One.
    - b. Mounting: On ledge.
  - 4. Supply Fittings:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    - b. Supplies: Chrome-plated brass compression stop with inlet connection matching water-supply piping type and size.
      - 1) Operation: Quarter turn.
      - 2) Risers: NPS 1/2 (DN 15), ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.
  - 5. Waste Fittings:
    - a. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
    - b. Trap(s):
      - 1) Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
      - 2) Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.

- 3) Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.
- c. Continuous Waste:
  - 1) Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
  - 2) Material: Chrome-plated, 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube.
6. Mounting: Under counter with sealant.

## 2.2 SINK FAUCETS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for faucet-spout materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Sink Faucets: Manual type, single-control mixing valve.
  1. General-Duty, Solid-Brass Faucets (SF-1):
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Chicago Faucets
      - 2) Delta Faucet Company
      - 3) Eljer, Inc.
    2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.
    4. Body Type: Widespread.
    5. Body Material: General-duty, solid brass.
    6. Finish: Brushed Nickle.
    7. Maximum Flow Rate: 2.2 gpm (8.3 L/min.).
    8. Handle(s): Lever.
    9. Mounting Type: Deck, exposed.
    10. Spout Type: Swing, round tubular.
    11. Vacuum Breaker: Not required for hose outlet.
    12. Spout Outlet: Aerator.
- C. Sink Faucets: Manual type, two-lever-handle mixing valve.
  1. Commercial, Solid-Brass Faucets (SF-2):
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Chicago Faucets: Model 540-LD
      - 2) Approved equal.
    2. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
    3. General: Include hot- and cold-water indicators; coordinate faucet inlets with supplies and fixture hole punchings; coordinate outlet with spout and sink receptor.

4. Body Type: Widespread.
5. Body Material: Commercial, solid brass.
6. Finish: Chrome plated.
7. Maximum Flow Rate: 4.0 gpm (15 L/min.).
8. Handle(s): Cross, four arm.
9. Mounting Type: Back/wall, exposed.
10. Spout Type: Rigid, solid brass.
11. Vacuum Breaker: Required for hose outlet.
12. Spout Outlet: Hose thread according to ASME B1.20.7.

## 2.3 SUPPLY FITTINGS

- A. NSF Standard: Comply with NSF 372 for supply-fitting materials that will be in contact with potable water.
- B. Standard: ASME A112.18.1/CSA B125.1.
- C. Supply Piping: Chrome-plated brass pipe or chrome-plated copper tube matching water-supply piping size. Include chrome-plated brass or stainless-steel wall flange.
- D. Supply Stops: Chrome-plated brass, one-quarter-turn, ball-type or compression valve with inlet connection matching supply piping.
- E. Operation: Quarter-turn.
- F. Risers:
  1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10).
  2. ASME A112.18.6, braided or corrugated stainless-steel flexible hose.

## 2.4 WASTE FITTINGS

- A. Standard: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2.
- B. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40) offset and straight tailpiece.
- C. Trap:
  1. Size: NPS 1-1/2 (DN 40).
  2. Material: Chrome-plated, two-piece, cast-brass trap and swivel elbow with 0.032-inch- (0.83-mm-) thick brass tube to wall; and chrome-plated brass or steel wall flange.
  3. Material: Stainless-steel, two-piece trap and swivel elbow with 0.012-inch- (0.30-mm-) thick stainless-steel tube to wall; and stainless-steel wall flange.



## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in of water supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before sink installation.
- B. Examine walls, floors, and counters for suitable conditions where sinks will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install sinks level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings.
- B. Install supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-hung sinks.
- C. Install accessible wall-mounted sinks at handicapped/elderly mounting height according to ICC/ANSI A117.1.
- D. Set floor-mounted sinks in leveling bed of cement grout.
- E. Install water-supply piping with stop on each supply to each sink faucet.
  - 1. Exception: Use ball or gate valves if supply stops are not specified with sink. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping" and Section 220523.15 "Gate Valves for Plumbing Piping."
  - 2. Install stops in locations where they can be easily reached for operation.
- F. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons if required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."
- G. Seal joints between sinks and counters, floors, and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
- H. Install protective shielding pipe covers and enclosures on exposed supplies and waste piping of accessible sinks. Comply with requirements in Section 220719 "Plumbing Piping Insulation."
- I. Install disposer in outlet of each sink indicated to have disposer. Install switch where indicated or in wall adjacent to sink if location is not indicated.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Connect sinks with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.
- B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

- C. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Operate and adjust sinks and controls. Replace damaged and malfunctioning sinks, fittings, and controls.
- B. Adjust water pressure at faucets to produce proper flow.

#### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing installation of sinks, inspect and repair damaged finishes.
- B. Clean sinks, faucets, and other fittings with manufacturers' recommended cleaning methods and materials.
- C. Provide protective covering for installed sinks and fittings.
- D. Do not allow use of sinks for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 226313  
NATURAL GAS PIPING SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Pipes, tubes, and fittings.
  - 2. Piping specialties.
  - 3. Piping and tubing joining materials.
  - 4. Valves.
  - 5. Pressure regulators.
  - 6. Service meters.
  - 7. Concrete bases.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Minimum Operating-Pressure Ratings:
  - 1. Piping and Valves: 100 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Service Regulators: 65 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Minimum Operating Pressure of Service Meter: 5 psig.
- B. Natural-Gas System Pressure within Buildings: 0.5 psig.

## 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of the following:
  - 1. Piping specialties.
  - 2. Corrugated, stainless-steel tubing with associated components.
  - 3. Valves. Include pressure rating, capacity, settings, and electrical connection data of selected models.
  - 4. Pressure regulators. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 5. Service meters. Indicate pressure ratings and capacities.
  - 6. Dielectric fittings.
- B. Shop Drawings: For facility natural-gas piping layout. Include plans, piping layout and elevations, sections, and details for fabrication of pipe anchors, hangers, supports for multiple pipes, alignment guides, expansion joints and loops, and attachments of the same to building structure. Detail location of anchors, alignment guides, and expansion joints and loops.
  - 1. Shop Drawing Scale: ¼ inch per foot.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Plans and details, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other installations, using input from installers of the items involved.
- D. Site Survey: Plans, drawn to scale, on which natural-gas piping is shown and coordinated with other services and utilities.
- E. Welding certificates.
- F. Field quality-control reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For pressure regulators and service meters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, “Structural Welding Code – Steel.”
- B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

- B. Store and handle pipes and tubes having factory-applied protective coatings to avoid damaging coating, and protect from direct sunlight.
- C. Protect stored PE pipes and valves from direct sunlight.

## 1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
- B. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for valves installed concealed behind finished surfaces. Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PIPES, TUBES, AND FITTINGS

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, black steel, Schedule 40, Type E or S, Grade B.
  - 1. Malleable-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.3, Class 150, standard pattern.
  - 2. Wrought-Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234/A 234M for butt welding and socket welding.
  - 3. Unions: ASME B16.39, Class 150, malleable iron with brass-to-iron seat, ground joint, and threaded ends.
  - 4. Forged-Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, minimum Class 150, including bolts, nuts, and gaskets of the following material group, end connections, and facings:
    - a. Material Group: 1.1.
    - b. End Connections: Threaded or butt welding to match pipe.
    - c. Lapped Face: Not permitted underground.
    - d. Gasket Materials: ASME B16.20, metallic, flat, asbestos free, aluminum o-rings, and spiral-wound metal gaskets.
    - e. Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel aboveground and stainless steel underground.
  - 5. Protective Coating for Underground Piping: Factory-applied, three-layer coating of epoxy, adhesive, and PE.
    - a. Joint Cover Kits: Epoxy paint, adhesive, and heat-shrink PE sleeves.
  - 6. Mechanical Couplings:
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
      - 1) Dresser Piping Specialties; Division of Dresser, Inc.

## 2) Smith-Blair, Inc.

- b. Stainless-steel flanges and tube with epoxy finish.
- c. Buna-nitrile seals.
- d. Stainless-steel bolts, washers, and nuts.
- e. Coupling shall be capable of joining PE pipe to PE pipe, steel pipe to PE pipe, or steel pipe to steel pipe.
- f. Steel body couplings installed underground on plastic pipe shall be factory equipped with anode.

## 7. Field fabricated fittings not approved.

## 2.2 PIPING SPECIALTIES

## A. Appliance Flexible Connectors:

- 1. Indoor, Fixed-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.24.
- 2. Indoor, Movable-Appliance Flexible Connectors: Comply with ANSI Z21.69.
- 3. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with polymer coating.
- 4. Operating-Pressure Rating: 0.5 psig (3.45 kPa).
- 5. End Fittings: Zinc-coated steel.
- 6. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
- 7. Maximum Length: 72 inches (1830 mm).

## B. Quick-Disconnect Devices: Comply with ANSI Z21.41.

- 1. Copper-alloy convenience outlet and matching plug connector.
- 2. Nitrile seals.
- 3. Hand operated with automatic shutoff when disconnected.
- 4. For indoor or outdoor applications.
- 5. Adjustable, retractable restraining cable.

## C. Y-Pattern Strainers:

- 1. Body: ASTM A 126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
- 2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.
- 3. Strainer Screen: 40-mesh startup strainer, and perforated stainless-steel basket with 50 percent free area.
- 4. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).

## D. Weatherproof Vent Cap: Cast- or malleable-iron increaser fitting with corrosion-resistant wire screen, with free area at least equal to cross-sectional area of connecting pipe and threaded-end connection.

## 2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

## A. Joint Compound and Tape: Suitable for natural gas.

- 1. To be low VOC

- B. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12/D10.12M for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- C. Brazing Filler Metals: Alloy with melting point greater than 1000 deg F (540 deg C) complying with AWS A5.8/A5.8M. Brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are prohibited.

## 2.4 MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVES

- A. See “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles for where each valve type is applied in various services.
- B. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2 (DN 50) and Smaller: Comply with ASME B16.33.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
  - 2. Threaded Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 3. Dryseal Threads on Flare Ends: Comply with ASME B1.20.3.
  - 4. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles.
  - 5. Listing: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for valves 1 inch (25 mm) and smaller.
  - 6. Service Mark: Valves 1-1/4 inches (32 mm) to NPS 2 (DN 50) shall have initials “WOG” permanently marked on valve body.
- C. General Requirements for Metallic Valves, NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and Larger: Comply with ASME B16.38.
  - 1. CWP Rating: 125 psig (862 kPa).
  - 2. Flanged Ends: Comply with ASME B16.5 for steel flanges.
  - 3. Tamperproof Feature: Locking feature for valves indicated in “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles.
  - 4. Service Mark: Initials “WOG” shall be permanently marked on valve body.
- D. One-Piece, Bronze Ball Valve with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  - 2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  - 3. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  - 4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.

5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Packing: Separate packnut with adjustable-stem packing threaded ends.
  7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles.
  8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with “WOG” indicated on valve body.
- E. Two-Piece, Full-Port, Bronze Ball Valves with Bronze Trim: MSS SP-110.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. BrassCraft Manufacturing Company; a Masco company.
    - b. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - c. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
    - d. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - e. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Ball: Chrome-plated bronze.
  4. Stem: Bronze; blowout proof.
  5. Seats: Reinforced TFE; blowout proof.
  6. Packing: Threaded-body packnut design with adjustable-stem packing.
  7. Ends: Threaded, flared, or socket as indicated in “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles.
  8. CWP Rating: 600 psig (4140 kPa).
  9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with “WOG” indicated on valve body.
- F. Bronze Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Lee Brass Company.
    - b. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  2. Body: Bronze, complying with ASTM B 584.
  3. Plug: Bronze.
  4. Ends: Threaded, socket, or flanged as indicated in “Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” and “Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule” Articles.
  5. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
  6. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
  7. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  8. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with “WOG” indicated on valve body.
- G. Cast-Iron, Lubricated Plug Valves: MSS SP-78.



1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Flowserve.
  - b. Homestead Valve; a division of Olson Technologies, Inc.
  - c. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
  - d. Milliken Valve Company.
  - e. Mueller Co.; Gas Products Div.
  - f. R&M Energy Systems, A Unit of Robbins & Myers, Inc.
2. Body: Cast iron, complying with ASTM A 126, Class B.
3. Plug: Bronze or nickel-plated cast iron.
4. Seat: Coated with thermoplastic.
5. Stem Seal: Compatible with natural gas.
6. Ends: Threaded or flanged as indicated in "Underground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" and "Aboveground Manual Gas Shutoff Valve Schedule" Articles.
7. Operator: Square head or lug type with tamperproof feature where indicated.
8. Pressure Class: 125 psig (862 kPa).
9. Listing: Valves NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
10. Service: Suitable for natural-gas service with "WOG" indicated on valve body.

H. PE Ball Valves: Comply with ASME B16.40.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Kerotest Manufacturing Corp.
  - b. Lyall, R. W. & Company, Inc.
  - c. Perfection Corporation; a subsidiary of American Meter Company.
2. Body: PE.
3. Ball: PE.
4. Stem: Acetal.
5. Seats and Seals: Nitrile.
6. Ends: Plain or fusible to match piping.
7. CWP Rating: 80 psig (552 kPa).
8. Operating Temperature: [Minus 20 to plus 140 deg F (Minus 29 to plus 60 deg C).
9. Operator: Nut or flat head for key operation.
10. Include plastic valve extension.
11. Include tamperproof locking feature for valves where indicated on Drawings.

I. Valve Boxes:

1. Cast-iron, two-section box.
2. Top section with cover with "GAS" lettering.
3. Bottom section with base to fit over valve and barrel a minimum of 5 inches (125 mm) in diameter.
4. Adjustable cast-iron extensions of length required for depth of bury.
5. Include tee-handle, steel operating wrench with socket end fitting valve nut or flat head, and with stem of length required to operate valve.

## 2.5 PRESSURE REGULATORS

### A. General Requirements:

1. Single stage and suitable for natural gas.
2. Steel jacket and corrosion-resistant components.
3. Elevation compensator.
4. End Connections: Threaded for regulators NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller; flanged for regulators NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger.

### B. Line Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.80.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Actaris.
  - b. American Meter Company.
  - c. Eclipse Combustion, Inc.
  - d. Fisher Control Valves and Regulators; Division of Emerson Process Management.
  - e. Invensys.
  - f. Maxitrol Company.
  - g. Richards Industries; Jordan Valve Div.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Cast iron or die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.
4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber resistant to gas impurities, abrasion, and deformation at the valve port.
6. Orifice: Aluminum; interchangeable.
7. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
8. Single-port, self-contained regulator with orifice no larger than required at maximum pressure inlet, and no pressure sensing piping external to the regulator.
9. Pressure regulator shall maintain discharge pressure setting downstream, and not exceed 150 percent of design discharge pressure at shutoff.
10. Overpressure Protection Device: Factory mounted on pressure regulator.
11. Atmospheric Vent: Factory- or field-installed, stainless-steel screen in opening if not connected to vent piping.
12. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 2 psig (13.8 kPa).

### C. Appliance Pressure Regulators: Comply with ANSI Z21.18.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Canadian Meter Company Inc.
  - b. Eaton Corporation; Controls Div.
  - c. Harper Wyman Co.
  - d. Maxitrol Company.
  - e. SCP, Inc.
2. Body and Diaphragm Case: Die-cast aluminum.
3. Springs: Zinc-plated steel; interchangeable.

4. Diaphragm Plate: Zinc-plated steel.
5. Seat Disc: Nitrile rubber.
6. Seal Plug: Ultraviolet-stabilized, mineral-filled nylon.
7. Factory-Applied Finish: Minimum three-layer polyester and polyurethane paint finish.
8. Regulator may include vent limiting device, instead of vent connection, if approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
9. Maximum Inlet Pressure: 1 psig (6.9 kPa).

## 2.6 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials with separating nonconductive insulating material. Include end connections compatible with pipes to be joined.
- B. Dielectric Unions:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Hart Industries International, Inc.
    - d. Jomar International Ltd.
    - e. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - f. McDonald, A. Y. Mfg. Co.
    - g. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - h. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).
    - c. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.
- C. Dielectric Flanges:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Company.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    - d. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Wilkins; a Zurn company.
  2. Description:
    - a. Standard: ASSE 1079.
    - b. Factory-fabricated, bolted, companion-flange assembly.
    - c. Pressure Rating: 125 psig (860 kPa) minimum at 180 deg F (82 deg C).

- d. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous; threaded solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

D. Dielectric-Flange Insulating Kits:

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
  - b. Calpico, Inc.
  - c. Central Plastics Company.
  - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- 2. Description:
  - a. Nonconducting materials for field assembly of companion flanges.
  - b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig (1035 kPa).
  - c. Gasket: Neoprene or phenolic.
  - d. Bolt Sleeves: Phenolic or polyethylene.
  - e. Washers: Phenolic with steel backing washers.

## 2.7 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, PE film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored yellow.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine roughing-in for natural-gas piping system to verify actual locations of piping connections before equipment installation.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Inspect natural-gas piping according to the International Fuel Gas Code to determine that natural-gas utilization devices are turned off in piping section affected.
- B. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code requirements for prevention of accidental ignition.

### 3.3 OUTDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Install underground, natural-gas piping buried at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade. Comply with requirements in Division 2 Section “Earthwork” for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.
  - 1. If natural-gas piping is installed less than 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, install it in containment conduit.
- C. Install underground, PE, natural-gas piping according to ASTM D 2774.
- D. Steel Piping with Protective Coating:
  - 1. Apply joint cover kits to pipe after joining to cover, seal, and protect joints.
  - 2. Replace pipe having damaged PE coating with new pipe.
- E. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- F. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each service regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section “Meters and Gages.”

### 3.4 INDOOR PIPING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with the International Fuel Gas Code for installation and purging of natural-gas piping.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, sleeves, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- D. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- E. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- F. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- G. Locate valves for easy access.
- H. Install natural-gas piping at uniform grade of 2 percent down toward drip and sediment traps.
- I. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- J. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

- K. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- L. Comply with requirements in Sections specifying gas-fired appliances and equipment for roughing-in requirements.
- M. Drips and Sediment Traps: Install drips at points where condensate may collect, including service-meter outlets. Locate where accessible to permit cleaning and emptying. Do not install where condensate is subject to freezing.
  - 1. Construct drips and sediment traps using tee fitting with bottom outlet plugged or capped. Use nipple a minimum length of 3 pipe diameters, but not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long and same size as connected pipe. Install with space below bottom of drip to remove plug or cap.
- N. Extend relief vent connections for service regulators, line regulators, and overpressure protection devices to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
- O. Conceal pipe installations in walls, pipe spaces, utility spaces, above ceilings, below grade or floors, and in floor channels unless indicated to be exposed to view.
- P. Concealed Location Installations: Except as specified below, install concealed natural-gas piping and piping installed under the building in containment conduit constructed of steel pipe with welded joints as described in Part 2. Install a vent pipe from containment conduit to outdoors and terminate with weatherproof vent cap.
  - 1. Above Accessible Ceilings: Natural-gas piping, fittings, valves, and regulators may be installed in accessible spaces without containment conduit.
  - 2. In Floors: Install natural-gas piping with welded or brazed joints and protective coating in cast-in-place concrete floors. Cover piping to be cast in concrete slabs with minimum of 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) of concrete. Piping may not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. Do not embed piping in concrete slabs containing quick-set additives or cinder aggregate.
  - 3. In Floor Channels: Install natural-gas piping in floor channels. Channels must have cover and be open to space above cover for ventilation.
  - 4. In Walls or Partitions: Protect tubing installed inside partitions or hollow walls from physical damage using steel striker barriers at rigid supports.
    - a. Exception: Tubing passing through partitions or walls does not require striker barriers.
  - 5. Prohibited Locations:
    - a. Do not install natural-gas piping in or through circulating air ducts, clothes or trash chutes, chimneys or gas vents (flues), ventilating ducts, or dumbwaiter or elevator shafts.
    - b. Do not install natural-gas piping in solid walls or partitions.
- Q. Use eccentric reducer fittings to make reductions in pipe sizes. Install fittings with level side down.
- R. Connect branch piping from top or side of horizontal piping.

- S. Install unions in pipes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller, adjacent to each valve, at final connection to each piece of equipment. Unions are not required at flanged connections.
- T. Do not use natural-gas piping as grounding electrode.
- U. Install strainer on inlet of each line-pressure regulator and automatic or electrically operated valve.
- V. Install pressure gage upstream and downstream from each line regulator. Pressure gages are specified in Division 15 Section "Meters and Gages."
- W. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Division 15 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- X. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Division 15 Section "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."
- Y. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Division 15 Section "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

### 3.5 VALVE INSTALLATION

- A. Install manual gas shutoff valve for each gas appliance ahead of corrugated stainless-steel tubing, aluminum, or copper connector.
- B. Install underground valves with valve boxes.
- C. Install regulators and overpressure protection devices with maintenance access space adequate for servicing and testing.
- D. Install anode for metallic valves in underground PE piping.

### 3.6 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs.
- B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- C. Threaded Joints:
  - 1. Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads complying with ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
  - 3. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full inside diameter of pipe.
  - 4. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dryseal threading is specified.
  - 5. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

D. Welded Joints:

1. Construct joints according to AWS D10.12/D10.12M, using qualified processes and welding operators.
2. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
3. Patch factory-applied protective coating as recommended by manufacturer at field welds and where damage to coating occurs during construction.

E. Flanged Joints: Install gasket material, size, type, and thickness appropriate for natural-gas service. Install gasket concentrically positioned.

F. Flared Joints: Cut tubing with roll cutting tool. Flare tube end with tool to result in flare dimensions complying with SAE J513. Tighten finger tight, then use wrench. Do not overtighten.

### 3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hangers and supports specified in Division 15 Section "Hangers and Supports."

B. Install hangers for horizontal steel piping with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 1 (DN 25) and Smaller: Maximum span, 96 inches (2438 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1-1/4 (DN 32): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2 (DN 40 and DN 50): Maximum span, 108 inches (2743 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
4. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 3-1/2 (DN 65 to DN 90): Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 1/2 inch (13 mm).
5. NPS 4 (DN 100) and Larger: Maximum span, 10 feet (3 m); minimum rod size, 5/8 inch (15.8 mm).

C. Install hangers for horizontal, corrugated stainless-steel tubing with the following maximum spacing and minimum rod sizes:

1. NPS 3/8 (DN 10): Maximum span, 48 inches (1220 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
2. NPS 1/2 (DN 15): Maximum span, 72 inches (1830 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).
3. NPS 3/4 (DN 20) and Larger: Maximum span, 96 inches (2440 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (10 mm).

### 3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Connect to utility's gas main according to utility's procedures and requirements.



- B. Install natural-gas piping electrically continuous, and bonded to gas appliance equipment grounding conductor of the circuit powering the appliance according to NFPA 70.
- C. Install piping adjacent to appliances to allow service and maintenance of appliances.
- D. Connect piping to appliances using manual gas shutoff valves and unions. Install valve within 72 inches (1800 mm) of each gas-fired appliance and equipment. Install union between valve and appliances or equipment.
- E. Sediment Traps: Install tee fitting with capped nipple in bottom to form drip, as close as practical to inlet of each appliance.

### 3.9 LABELING AND IDENTIFYING

- A. Install detectable warning tape directly above gas piping, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

### 3.10 PAINTING

- A. Comply with requirements in Division 9 painting Sections for painting interior and exterior natural-gas piping.
- B. Paint exposed, exterior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Alkyd System: MPI EXT 5.1D.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior alkyd enamel matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior alkyd enamel flat.
    - d. Color: Gray.
- C. Paint exposed, interior metal piping, valves, service regulators, service meters and meter bars, earthquake valves, and piping specialties, except components, with factory-applied paint or protective coating.
  - 1. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
    - a. Prime Coat: Alkyd anticorrosive metal primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex flat.
    - d. Color: Gray.
- D. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-applied finishes with materials and by procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections.
- B. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Test, inspect, and purge natural gas according to the International Fuel Gas Code and authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Natural-gas piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.12 OUTDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE

- A. Underground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. PE pipe and fittings joined by heat fusion, or mechanical couplings; service-line risers with tracer wire terminated in an accessible location.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints, or mechanical couplings. Coat pipe and fittings with protective coating for steel piping.
- B. Aboveground natural-gas piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### 3.13 INDOOR PIPING SCHEDULE FOR SYSTEM PRESSURES LESS THAN 0.5 PSIG (3.45 kPa)

- A. Aboveground, branch piping NPS 1 (DN 25) and smaller shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Corrugated stainless-steel tubing with mechanical fittings having socket or threaded ends to match adjacent piping.
  - 2. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
- B. Aboveground, distribution piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.
- C. Underground, below building, piping shall be one of the following:
  - 1. Steel pipe with malleable-iron fittings and threaded joints.
  - 2. Steel pipe with wrought-steel fittings and welded joints.

### 3.14 ABOVEGROUND MANUAL GAS SHUTOFF VALVE SCHEDULE

- A. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller at service meter shall be one of the following:

1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.
- B. Valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger at service meter shall be one of the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.
  3. Cast-iron, nonlubricated plug valve.
- C. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2 (DN 50) and smaller shall be one of the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full -port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.
- D. Distribution piping valves for pipe sizes NPS 2-1/2 (DN 65) and larger shall be one of the following:
1. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  2. Bronze plug valve.
  3. Cast-iron, lubricated plug valve.
- E. Valves in branch piping for single appliance shall be one of the following:
1. One-piece, bronze ball valve with bronze trim.
  2. Two-piece, full-port, bronze ball valves with bronze trim.
  3. Bronze plug valve.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 23 05 00

## BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Provide labor, materials, equipment, supervision, and incidental services as necessary to complete all BASIC MECHANICAL MATERIALS AND METHODS work as indicated on the Drawings and as specified herein, including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Connection of/to utilization equipment.
  - 2. Grout.
  - 3. Mechanical demolition.
  - 4. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 5. Painting and finishing.
  - 6. Supporting devices for electrical components.
  - 7. Concrete equipment bases.
  - 8. Supports and anchorages.
  - 9. Cutting and patching for mechanical construction.
- B. Demolition: As indicated on the drawings.
- C. Substitutions:
  - 1. The Contractor's base bid must be in accordance with the materials or products specified. Any exceptions to this must be approved in writing by the Engineer, ten (10) days or more prior to bidding.

## 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The following items shall be performed for quality assurance:
  - 1. Perform Work to requirements of the acceptable standards of installation.
  - 2. Use personnel with appropriate experience to perform Work on all systems.
  - 3. Verify that field measurements are as shown on Drawings.
  - 4. Report all discrepancies to Engineer.
  - 5. Conform to all applicable Codes and Standards.
- B. Permits and Inspections:
  - 1. The Contractor shall obtain and pay for all required permits (temporary and permanent), fees, inspections and Certificates of Inspection for the work specified herein as required by any and all applicable laws and/or ordinances. The cost of such permits and certificates shall be included in the Contractor's bid price, unless otherwise directed. Post such permits and Inspection Certificates in a prominent place adjacent to the work.
  - 2. Deliver all certificates of final inspection or approval to the office of the Design Professional.
  - 3. Do not cover any concealed work until final inspection has been made and approval certificates obtained.

#### 1.4 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic and rubber materials:
  - 1. ABS: Acrylonitrile-butadiene-styrene plastic.
  - 2. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 3. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
  - 4. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
  - 5. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 6. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit sufficient copies required to ensure that the Owner has one (1) copy and the Design Professional has one (1) copy.
- B. Submit shop drawings and product data grouped to include complete submittals of related systems, products and accessories in a single submittal. Tabulated type product data sheets are to be clearly marked to indicate specific items.
- C. ALL shop drawings and product data shall be transmitted to the Design Professional within fifteen (15) working days of the Notice to Proceed.
- D. The initial Construction Progress Schedule shall be transmitted to the Design Professional in duplicate within ten (10) working days after the date established in the Notice to Proceed for the Design Professional's review.
- E. Submit shop and installation drawings, which shall serve the purpose of checking the Contractor's interpretation of the design drawings and specifications, and in correlation and coordination of the various trades, and be used by the Contractor's field workers as installation instructions. They shall include a complete schedule of materials, ductwork and equipment, which he/she intends to install for approval by the Engineer, as soon as practicable after the contract award, but in any event, prior to installing any materials or equipment. Provide operations and maintenance materials, which shall include schematic diagrams.
- F. Review submittals and coordinate with equipment furnished under other Sections prior to installation and rough-in. Verify location, size, and type of connections. Coordinate details of equipment connections with supplier and installer.
- G. In general, where specified trade names are mentioned, they are intended to indicate quality, appearance and type of construction required and not to restrict competition. The Engineer's

decisions as to the acceptability of substitute materials will be final and shall be binding on the Contractor.

- H. All manufacturer's drawings, catalog cuts and specifications shall be properly identified with the Engineer's Job Title and Job Number. Each piece of equipment shall be properly identified as to its location and equipment number. Mark dimensions and values in units to match those specified.
- I. Prepare and furnish to the Engineer three (3) bound copies "Operating and Maintenance Manual" on all equipment installed under this Contract.
- J. Welding certificates.
- K. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- L. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
  - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
  - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- M. Operating and Maintenance Manuals.
  - 1. When the project is substantially complete and before the project is taken over by the Owner for maintenance purposes, the Contractor shall be required to provide the Design Professional with three (3) complete sets of written instructions covering the proper operation and maintenance requirements of all equipment furnished under these specifications.
  - 2. The manual shall consist of an indexed loose-leaf binder containing the manufacturer's installation, operating, maintenance, lubrication and repair parts manual for each system component; approved shop drawings including equipment performance data and pump and fan performance curves; test and balance reports; and drawings showing rooms or areas served by each of the various heating, ventilating and air conditioning systems. Small scale drawings will be furnished by the Owner's Engineer / Architect for this purpose if desired. Should clarification be required on any of the above requirements, sample copies of acceptable manuals are available for inspection. All outsize sheets shall be recopied to provide uniformity of size.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. As indicated in each of the specification sections.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. The accompanying Drawings show the arrangement, general design and extent of the work and are diagrammatical with equipment in its general location, except that in certain cases the drawings may include details giving exact location and arrangement.
- B. The Drawings are not intended to be scaled for roughing-in or to serve as shop drawings. If drawings are required for this purpose, or must be made from field measurements, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to prepare such drawings.
- C. The Plans and Specifications are intended to include all work and materials for the entire completion of the work. Any item of material, labor or detail required for proper execution and completion of the work and omitted from either the plans and specifications or both, but

obviously understood and or required to make all systems complete and operable, shall be furnished as part of the contract without additional cost even though not specified or shown.

- D. Before any work is installed, and before any equipment is fabricated or purchased, the Contractor shall consult all contract documents in addition to the Mechanical Drawings, including Architectural, Structural, Civil/Site, Electrical and others, insofar as they may affect his work or affect the location of equipment, piping or duct work; and shall be held to be thoroughly conversant with the construction problems insofar as they affect his work and to coordinate with the other trades in doing their work and locating equipment.
- E. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- F. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- G. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

#### 1.8 CONFLICT BETWEEN DRAWINGS AND THESE SPECIFICATIONS

- A. The drawings and these specifications are to be treated as mutually equal. ONE DOES NOT TAKE PRECEDENCE OVER THE OTHER.
- B. Where there is a conflict between the drawings and the specifications, the contractor SHALL contact the Engineer for clarification.
- C. In the event the Engineer is not available to respond to the conflict, the contractor SHALL ASSUME THAT THE HIGHER QUALITY ITEM SHALL BE BID.

#### 1.9 EXAMINATION AND ACCEPTANCE OF WORK IN PLACE

- A. Examine work in place on which specified work is dependent. Defects which may influence satisfactory completion and performance of specified work shall be corrected in accordance with the requirements of the applicable section of work prior to the commencement of the specified work. Commencement shall be construed as work in a place being acceptable to satisfying the requirements of this section.

#### 1.10 OMISSIONS

- A. The intent of these Specifications and Drawings is to secure a complete and operating job in all regards. If any major or obvious omissions exist, the Contractor shall question such items prior to submitting his/her bid; furthermore, the omission from the Drawings and Specifications of any minor detail of construction or installation, shall not relieve the Contractor from providing and installing same. Such omissions shall not entitle the Contractor to make claim for extras for materials or labor.

#### 1.11 STRUCTURAL DIFFICULTIES

- A. Should any field conditions prevent the locating of any mechanical equipment as shown on the plans, the Contractor is required to make any minor deviations, as determined by the Engineer, without extra cost.

#### 1.12 FIELD MEASUREMENTS

- A. Take field measurements to verify or supplement dimensions indicated.

- B. All measurements necessary for the proper installation of the work shall be taken in the field.

#### 1.13 LAWS, REGULATIONS, CODES AND STANDARDS

- A. All work and materials shall be in conformity with all applicable Federal, State and Local Laws, codes and regulations, as well as applicable current standards.
- B. Where the requirements of the Contract Documents exceed those of the laws, regulations and standards mentioned above, the requirements of the Contract Documents shall govern.
- C. All equipment and materials shall be listed by Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., except for classes of equipment not available with such listings.
- D. Obtain permits and inspections from the authority(ies) having jurisdiction.

#### 1.14 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. The work shall comply with the requirements of the latest edition of the following standard specifications, as applicable.
  - 1. MBC: Michigan Building Code
  - 2. MPC: Michigan Plumbing Code
  - 3. MMC: Michigan Mechanical Code
  - 4. MEC: Michigan Energy Code
  - 5. MIOSHA: Michigan Regulations for Safety and Health.
  - 6. ASHRAE: Standard for the design, fabrication and installation of HVAC systems.
  - 7. SMACNA: Standard for the design, fabrication and installation of duct work.
  - 8. NFPA: National Plumbing Association.
  - 9. ASME: American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
  - 10. ASTM: American Society for Testing Materials.
  - 11. ANSI: American National Standards Institute.
  - 12. UL: Underwriters Laboratories

#### 1.15 CURRENT CHARACTERISTICS

- A. All motors 1/2 HP and greater shall be 3 phase, 208V or 460V, 60HZ, unless otherwise noted.
- B. All motors less than 1/2 horsepower shall be single phase, 120V, 60HZ, unless otherwise noted.

#### 1.16 ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

- A. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- B. The mechanical contractor shall supply all starters, safety switches and other motor control equipment necessary to properly operate and control all controls for mechanical equipment shall be installed by the electrical contractor.



### 1.17 MAINTENANCE

- A. Contractor shall be responsible for maintenance of equipment and systems installed until final acceptance by Owner.

### 1.18 WARRANTIES

- A. In the event that any part of the work or equipment fails (abuse and causes beyond control of the Contractor excepted), within this period of guarantee, it shall be replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DEMOLITION

- A. Disconnect, demolish, and remove plumbing systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 3. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  - 4. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  - 5. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- B. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Character of Work: The installation shall be executed in a workmanlike manner and shall present a neat mechanical appearance when completed.
- C. Laying Out Work
  - 1. Layout equipment in accordance with the contract documents and the manufacturers recommended practice including provision of adequate space for maintenance. Review layout with the Design Professional prior to installation.
  - 2. Check drawings of other trades to verify spaces in which work will be installed. Maintain maximum headroom and space conditions at all points. Where headroom or space conditions appear inadequate, notify the Design Professional before proceeding with installation.

3. If directed by the Design Professional, the contractor shall make reasonable modifications in the layout as required to permit proper execution of the work and to prevent conflict with work of other trades.
  4. Work shall be installed so as to be readily for operation, maintenance and repair. Minor deviations from drawings may be made to accomplish this. Changes shall not be made without approval of the Construction Representative.
- D. Connection to Existing Systems
1. Connections to existing system shall be arranged in advance and shall be made at the convenience of the Owner.
  2. Existing water systems that must be drained for contract work must be refilled and purged of air at the job end. The contractor shall replace any water treatment that was removed during the system draining. The Owner shall be consulted as to the type and quantity of water treatment.
- E. Accessibility
1. Access doors/panels shall be provided in all pipe chases, soffits, walls and ceilings.
  2. Coordinate the exact location with the work of other trades.
  3. Verify the exact quantity, size and location of the required access panels/doors after the installation of systems and equipment requiring access, and prior to the closure of the affected ceilings and building assemblies.
- 3.3 STRUCTURAL DIFFICULTIES
- A. Should any field conditions prevent the locating of any equipment as shown on the plans, the Contractor is required to make any minor deviations, as determined by the Engineer, without extra cost.
- 3.4 FIELD MEASUREMENTS
- A. Take field measurements to verify or supplement dimensions indicated.
- B. All measurements necessary for the proper installation of the work shall be taken in the field.
- 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
- A. Site Tests
1. Furnish all labor and equipment necessary for the completion of all tests called for in these specifications.
  2. Arrange with all authorities to complete the tests without unnecessary delays so that the work may progress as rapidly as possible. Notify the Construction Representative in advance of all tests, at least 24 hours before starting any tests.
  3. Tests shall be repeated after any defects disclosed thereby have been made good or the work replaced, if in the judgment of the Construction Representative, it is deemed necessary.
  4. Test Equipment: Instrumentation shall be provided as necessary and appropriate to perform the work. The instrument shall be factory calibrated and shall be used with the factory-determined application factors. When reasonable doubt of accuracy exists, recalibration of any or all instrumentation shall be performed as requested by the Architect /Engineer.

### 3.6 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. No cutting or patching shall be done which is liable to impair the strength of the building, without the approval of the Engineer.
- B. Cut, channel, chase, and drill floors, walls, partitions, ceilings, and other surfaces required to permit electrical installations. Perform cutting by skilled mechanics of trades involved.
- C. All openings made by the Contractor shall be neatly patched by him after the work is done. Repair and refinish disturbed finish materials and other surfaces to match adjacent undisturbed surfaces. Install new fireproofing where existing fire-stopping has been disturbed. Repair and refinish materials and other surfaces by skilled mechanics of trades involved.

### 3.7 PLUMBING EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.
- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### 3.8 PAINTING

- A. Painting of plumbing systems, equipment, and components is specified in other sections of these specifications.
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### 3.9 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4" (100 mm) larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18" (450 mm) centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use 3000 psi (20.7 MPa), 28-day compressive strength concrete and reinforcement.

### 3.10 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### 3.11 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.
- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

### 3.12 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

### 3.13 OPERATING TESTS

- A. Following the complete installation of all materials and equipment covered by these Specifications, the Contractor shall conduct operating tests on the various systems installed to demonstrate that all equipment is in proper operating condition, correctly adjusted and calibrated for satisfactory functional and operating efficiency, as outlined hereinafter.

### 3.14 ACCEPTANCE OF INSTALLATION

- A. The Engineer may accept an equipment system installation as substantially complete when:
  - 1. All components of the system are installed.
  - 2. All factory test(s) have been approved by the Engineer.
  - 3. All performance shop test(s) have been approved by the Engineer.
  - 4. Field start-up activities have been completed and approved by the Engineer.
  - 5. The required equipment has met the performance requirements.
  - 6. All required Owner's personnel have been trained.
  - 7. The certificate from the manufacturer stating that the installation of the equipment is satisfactory, that the unit has been satisfactorily tested, is ready for operation, and that the operating personnel have been suitably instructed in the operation, lubrication, and care of the unit have been submitted.
  - 8. The O & M Manuals have been approved by the Engineer.

3.15 GUARANTEE

- A. The Contractor shall provide a written guarantee to the Owner on the work and equipment which shall be good for one (1) year or longer as may be specified hereinafter.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 23 05 01

## MOTORS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes basic requirements for factory-installed and field-installed motors.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Factory-Installed Motor: A motor installed by motorized-equipment manufacturer as a component of equipment.
- B. Field-Installed Motor: A motor installed at Project site and not factory installed as an integral component of motorized equipment.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data for Field-Installed Motors: For each type and size of motor, provide nameplate data and ratings; shipping, installed, and operating weights; mounting arrangements; size, type, and location of winding terminations; conduit entry and ground lug locations; and information on coatings or finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings for Field-Installed Motors: Dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Include the following:
  - 1. Each installed unit's type and details.
  - 2. Nameplate legends.
  - 3. Diagrams of power and control wiring. Provide schematic wiring diagram for each type of motor and for each control scheme.
- C. Manufacturer Seismic Qualification Certification: Submit certification that motors, accessories, and components will withstand seismic forces. Include the following:
  - 1. Basis of Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
    - a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."
  - 2. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
- D. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- E. Test Reports: Written reports specified in Parts 2 and 3.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For field-installed motors to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain field-installed motors of a single type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Product Options for Field-Installed Motors: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of motors and are based on the specific system indicated.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Existing Utilities: Do not interrupt utilities serving facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary utility services according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Engineer at least two days in advance of proposed utility interruptions. Identify extent and duration of utility interruptions.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary utilities.
  - 3. Do not proceed with utility interruptions without Engineer's written permission.

### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate features of motors installed units, and accessory devices. Provide motors that are:
  - 1. Compatible with the following:
    - a. Magnetic controllers.
    - b. Multispeed controllers.
    - c. Reduced-voltage controllers.
  - 2. Designed and labeled for use with variable frequency controllers, and suitable for use throughout speed range without overheating.
  - 3. Matched to torque and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 4. Matched to ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
- B. Coordinate motor support with requirements for driven load; access for maintenance and motor replacement; installation of accessories, belts, belt guards; and adjustment of sliding rails for belt tensioning.
- C. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in other sections of these specifications.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motor starters shall be provided by the mechanical contractor. Where the starters are not mounted on the equipment, they shall be installed by the Electrical Contractor.
- B. Motor requirements apply to factory-installed and field-installed motors except as follows:

1. Different ratings, performance, or characteristics for motor(s) may be specified in other Section(s) of these specifications.
2. Manufacturer for a factory-installed motor requires ratings, performance, or characteristics, other than those specified in this Section, to meet performance specified.

## 2.2 MOTOR STARTERS

### A. Manual Motor Starter:

1. NEMA ICS 2; AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller with overload relay, red pilot light, auxiliary contact, and push button operator.
2. Fractional horsepower manual starter shall meet NEMA ICS 2; AC general-purpose Class A manually operated, full-voltage controller for fractional horsepower induction motors, with thermal overload unit, red pilot light, and toggle operator.
3. Enclosure shall meet NEMA ICS 6; Type 1.

### B. Magnetic motor starter shall meet NEMA ICS 2.

1. Full voltage motor starters shall be AC general-purpose Class A magnetic controller for induction motors rated in horsepower.

### C. Furnish properly tagged starters for all motors.

### D. Furnish and install all heater elements for overload protective devices. Elements shall be sized and selected based on nameplate rating on the motors of the pieces of equipment being installed.

### E. Mount all motor starters and wire all final connections between the starters and motors.

### F. All starters shall be furnished with an "ON-OFF-AUTO" switch and indicating lights mounted in the cover of the starter.

## 2.3 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

### A. Motors 1/2 HP and Larger: Three phase, unless otherwise noted.

### B. Motors smaller than 1/2 HP: Single phase, unless otherwise noted.

### C. Frequency Rating: 60 Hz.

### D. Voltage Rating: NEMA standard voltage selected to operate on nominal circuit voltage to which motor is connected.

### E. Service Factor: 1.15 for open drip proof motors; 1.0 for totally enclosed motors.

### F. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105°F (40°C) and at altitude of 3,300 feet (1005 m) above sea level.

### G. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

### H. Enclosure: Open drip proof.

## 2.4 POLYPHASE MOTORS

### A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.



- B. Efficiency: Standard efficiency according to NEMA MG 1, Para. 12.59 and Table 12-10.
- C. Stator: Copper windings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Multispeed motors shall have separate winding for each speed.
- D. Rotor: Squirrel cage, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Bearings: Double-shielded, pre-lubricated ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Insulation: Class F, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- I. Enclosure: Cast iron for motors 7.5 hp and larger; rolled steel for motors smaller than 7.5 hp.
  - 1. Finish: Gray enamel.

## 2.5 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Inrush Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Designed with critical vibration frequencies outside operating range of controller output.
  - 2. Temperature Rise: Matched to rating for Class B insulation.
  - 3. Insulation: Class H.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.
- C. Rugged-Duty Motors: Totally enclosed, with 1.25 minimum service factor, greased bearings, integral condensate drains, and capped relief vents. Windings insulated with nonhygroscopic material.
  - 1. Finish: Chemical-resistant paint over corrosion-resistant primer.
- D. Source Quality Control: Perform the following tests on each motor according to NEMA MG 1:
  - 1. Measure winding resistance.
  - 2. Read no-load current and speed at rated voltage and frequency.
  - 3. Measure locked rotor current at rated frequency.
  - 4. Perform high-potential test.

## 2.6 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

- A. Type: One of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split-phase start, capacitor run.
  - 3. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Shaded-Pole Motors: For motors 1/20 hp and smaller only.
- C. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor

insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

- D. Bearings: Ball type for belt-connected motors and other motors with high radial forces on motor shaft; sealed, pre-lubricated-sleeve type for other single-phase motors.
- E. Source Quality Control: Perform the following tests on each motor according to NEMA MG 1:
  - 1. Measure winding resistance.
  - 2. Read no-load current and speed at rated voltage and frequency.
  - 3. Measure locked rotor current at rated frequency.
  - 4. Perform high-potential test.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas to receive field-installed motors for compliance with requirements, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine roughing-in of conduit systems to verify actual locations of conduit connections before motor installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 MOTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Anchor each motor assembly to base, adjustable rails, or other support, arranged and sized according to manufacturer's written instructions. Attach by bolting. Level and align with load transfer link.
- B. Install motors on concrete bases complying with other sections of these specifications.
- C. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in other sections of these specifications.

#### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
  - 1. Run each motor with its controller. Demonstrate correct rotation, alignment, and speed at motor design load.
  - 2. Test interlocks and control features for proper operation.
  - 3. Verify that current in each phase is within nameplate rating.
- B. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
- C. Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field quality-control testing:
- D. Testing: Perform the following field quality-control testing:
  - 1. Perform each electrical test and visual and mechanical inspection stated in NETA ATS, Section 7.15.1. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.

- E. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform the following:
  - 1. Inspect field-assembled components, equipment installation, and piping and electrical connections for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
  - 3. Verify bearing lubrication.
  - 4. Verify proper motor rotation.
  - 5. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:
    - a. Test procedures used.
    - b. Test results that comply with requirements.
    - c. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance.

#### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Align motors, bases, shafts, pulleys and belts. Tension belts according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. After completing equipment installation, inspect unit components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.
- B. Clean motors, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 53  
MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
  - 1. Equipment nameplates.
  - 2. Equipment markers.
  - 3. Equipment signs.
  - 4. Access panel and door markers.
  - 5. Pipe markers.
  - 6. Duct markers.
  - 7. Stencils.
  - 8. Valve tags.
  - 9. Valve schedules.
  - 10. Warning tags.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustic ceilings and similar concealment.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Metal, with data engraved or stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment.
  - 1. Data:
    - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
    - c. Labels of tested compliances.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
  - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
  - 1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
  - 2. Data:
    - a. Name and plan number.
    - b. Equipment service.
    - c. Design capacity.
    - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
  - 3. Size: 2½ by 4 inches (64 by 100 mm) for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4½ by 6 inches (115 by 150 mm) for equipment.
- C. Equipment Signs: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2, black surface, black phenolic core, with white melamine sub-core, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate in sizes required for message. Provide holes for mechanical fastening.
  - 1. Data: Instructions for operation of equipment and for safety procedures.
  - 2. Engraving: Manufacturer's standard letter style, of sizes and with terms to match equipment identification.
  - 3. Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm), unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Retain and edit subparagraph above or first subparagraph below.
  - 5. Thickness: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) for units up to 20 sq. in. (130 sq. cm) or 8 inches (200 mm) in length, and 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for larger units.
  - 6. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- D. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) center hole for attachment.
  - 1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or contact-type, permanent adhesive.

### 2.2 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES

- A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
  - 1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.

3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Full-band pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
  4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Either full-band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
  5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- B. Pre-tensioned Pipe Markers: Pre-coiled semi-rigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without adhesive.
- C. Shaped Pipe Markers: Preformed semi-rigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe with mechanical fasteners that do not penetrate insulation vapor barrier.
- D. Self-Adhesive Pipe Markers: Plastic with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.
- E. Plastic Tape: Continuously printed, vinyl tape at least 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick with pressure-sensitive, permanent-type, self-adhesive back.
1. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): 3/4 inch (19 mm) minimum.
  2. Width for Markers on Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) or Larger: 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
- 2.3 DUCT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES
- A. Duct Markers: Engraved, color-coded laminated plastic. Include direction and quantity of airflow and duct service (such as supply, return, and exhaust). Include contact-type, permanent adhesive.
- 2.4 STENCILS
- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (32 mm) for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch (19 mm) for access panel and door markers, equipment markers, equipment signs, and similar operational instructions.
1. Stencil Material: Metal or fiberboard.
  2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel black, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
- 2.5 VALVE TAGS
- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2 inch (13-mm) numbers, with numbering scheme approved by Engineer. Provide 5/32 inch (4 mm) hole for fastener.
1. Material: 0.032-inch- (0.8-mm-) thick brass.
  2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link chain.
- 2.6 WARNING TAGS
- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags; of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
1. Size: 3 by 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub> inches (75 by 133 mm) minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.

3. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other sections of these specifications. If more than single-type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

#### 3.2 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have a nameplate or has a nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
  1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
  2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  5. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- B. Install equipment markers with permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated.
  1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  2. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  3. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
    - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
    - b. Fire department hose valves and hose stations.
    - c. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
    - d. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
    - e. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
    - f. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
    - g. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
    - h. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
    - i. Tanks and pressure vessels.
    - j. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.

- C. Stenciled Equipment Marker Option: Stenciled markers may be provided instead of laminated-plastic equipment markers, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch (25 mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- D. Install equipment signs with screws or permanent adhesive on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Locate signs where accessible and visible.
  - 1. Identify mechanical equipment with equipment markers in the following color codes:
    - a. Green: For cooling equipment and components.
    - b. Yellow: For heating equipment and components.
    - c. Green and Yellow Orange: For combination cooling and heating equipment and components.
    - d. Brown: For energy-reclamation equipment and components.
  - 2. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  - 3. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  - 4. Include signs for the following general categories of equipment:
    - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
    - b. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
    - c. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
    - d. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
    - e. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
    - f. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
    - g. Tanks and pressure vessels.
    - h. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- E. Stenciled Equipment Sign Option: Stenciled signs may be provided instead of laminated-plastic equipment signs, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch (25 mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- F. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

### 3.3 PIPING IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
  - 1. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Pretensioned pipe markers. Use size to ensure a tight fit.
  - 2. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches (150 mm): Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, at least 3/4 inch (19 mm) wide, lapped at least 1½ inches (38 mm) at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
  - 3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Shaped pipe markers. Use size to match pipe and secure with fasteners.



4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches (150 mm) and Larger: Self-adhesive pipe markers. Use color-coded, self-adhesive plastic tape, at least 1½ inches (38 mm) wide, lapped at least 3 inches (75 mm) at both ends of pipe marker, and covering full circumference of pipe.
- B. Stenciled Pipe Marker Option: Stenciled markers may be provided instead of manufactured pipe markers, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe markers with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles] [complying with ASME A13.1 on each piping system.
  1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:
  1. Near each valve and control device.
  2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and non-accessible enclosures.
  4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet (7.6 m) in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

### 3.4 DUCT IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install duct markers with permanent adhesive on air ducts in the following color codes:
  1. Green: For cold air supply ducts.
  2. Yellow: For hot-air supply ducts.
  3. Blue: For exhaust, outside, relief, return, and mixed air ducts.
  4. ASME A13.1 Colors and Designs: For hazardous material exhaust.
  5. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches (600 mm), 1/2 inch (13 mm) for viewing distances up to 72 inches (1830 mm), and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
- B. Stenciled Duct Marker Option: Stenciled markers, showing service and direction of flow, may be provided instead of laminated-plastic duct markers, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch (25 mm) high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- C. Locate markers near points where ducts enter into concealed spaces and at maximum intervals of 50 feet (15 m) in each space where ducts are exposed or concealed by removable ceiling system.

### 3.5 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.

- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape:
  - a. Cold Water: 1½ inches (38 mm) round.
  - b. Hot Water: 1½ inches (38 mm) round.
  - c. Fire Protection: 1½ inches (38 mm) round.
  - d. Gas: 1½ inches (38 mm) round.
  - e. Steam: 1½ inches (38 mm) round.
2. Valve-Tag Color: Natural.
3. Letter Color: Black.

### 3.6 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION

- A. Write the required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 05 93  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Provide labor, materials, equipment, supervision, and incidental services as necessary to complete all TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING as indicated on the Drawings and specified herein, including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of air systems.
  - 2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of hydronic systems.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. This Specification shall provide for the services of an INDEPENDENT TEST AND BALANCE AGENCY, which specializes in the balancing and testing of heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems; to provide testing and balancing of air moving equipment and distribution, heating equipment and distribution, all as shown on the accompanying plans and specifications; to provide sound tests. The T&B agency shall be a member of the AABC or NEBBS.
- B. Measurement, testing, adjusting and balancing of the systems shall be performed in accordance with **ASHRAE Standard 111-1988**. Particular attention is directed to Paragraph 8.6.2.3(a) thru (d). Air measurements in both rectangular and circular ducts may be performed using the "Log-Tchebycheff rule".
- C. Upon completion of the HVAC system, the test and balance agency shall perform the tests listed hereinafter, compile the test data, and submit **seven (7) copies** of the complete test data to the Engineer for evaluation and approval. The Test & Balance Agency shall comply with all standards as set forth by this national organization. All instruments used by this agency shall be accurately calibrated and maintained in good working order. If requested, the tests shall be conducted in the presence of the Engineer and a representative of the Owner.
- D. Test & Balance Agency shall visit job site twice during the progress of construction at times designated by the Engineer to assure that all facilities required for his/her performance are provided properly.
- E. Test & Balance Agency shall review and comment upon all shop drawings related to his/her work.
- F. Air and water balance and testing shall not begin until the system has been completed and is in full working order. The Contractor shall put all heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems and equipment into full operation and shall continue the operation of same during each working of testing and balancing.

- G. Test and Balance Agency shall include an extended warranty of 90 days, after completion of Test and Balance work, during which time the Engineer, at his/her discretion, may request a recheck, or resetting of any outlet, supply air fan, or exhaust fan as listed in test report. The Test & Balance Agency shall provide technicians to assist the Engineer in making any tests he/she may require during this period of time. The first thirty (30) days of this warranty period shall be designated as the tuning period. This period shall begin after completion of the Test and Balance work and after occupancy by the Owner.
- H. During the thirty (30) day tuning period, the Contractor together with the Test and Balance agency and the Engineer, shall tune the systems, apparatus and controls to suit the Owner's requirements in his/her operations.
- I. The tuning period shall commence upon a date to be selected by the Owner's Operating Engineer and the Engineer's Representative and the period shall continue for one (1) calendar month thereafter. The Owner's operating Engineer will receive all complaints regarding the performance of the heating, ventilating, and air conditioning systems; the Contractor and the Engineer shall visit the site and call upon the Owner's Operating Engineer each day of the tuning period. The Test and Balance Agency shall be required to have a representative at the building for an average of two (2) days per week during the tuning period; these days to be determined by the Engineer. The Engineer and the Contractor shall analyze and organize the complaints and promptly affect the correction work necessary. They shall maintain a comprehensive log of the complaints, showing the time, analysis, corrective work and results.
- J. The correct function and sequence of controls shall be verified prior to the start of the measurement and testing. Refer to ASHRAE 111 Sections 10 and 11.
- K. The system shall be simulated for seasonal conditions. Pressure differential and temperature differential tests shall be made and recorded upon completion of flow tests.
- L. If opposite season operating conditions cannot be simulated, testing of systems and equipment shall be scheduled for the earliest convenient date during the opposite season, and a supplemental report of results issued.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. All submittals shall conform to previous sections of these specifications. Tabulated type product data sheets are to be clearly marked to indicate specific items.
- B. Prior to commencing work, submit draft reports indicating data required. Include detailed procedures, sample report forms, and copy of AABC National Project Performance Guaranty.
- C. Submit prior to final acceptance of project and for inclusion in operating and maintenance manuals. Provide in soft cover, letter size, 3-ring binder, with index page and tabs, and cover identification. Include reduced scale drawings with air outlets and equipment identified to correspond with data sheets, and indicating thermostat locations.
- D. AABC National Standards for Total System Balance NEBB forms.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

- A. Before commencing work, verify that the systems are complete and operable.
- B. Report any defects of deficiencies or abnormal conditions in mechanical systems which prevent system balance.
- C. Beginning of work means acceptance of existing conditions.
- D. Recorded data shall represent actually measured or observed condition.
- E. Permanently mark settings of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices. Set and lock memory stops.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

- A. Adjust air handling systems to plus or minus 5% for supply systems and plus or minus 5% for return and exhaust systems from figures indicated.
- B. Adjust hydronic systems to plus or minus 5% of design conditions indicated.

## 3.3 LOCATION OF BALANCING DEVICES

- A. The location of balancing devices is important in assuring accurate measurements of fluid flow and proper balancing without creating noise in the system.
- B. Air balancing dampers shall be of the single or multi-leaf type with a suitable locking quadrant. Splitters are generally not acceptable. Dampers shall be installed in all of the following by the sheet metal contractor:
  - 1. In all branch ducts of the low pressure side of the supply system and in all of the branch ducts of the return and exhaust systems. The dampers shall be located as close to the branch connection to the main as possible.
  - 2. In all take-offs to the terminal devices located as close to the take-off connection to the branch as possible. The integral damper in the terminal devices shall not be used for balancing.
- C. Water balancing valves shall be of the plug or butterfly type with a suitable locking device or means of marking position of valve. Balancing valves shall be installed in all of the following locations by the heating contractor:
  - 1. At the return connection of each branch to the main return.
  - 2. At the outlet of each and every coil and terminal device in the system.
  - 3. In the by-pass lines of all three-way valves.
- D. Pipe line openings for pressure readings shall be valved with 1/4" flare outlet shut-off valves as follows by the heating contractor:
  - 1. At the pump suction and discharge.
  - 2. At the inlet and outlet of various primary and terminal elements in the system.
- E. Flow meter openings for portable flow meters shall be plugged 1/4" short nipple and gate valve located at a distance of no less than 5 pipe diameters downstream. Pipe openings shall be clean

with all burrs removed from inside the pipe to obtain as little disturbance to flow as possible. Flow meter openings shall be installed at all of the following locations:

1. In the main supply or return.
  2. In each branch return of the system.
  3. In the supply or return to each coil and terminal device.
- F. In the circuit to each chiller, condenser, boiler, and converter, wherever more than one (1) of each is used in parallel flow operation.

### 3.4 AIR SYSTEM PROCEDURE

- A. Adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required or design supply, return, and exhaust air quantities.
- B. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct.
- C. Measure air quantities at air inlets and outlets.
- D. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to extent that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Effect volume control by duct internal devices such as dampers.
- E. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
- F. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Allow for 50% loading of filters.
- G. Adjust automatic outside air, return air, and exhaust air dampers for design conditions.
- H. Measure temperature conditions across outside air, return air, and exhaust air dampers to check leakage.
- I. Where modulating dampers are provided, take measurements and balance at extreme conditions.
- J. Test and Balance Agency shall provide not less than the following:
  1. Test and adjust all fan RPM to design requirements.
  2. Test and record all fan motor full load amperes.
  3. Make Pitot Tube traverse of main supply, return and exhaust ducts and obtain design CFM at all supply, return and exhaust air fans.
  4. Test and record system static pressure, suction and discharge.
  5. Test and adjust system for design re-circulated air, CFM.
  6. Test and adjust system for design minimum CFM outside air by readings of return, outside and mixed air temperatures.
  7. Test and record entering air temperatures. (D.B. heating and cooling; W.B. cooling).
  8. Test and record leaving air temperatures. (D.B. heating and cooling; W.B. cooling).
  9. Adjust all main supply and return air ducts to proper design CFM.
  10. Adjust all zones and dampers to proper design CFM.
  11. Test and adjust each diffuser, grille, and register to within 5% of design requirements.
- K. Each grille, diffuser and register shall be identified as to location and area.
- L. Size, type and manufacture of diffusers, grilles, registers and all tested equipment shall be identified and listed. Manufacturer's ratings on all equipment shall be used to make required calculations.

- M. Readings and tests of diffusers, grilles and registers shall include required FPM velocity and test resultant velocity, required CFM and test resultant CFM after adjustments.
- N. In cooperation with the control manufacturer's representative, setting adjustments of automatically operated dampers to operate as specified, indicated and/or noted. All controls shall be checked for proper calibrations and all controls requiring adjustment by control installers shall be listed.
- O. All diffusers, grilles, and registers shall be adjusted to minimize draft in all areas.
- P. As a part of the work, the Contractor shall make any changes in the pulleys, belts, and dampers or the addition of dampers required for correct balance as required at no additional cost to Owner.

### 3.5 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME SYSTEMS (VAV)

- A. Additional procedures required for balancing VAV systems are as follows, depending on whether the VAV controller is pressure dependent or pressure independent.
- B. VAV System with Pressure Dependent VAV Volume Control Assemblies (Boxes). The balance of this type system is constantly changing with loading changes; therefore, any balancing procedure will not produce repeatable data unless system load, configuration, supply pressure, and thermostat settings are the same as recorded and tested.
  - 1. Set selected thermostats for box-maximum airflow, such that the sum total airflow rate of assemblies equals the fan design flow rate during the balancing procedure. (Determined by diversity factor). System pressure controls may have to be reset so supply fan volume controller delivers design airflow rate.
  - 2. Proceed to balance the maximum airflow boxes and related downstream terminals according to the procedure selected under Air System Balancing. Treat the assembly automatic damper the same as a volume control damper on a branch duct.
  - 3. Put one (1) maximum airflow box at a time on minimum by setting the thermostat. Adjust box controls for minimum airflow. Continue until all maximum airflow boxes have been adjusted for minimum airflow, then returned to maximum.
  - 4. Adjust assembly motorized damper only as recommended by the manufacturer.
  - 5. Proceed to balance one (1) at a time, all of the boxes which were set on minimum for diversity.
  - 6. With all boxes except diversity group set at maximum flow, measure and record the total supply and return airflow rates and also the supply system constant control led static pressure.
  - 7. Repeat step (6) above with all boxes set for minimum flow.
  - 8. Reset all controls for normal operation.
- C. VAV Systems with Pressure Independent Volume Control Assemblies (Boxes)
  - 1. Set selected thermostats for box maximum airflow, and the remainder for minimum airflow, such that the sum total airflow rate of assemblies equals the fan design flow rate of assemblies equals the fan design flow rate. (Determined by diversity factor). System pressure controls may have to be reset so supply fan volume controller delivers design airflow rate.
  - 2. Test the inlet static pressure at several of the most difficult to supply boxes and make system adjustments for adequate pressure at the inlet of all assemblies to provide the required airflow rate.
  - 3. Proceed to balance the maximum airflow boxes and related downstream terminals according to procedure selected.

4. Put one (1) maximum airflow box at a time on minimum flow. Test the minimum flow by calculations based on change of static pressure in the assembly discharge duct or by the sum of air terminal flows.
5. Some controllers may require adjustment of maximum flow before minimum flow adjustment.
6. Proceed to balance, one (1) at a time, all of the boxes which were set at minimum for diversity.
7. With selected assemblies at maximum flow, and the remainder for minimum flow to suit diversity factor, measure and record the total supply and return airflow rates and also the supply system constant control led static pressure.
8. Repeat (7) above with all assemblies set for minimum flow.
9. Reset all controls for normal operation.

### 3.6 PROCEDURES FOR HEAT-TRANSFER COILS

- A. Water Coils: Measure the following data for each coil:
1. Entering- and leaving-water temperature.
  2. Water flow rate.
  3. Water pressure drop.
  4. Dry-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air.
  5. Wet-bulb temperature of entering and leaving air for cooling coils.
  6. Airflow.
  7. Air pressure drop.

### 3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

- A. Motors, 1/2 HP and Larger: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:
1. Manufacturer, model, and serial numbers.
  2. Motor horsepower rating.
  3. Motor rpm.
  4. Efficiency rating.
  5. Nameplate and measured voltage, each phase.
  6. Nameplate and measured amperage, each phase.
  7. Starter thermal-protection-element rating.
- B. Motors Driven by Variable-Frequency Controllers: Test for proper operation at speeds varying from minimum to maximum. Test the manual bypass for the controller to prove proper operation. Record observations, including controller manufacturer, model and serial numbers, and nameplate data.

### 3.8 WATER SYSTEM PROCEDURE

- A. Adjust water systems to provide required or design quantities.



- B. Use calibrated fittings or equipment and pressure gages to determine flow rates for system balance. Where not installed, base flow balance on temperature difference across heat transfer elements.
- C. Effect system balance with automatic control valves fully open to heat transfer elements.
- D. Effect adjustment of water distribution systems by means of balancing cocks, valves, and fittings.
- E. The Test & Balance Agency shall provide not less than the following for Phase One:
  - 1. Open all valves to full open position. Close coil bypass stop valves.
  - 2. Have contractor remove and clean all strainers.
  - 3. Examine water in the hot water heating system and determine if water has been treated and cleaned.
  - 4. Check pump rotation.
  - 5. Check expansion tanks to determine that they are not air bound and the system is completely full of water.
  - 6. Check all air vents at high points of water systems and determine all are installed and operating freely.
  - 7. Set all temperature controls so coils are calling for full cooling.
  - 8. Check operating of automatic bypass valve.
  - 9. Check temperatures and pressure of steam to design requirements.
  - 10. Complete air balance must have been accomplished before actual water balance begins.
- F. The Test and Balance Agency shall provide not less than the following for Phase Two:
  - 1. Proceed to balance each hot water and chilled water coil.
  - 2. Upon completion of flow readings and adjustments at coils, mark all settings and record data.
- G. Upon completion of Phases 1 and 2, the balance technician shall proceed with Phase 3 as follows:
  - 1. After making adjustments to coils, recheck settings at pumps and boilers. Re-adjust if required.
  - 2. Install pressure gauges on each coil, then read pressure drop through coil at set flow rate on call for full heating. Set pressure drop across bypass valve to match coil full flow pressure drop. This prevents unbalanced flow conditions when coils are on full bypass.
- H. Follow the same procedure on chillers to adjust chiller bypass valves:
  - 1. Inlet water and air temperature.
  - 2. Leaving condensate water and air temperatures.
  - 3. Pressure drop of each coil.
  - 4. Pressure drop across bypass valve.
  - 5. Pump operating suction and discharge pressure and final t.d.h.
  - 6. All mechanical specifications of pumps.
  - 7. Rated and actual running amperage of pump motor.
- I. Upon completion of Phase 3, the balancing engineer shall prepare on a neatly typed sheet, a listing of all items required by specifications. This shall be included in the complete test and balance report.

### 3.9 PROCEDURES FOR VIBRATION MEASUREMENTS

- A. Use a vibration meter meeting the following criteria:

1. Solid-state circuitry with a piezoelectric accelerometer.
  2. Velocity range of 0.1 to 10 inches per second (2.5 to 254 mm/s).
  3. Displacement range of 1 to 100 mils (0.0254 to 2.54 mm).
  4. Frequency range of at least 0 to 1000 Hz.
  5. Capable of filtering unwanted frequencies.
- B. Calibrate the vibration meter before each day of testing.
1. Use a calibrator provided with the vibration meter.
  2. Follow vibration meter and calibrator manufacturer's calibration procedures.
- C. Perform vibration measurements when other building and outdoor vibration sources are at a minimum level and will not influence measurements of equipment being tested.
1. Turn off equipment in the building that might interfere with testing.
  2. Clear the space of people.
- D. Perform vibration measurements after air and water balancing and equipment testing is complete.
- E. Clean equipment surfaces in contact with the vibration transducer.
- F. Position the vibration transducer according to manufacturer's written instructions and to avoid interference with the operation of the equipment being tested.
- G. Measure and record vibration on rotating equipment over 3 hp (2.2 kW).
- H. Measure and record equipment vibration, bearing vibration, equipment base vibration, and building structure vibration. Record velocity and displacement readings in the horizontal, vertical, and axial planes.
1. Pumps:
    - a. Pump Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
    - b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
    - c. Pump Base: Top and side.
    - d. Building: Floor.
    - e. Piping: To and from the pump after flexible connections.
  2. Fans and HVAC Equipment with Fans:
    - a. Fan Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
    - b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
    - c. Equipment Casing: Top and side.
    - d. Equipment Base: Top and side.
    - e. Building: Floor.
    - f. Ductwork: To and from equipment after flexible connections.
    - g. Piping: To and from equipment after flexible connections.
  3. HVAC Equipment with Compressors:

- a. Compressor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
  - b. Motor Bearing: Drive end and opposite end.
  - c. Equipment Casing: Top and side.
  - d. Equipment Base: Top and side.
  - e. Building: Floor.
  - f. Piping: To and from equipment after flexible connections.
- I. For equipment with vibration isolation, take floor measurements with the vibration isolation blocked solid to the floor and with the vibration isolation floating. Calculate and report the differences.
- J. Inspect, measure, and record vibration isolation.
  1. Verify that vibration isolation is installed in the required locations.
  2. Verify that installation is level and plumb.
  3. Verify that isolators are properly anchored.
  4. For spring isolators, measure the compressed spring height, the spring OD, and the travel-to-solid distance.
  5. Measure the operating clearance between each inertia base and the floor or concrete base below. Verify that there is unobstructed clearance between the bottom of the inertia base and the floor.

### 3.10 PROCEDURES FOR SOUND-LEVEL MEASUREMENTS

- A. Perform sound-pressure-level measurements with an octave-band analyzer complying with ANSI S1.4 for Type 1 sound-level meters and ANSI S1.11 for octave-band filters. Comply with requirements in ANSI S1.13, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Calibrate sound meters before each day of testing. Use a calibrator provided with the sound meter complying with ANSI S1.40 and that has NIST certification.
- C. Use a microphone that is suitable for the type of sound levels measured. For areas where air velocities exceed 100 fpm (0.51 m/s), use a windscreen on the microphone.
- D. Perform sound-level testing after air and water balancing and equipment testing are complete.
- E. Close windows and doors to the space.
- F. Perform measurements when the space is not occupied and when the occupant noise level from other spaces in the building and outside are at a minimum.
- G. Clear the space of temporary sound sources so unrelated disturbances will not be measured. Position testing personnel during measurements to achieve a direct line-of-sight between the sound source and the sound-level meter.
- H. Take sound measurements at a height approximately 48 inches (1200 mm) above the floor and at least 36 inches (900 mm) from a wall, column, and other large surface capable of altering the measurements.

- I. Take sound measurements in dBA and in each of the 8 unweighted octave bands in the frequency range of 63 to 8000 Hz.
- J. Take sound measurements with the HVAC systems off to establish the background sound levels and take sound measurements with the HVAC systems operating.
  - 1. Calculate the difference between measurements. Apply a correction factor depending on the difference and adjust measurements.
- K. Perform sound testing at two locations on Project for each of the following space types. For each space type tested, select a measurement location that has the greatest sound level. If testing multiple locations for each space type, select at least one location that is near and at least one location that is remote from the predominant sound source.
  - 1. Private office.
  - 2. Open office area.
  - 3. Conference room.
  - 4. Auditorium/large meeting room/lecture hall.
  - 5. Classroom/training room.
  - 6. Inside mechanical equipment room.

### 3.11 REPORTING

- A. Initial Construction-Phase Report: Based on examination of the Contract Documents as specified in "Examination" Article, prepare a report on the adequacy of design for systems' balancing devices. Recommend changes and additions to systems' balancing devices to facilitate proper performance measuring and balancing. Recommend changes and additions to HVAC systems and general construction to allow access for performance measuring and balancing devices.
- B. Status Reports: As Work progresses, prepare reports to describe completed procedures, procedures in progress, and scheduled procedures. Include a list of deficiencies and problems found in systems being tested and balanced. Prepare a separate report for each system and each building floor for systems serving multiple floors.

### 3.12 FINAL REPORT

- A. General: Typewritten, or computer printout in letter-quality font, on standard bond paper, in three-ring binder, tabulated and divided into sections by tested and balanced systems.
- B. Include a certification sheet in front of binder signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.
  - 1. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.
- C. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field report data, include the following:
  - 1. Pump curves.

2. Fan curves.
  3. Manufacturers' test data.
  4. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.
  5. Other information relative to equipment performance, but do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.
- D. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data in the final report, as applicable:
1. Title page.
  2. Name and address of TAB firm.
  3. Project name.
  4. Project location.
  5. Architect's name and address.
  6. Engineer's name and address.
  7. Contractor's name and address.
  8. Report date.
  9. Signature of TAB firm who certifies the report.
  10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
  11. Summary of contents including the following:
    - a. Indicated versus final performance.
    - b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    - c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
  12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
  13. Data for terminal units, including manufacturer, type size, and fittings.
  14. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports varies from indicated values.
  15. Test conditions for fans and pump performance forms including the following:
    - a. Settings for outside-, return-, and exhaust-air dampers.
    - b. Conditions of filters.
    - c. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    - d. Face and bypass damper settings at coils.
    - e. Fan drive settings including settings and percentage of maximum pitch diameter.
    - f. Inlet vane settings for variable-air-volume systems.
    - g. Settings for supply-air, static-pressure controller.
    - h. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
- E. System Diagrams: Include schematic layouts of air and hydronic distribution systems. Present each system with single-line diagram and include the following:
1. Quantities of outside, supply, return, and exhaust airflows.
  2. Water flow rates.
  3. Duct, outlet, and inlet sizes.
  4. Pipe and valve sizes and locations.
  5. Terminal units.

6. Balancing stations.
7. Position of balancing devices.

F. Air-Handling Unit Test Reports: For air-handling units with coils, include the following:

1. Unit Data: Include the following:
  - a. Unit identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and unit size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Unit arrangement and class.
  - g. Discharge arrangement.
  - h. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - i. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  - j. Number of belts, make, and size.
  - k. Number of filters, type, and size.
2. Motor Data:
  - a. Make and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - c. Fan rpm.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - e. Filter static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - f. Preheat coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - g. Cooling coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - h. Heating coil static-pressure differential in inches wg (Pa).
  - i. Outside airflow in cfm (L/s).
  - j. Return airflow in cfm (L/s).
  - k. Outside-air damper position.
  - l. Return-air damper position.

G. Apparatus-Coil Test Reports:

1. Coil Data:
  - a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Coil type.

- d. Number of rows.
  - e. Fin spacing in fins per inch (mm) o.c.
  - f. Make and model number.
  - g. Face area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
  - h. Tube size in NPS (DN).
  - i. Tube and fin materials.
  - j. Circuiting arrangement.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
- a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Average face velocity in fpm (m/s).
  - c. Air pressure drop in inches wg (Pa).
  - d. Outside-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Return-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - f. Entering-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Leaving-air, wet- and dry-bulb temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - h. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
  - i. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - j. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - k. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - l. Refrigerant expansion valve and refrigerant types.
  - m. Refrigerant suction pressure in psig (kPa).
  - n. Refrigerant suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - o. Inlet steam pressure in psig (kPa).
- H. Fan Test Reports: For supply, return, and exhaust fans, include the following:
1. Fan Data:
- a. System identification.
  - b. Location.
  - c. Make and type.
  - d. Model number and size.
  - e. Manufacturer's serial number.
  - f. Arrangement and class.
  - g. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - h. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
2. Motor Data:
- a. Make and frame type and size.
  - b. Horsepower and rpm.
  - c. Volts, phase, and hertz.
  - d. Full-load amperage and service factor.
  - e. Sheave make, size in inches (mm), and bore.
  - f. Sheave dimensions, center-to-center, and amount of adjustments in inches (mm).
  - g. Number of belts, make, and size.
3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Total airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Total system static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - c. Fan rpm.
  - d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
  - e. Suction static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
- I. Round, Flat-Oval, and Rectangular Duct Traverse Reports: Include a diagram with a grid representing the duct cross-section and record the following:
  1. Report Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit number.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Traverse air temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - e. Duct size in inches (mm).
    - f. Duct area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
    - g. Indicated airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - h. Indicated velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - i. Actual airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - j. Actual average velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - k. Barometric pressure in psig (Pa).
- J. Air-Terminal-Device Reports:
  1. Unit Data:
    - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
    - b. Location and zone.
    - c. Test apparatus used.
    - d. Area served.
    - e. Air-terminal-device make.
    - f. Air-terminal-device number from system diagram.
    - g. Air-terminal-device type and model number.
    - h. Air-terminal-device size.
    - i. Air-terminal-device effective area in sq. ft. (sq. m).
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - b. Air velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - c. Preliminary airflow rate as needed in cfm (L/s).
    - d. Preliminary velocity as needed in fpm (m/s).
    - e. Final airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - f. Final velocity in fpm (m/s).
    - g. Space temperature in deg F (deg C).
- K. System-Coil Reports: For reheat coils and water coils of terminal units, include the following:



1. Unit Data:
  - a. System and air-handling unit identification.
  - b. Location and zone.
  - c. Room or riser served.
  - d. Coil make and size.
  - e. Flowmeter type.
2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
  - b. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - d. Water pressure drop in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - e. Entering-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - f. Leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
3. Air-Cooled Condenser Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Refrigerant pressure in psig (kPa).
  - b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Entering- and leaving-air temperature in deg F (deg C).
4. Evaporator Test Reports (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Refrigerant pressure in psig (kPa).
  - b. Refrigerant temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Entering-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - d. Leaving-water temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Entering-water pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
  - f. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
5. Compressor Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
  - a. Suction pressure in psig (kPa).
  - b. Suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - c. Discharge pressure in psig (kPa).
  - d. Discharge temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - e. Oil pressure in psig (kPa).
  - f. Oil temperature in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Voltage at each connection.
  - h. Amperage for each phase.
  - i. Kilowatt input.
  - j. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
  - k. Chilled-water control set point in deg F (deg C).
  - l. Condenser-water control set point in deg F (deg C).
  - m. Refrigerant low-pressure-cutoff set point in psig (kPa).
  - n. Refrigerant high-pressure-cutoff set point in psig (kPa).
6. Refrigerant Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

- a. Oil level.
  - b. Refrigerant level.
  - c. Relief valve setting in psig (kPa).
  - d. Unloader set points in psig (kPa).
  - e. Percentage of cylinders unloaded.
  - f. Bearing temperatures in deg F (deg C).
  - g. Vane position.
  - h. Low-temperature-cutoff set point in deg F (deg C).
- L. Compressor and Condenser Reports: For refrigerant side of unitary systems, stand-alone refrigerant compressors, air-cooled condensing units, or water-cooled condensing units, include the following:
- 1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Unit make and model number.
    - d. Compressor make.
    - e. Compressor model and serial numbers.
    - f. Refrigerant weight in lb (kg).
    - g. Low ambient temperature cutoff in deg F (deg C).
  - 2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Inlet-duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - b. Outlet-duct static pressure in inches wg (Pa).
    - c. Entering-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - d. Leaving-air, dry-bulb temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - e. Control settings.
    - f. Unloader set points.
    - g. Low-pressure-cutout set point in psig (kPa).
    - h. High-pressure-cutout set point in psig (kPa).
    - i. Suction pressure in psig (kPa).
    - j. Suction temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - k. Condenser refrigerant pressure in psig (kPa).
    - l. Condenser refrigerant temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - m. Oil pressure in psig (kPa).
    - n. Oil temperature in deg F (deg C).
    - o. Voltage at each connection.
    - p. Amperage for each phase.
    - q. Kilowatt input.
    - r. Crankcase heater kilowatt.
    - s. Number of fans.
    - t. Condenser fan rpm.
    - u. Condenser fan airflow rate in cfm (L/s).
    - v. Condenser fan motor make, frame size, rpm, and horsepower.
    - w. Condenser fan motor voltage at each connection.
    - x. Condenser fan motor amperage for each phase.

- M. Pump Test Reports: Calculate impeller size by plotting the shutoff head on pump curves and include the following:
1. Unit Data:
    - a. Unit identification.
    - b. Location.
    - c. Service.
    - d. Make and size.
    - e. Model and serial numbers.
    - f. Water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - g. Water pressure differential in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - h. Required net positive suction head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - i. Pump rpm.
    - j. Impeller diameter in inches (mm).
    - k. Motor make and frame size.
    - l. Motor horsepower and rpm.
    - m. Voltage at each connection.
    - n. Amperage for each phase.
    - o. Full-load amperage and service factor.
    - p. Seal type.
  2. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):
    - a. Static head in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - b. Pump shutoff pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - c. Actual impeller size in inches (mm).
    - d. Full-open flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - e. Full-open pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - f. Final discharge pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - g. Final suction pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - h. Final total pressure in feet of head or psig (kPa).
    - i. Final water flow rate in gpm (L/s).
    - j. Voltage at each connection.
    - k. Amperage for each phase.
- N. Vibration Measurement Reports:
1. Date and time of test.
  2. Vibration meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
  3. Equipment designation, location, equipment, speed, motor speed, and motor horsepower.
  4. Diagram of equipment showing the vibration measurement locations.
  5. Measurement readings for each measurement location.
  6. Calculate isolator efficiency using measurements taken.
  7. Description of predominant vibration source.
- O. Sound Measurement Reports: Record sound measurements on octave band and dBA test forms and on an NC or RC chart indicating the decibel level measured in each frequency band for both "background" and "HVAC system operating" readings. Record each tested location on a separate NC or RC chart. Record the following on the forms:

1. Date and time of test. Record each tested location on its own NC curve.
2. Sound meter manufacturer, model number, and serial number.
3. Space location within the building including floor level and room number.
4. Diagram or color photograph of the space showing the measurement location.
5. Time weighting of measurements, either fast or slow.
6. Description of the measured sound: steady, transient, or tonal.
7. Description of predominant sound source.

P. Indoor-Air Quality Measurement Reports for Each HVAC System:

1. HVAC system designation.
2. Date and time of test.
3. Outdoor temperature, relative humidity, wind speed, and wind direction at start of test.
4. Room number or similar description for each location.
5. Measurements at each location.
6. Observed deficiencies.

Q. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:
  - a. Instrument type and make.
  - b. Serial number.
  - c. Application.
  - d. Dates of use.
  - e. Dates of calibration.

### 3.13 INSPECTIONS

A. Initial Inspection:

1. After testing and balancing are complete, operate each system and randomly check measurements to verify that the system is operating according to the final test and balance readings documented in the Final Report.
2. Randomly check the following for each system:
  - a. Measure airflow of at least 10 percent of air outlets.
  - b. Measure water flow of at least 5 percent of terminals.
  - c. Measure room temperature at each thermostat/temperature sensor. Compare the reading to the set point.
  - d. Measure sound levels at two locations.
  - e. Measure space pressure of at least 10 percent of locations.
  - f. Verify that balancing devices are marked with final balance position.
  - g. Note deviations to the Contract Documents in the Final Report.

B. Final Inspection:

1. After initial inspection is complete and evidence by random checks verifies that testing and balancing are complete and accurately documented in the final report, request that a final inspection be made by Owner.
2. TAB firm test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of Owner.
3. Owner shall randomly select measurements documented in the final report to be rechecked. The rechecking shall be limited to either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded, or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.
4. If the rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."
5. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the testing and balancing shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.
6. TAB firm shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes and resubmit the final report.
7. Request a second final inspection. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner shall contract the services of another TAB firm to complete the testing and balancing in accordance with the Contract Documents and deduct the cost of the services from the final payment.

#### 3.14 ADDITIONAL TESTS

- A. Within 90 days of completing TAB, perform additional testing and balancing to verify that balanced conditions are being maintained throughout and to correct unusual conditions.
- B. Seasonal Periods: If initial TAB procedures were not performed during near-peak summer and winter conditions, perform additional testing, inspecting, and adjusting during near-peak summer and winter conditions.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 07 00  
MECHANICAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division One Specification Sections, apply to Work of this Section.

1.2 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Provide labor, materials, equipment, supervision, and incidental services as necessary to complete all MECHANICAL INSULATION work as indicated on the Drawings and specified herein, including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Piping insulation, jackets, lining, and accessories.
  - 2. Ductwork insulation, jackets, lining, and accessories.
  - 3. Equipment insulation, covering, and accessories.
  - 4. Breeching insulation and accessories.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Use people with experience and skill for this work.
- B. Use materials that are approved for the type and location of the installation.
- C. Use only materials that are fire resistive with a very low flame spread rating.
- D. Use materials that are suitable for use in plenum spaces.
- E. Coordinate insulation materials with pipe and duct materials.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. All submittals shall conform to previous sections of these specifications. Tabulated type product data sheets are to be clearly marked to indicate specific items.
- B. Provide submittals on the following:
  - 1. Piping insulation, jackets, lining, and accessories.
  - 2. Ductwork insulation, jackets, lining, and accessories.
  - 3. Equipment insulation, covering, and accessories.
  - 4. Breeching insulation and accessories.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Corp.
  - 2. Certainteed Corp.
  - 3. Knauf Corp.

4. Manville/Schuller
5. Owens-Corning Fiberglass Corp.
6. Rubatex Corp.

## 2.2 PIPE INSULATION

- A. Glass Fiber Insulation shall be ANSI/ASTM C547; k value of 0.24 at 75°F; noncombustible and used on domestic hot and cold water lines, roof drains, heating water supply and return steam and condensate lines, humidifier piping and cooling tower supply and return.
- B. Cellular foam shall be flexible, plastic; k value of 0.28 at 75°F and used on refrigerant hot gas and suction lines, and cold condensate lines. The insulation shall be capable of a water vapor permeability of .20 perms per inch maximum.
- C. Jackets:
  1. Vapor Barrier Jackets shall be Kraft reinforced foil vapor barrier with self-sealing adhesive joints.
  2. PVC Jackets shall be one piece, premolded type.
  3. Canvas jackets shall be UL listed treated cotton fabric, 6 oz/sq yd.
  4. Aluminum jackets shall be ASTM B209; 0.020" thick; smooth finish.
  5. Stainless Steel jackets shall be type 304/316 stainless steel; 0.010" thick; smooth finish.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Insulation bands shall be 3/4" wide; 0.010" thick galvanized steel. 0.015" thick aluminum.
  2. Metal Jacket bands shall be 3/8" wide; 0.015" thick aluminum. 0.010" thick stainless steel.
  3. Insulating cement shall be ANSI/ASTM C195; hydraulic setting for mineral wool.
  4. Fibrous Glass cloth shall be untreated; 9 oz/sq yd weight.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT INSULATION

- A. Flexible Mineral Fiber blanket shall be ASTM C553; k value of 0.24 at 75°F; 2.0 lb/cu ft density and used on air separators. The thickness shall be not less than 1".
- B. Rigid Mineral Fiber board shall be ASTM C612; k value of 0.24 at 75°F; 6.0 lb/cu ft density and used on domestic hot water storage tanks. The thickness shall be not less than 1 1/2".
- C. Cellular glass shall be ASTM C552; k value of 0.35 at 75°F; 8.0 lb/cu ft density.
- D. Accessories:
  1. Bedding compounds shall be non-shrinking, permanently flexible, compatible with insulation.
  2. Vapor Barrier coating shall be non-flammable, fire resistant, polymeric resin, compatible with insulation.
  3. Insulating cement shall be ANSI/ASTM C195; hydraulic setting for mineral wool.
  4. Wire mesh shall be corrosive-resistant metal; hexagonal pattern.

## 2.4 DUCTWORK INSULATION

- A. Flexible Glass fiber shall be ASTM C553; commercial grade; k value of 0.29 at 75°F; 0.002" foil scrim facing for air conditioning ducts and used on exhaust ducts within 10 ft of exterior openings, exhaust ducts exposed to outdoor air, ventilation equipment casings, and supply ducts (cooling system). The thickness shall be not less than 1 1/2".

- B. Rigid Glass fiber shall be ASTM C612, Class 1; k value of 0.24 at 75°F; 0.002" foil scrim facing for air conditioning ducts and used on combustion air duct, outside air intake ducts, plenums (cooling system), return duct, return and relief ducts in mechanical rooms, and outside supply and return duct. The thickness shall be not less than 1 1/2".
- C. Indoor jackets shall be 8 oz/sq yd glass mesh; multi-purpose foil-scrim kraft; or pre-sized glass cloth, 8 oz sq/yd.
- D. Outdoor jackets shall be 0.030" PVC sheet; .016 aluminum or mastic reinforced with glass mesh.
- E. Accessories:
  - 1. Adhesives shall be waterproof fire-retardant type.
  - 2. Lagging adhesive shall be fire resistive.
  - 3. Impale anchors shall be galvanized steel, 12 gauge, self-adhesive pad.
  - 4. Joint tape shall be glass fiber cloth, open mesh.
  - 5. Tie wire shall be annealed steel, 16 gauge.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

- A. Verify that piping, ductwork, equipment, and breeching has been thoroughly tested and approved prior to installing insulation.
- B. Clean all surfaces to be insulated for adhesives to insure proper bonding.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install materials in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and in a workmanlike manner.
- B. Maintain ambient temperatures and conditions required by the manufacturers of the adhesive and the insulation.
- C. Continue insulation vapor barrier through penetrations.
- D. Pipe Insulation:
  - 1. Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
  - 2. Neatly finish insulation at supports, protrusions, and interruptions.
  - 3. All ends, corners, edges, etc. shall be completely secured.
  - 4. Cold pipe insulation requiring a vapor barrier shall have the vapor barrier continuous through fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, and expansion joints.
  - 5. Insulation not requiring a vapor barrier shall have exposed ends beveled and sealed with mastic at unions, flanges, etc.
  - 6. Provide insert between support shield and piping, under the finish jacket, on piping 2" diameter or larger. Fabricate out of cork or other heavy density insulating material suitable for temperature, not less than 6" long, of the same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation. Shields and saddles shall be provided by piping installer.
- E. Pipe Insulation Jackets:
  - 1. Indoor, Concealed Hot Pipes shall have furnished standard factory-applied jackets with or without vapor barrier. Finish fittings, joints, and valves with glass cloth and adhesive. PVC jackets may be used.
  - 2. Indoor, Concealed Cold Pipes shall be furnished with vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied. Finish fittings, joints, and valves with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive.



3. Indoor, exposed Pipes shall be finished with rewettable glass cloth and sized for finish painting. PVC jackets may be used.
4. Exterior Applications shall be furnished with vapor barrier jackets. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

F. Equipment Insulation:

1. Apply insulation as close as possible to equipment by grooving, scoring, and beveling insulation, if necessary. Secure insulation to equipment with studs, pins, clips, adhesive, wires, or bands that will insure a tight secure installation.
2. Fill joints, cracks, seams, and depressions with bedding compound to form smooth surface. On cold equipment, use vapor barrier cement.
3. Cover insulation with metal mesh and finish with heavy coat of insulating cement. Flexible electrometric insulation may be finished with two coats of approved Finish reinforced with glass mesh.
4. Do not insulate over nameplate or ASME stamps. Bevel and seal insulation around such.
5. When equipment with insulation requires periodic opening for maintenance, repair, or cleaning, install insulation in such a manner that it can be easily removed and replaced without damage.

G. Ductwork Insulation:

1. Provide insulation with vapor barrier when air conveyed may be below ambient temperature.
2. Secure insulation with vapor barrier with wires and seal jacket joints with vapor barrier adhesive or tape to match jacket.
3. Secure insulation without vapor barrier with staples, tape, or wires.
4. Install without sag on underside of ductwork. Use adhesive or mechanical fasteners where necessary to prevent sagging.
5. Seal vapor barrier penetrations by mechanical fasteners, with vapor barrier adhesive. Stop and point insulation around access doors and damper operators to allow operation without disturbing wrapping.
6. Flexible electrometric thermal insulation may be used on exterior duct work when installed using compression fit method at joints and full adhesive coverage. Finish to be reinforced with glass mesh.

### 3.3 MINIMUM PIPE INSULATION

A. HEAT TRANSFER SYSTEMS

| System            | Fluid Temp Range | Runouts Up to 2" | Circulating Lines |                                   |                                   |
|-------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                   |                  |                  | Up to 1"          | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> -2" | 2 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> -4" |
| Low Pressure/Temp | 140°F-200°F      | 1.0"             | 1.5"              | 1.5"                              | 2.0"                              |

B. NOTES:

1. Pipe sizes are nominal dimensions.
2. For piping exposed to ambient temperatures, increase thickness by 0.5".
3. Run outs to Individual Terminal Units (not exceeding 12 ft. in length).
4. Insulation thicknesses are based on insulation having thermal resistivity in the range of 4.0 to 4.6 ft<sup>2</sup>/hr<sup>0</sup>/F/Btu/in on a flat surface at a mean temperature 75°F. Minimum insulation thickness shall be increased for materials having R values less than

4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>/hr/<sup>0</sup>F/Btu/in or may be reduced for materials having R values greater than 4.6 ft<sup>2</sup>/hr/<sup>0</sup>F/Btu/in.

C. SERVICE WATER SYSTEMS

| Fluid Temperatures                   | Non-circulating runouts | Circulating Mains & Runouts           | Circulating Mains & Runouts        |         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------|
|                                      | Up to 1"                | Up to 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " | 1 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "-2" | Over 2" |
| 40 <sup>0</sup> F-139 <sup>0</sup> F | 1.5"                    | 1.5"                                  | 1.5"                               | 1.5"    |

D. NOTES:

1. Nominal iron pipe size and insulation thickness.
2. Conductivity K =.27
3. For recirculation systems, piping heat loss shall be limited to a maximum of 17.5 Btu/h per linear ft of pipe which is based on design external temperature no lower than 65<sup>0</sup>F.
4. Design temperatures must be calculated.

E. RAIN CONDUCTORS

|                 | <u>Insulation Thickness</u> |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| Horizontal Pipe | 1.5"                        |
| Vertical Pipe   | 1.0"                        |

F. NOTES:

1. Good for all pipe sizes.
2. Based upon R = 4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>/hr/<sup>0</sup>F/Btu/in
3. For the entire run of horizontal piping up to the vertical piping not in the building enclosure.
4. For the entire run of vertical piping where pipe is not enclosed in the building structure.

3.4 DUCT INSULATION

A. Minimum duct insulation in unconditioned or semi-conditioned attics.

| <u>Air</u>  | <u>Minimum Thickness (Inches)</u> |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| Supply      | 2"                                |
| Return      | 1"                                |
| Outside Air | 2"                                |

1. Based upon an R value of 4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>/<sup>0</sup>F/Btu/in

B. Minimum duct insulation in conditioned spaces.

| <u>Air</u>  | <u>Minimum Thickness (Inches)</u> |
|-------------|-----------------------------------|
| Supply      | 1"                                |
| Return      | 0"                                |
| Outside Air | 4"                                |

1. Based upon an R value of 4.0 ft<sup>2</sup>/<sup>0</sup>F/Btu/in

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 23 31 13

## METAL DUCTS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes metal ducts for supply, return, outside, and exhaust air-distribution systems in pressure classes from minus 2" to plus 10" wg (minus 500 Pa to plus 2500 Pa). Metal ducts include the following:
  - 1. Rectangular ducts and fittings.
  - 2. Single-wall, round spiral-seam ducts and formed fittings.

## 1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Duct system design, as indicated, has been used to select size and type of air-moving and -distribution equipment and other air system components. Changes to layout or configuration of duct system must be specifically approved in writing by Engineer. Accompany requests for layout modifications with calculations showing that proposed layout will provide original design results without increasing system total pressure.

## 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: CAD-generated and drawn to appropriate scale. Show fabrication and installation details for metal ducts.
  - 1. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
  - 2. Duct layout indicating sizes and pressure classes.
  - 3. Elevations of top and bottom of ducts.
  - 4. Dimensions of the main duct runs from building grid lines.
  - 5. Fittings.
  - 6. Reinforcement and spacing.
  - 7. Seam and joint construction.
  - 8. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
  - 9. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
  - 10. Duct accessories, including access doors and panels.
  - 11. Hangers and supports, including methods for duct and building attachment, vibration isolation, and seismic restraints.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
  - 2. Other systems installed in the same space as ducts.

3. Ceiling and wall mounting access doors and panels required to provide access to dampers and other operating devices.
4. Ceiling-mounting items, including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. NFPA Compliance:

1. NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems."
2. NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

### 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G60 (Z180) coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4" (6 mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36" (900 mm) or less; 3/8" (10 mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36" (900 mm).

### 2.3 SEALANT MATERIALS

- A. Joint and Seam Sealants, General: The term "sealant" is not limited to materials of adhesive or mastic nature but includes tapes and combinations of open-weave fabric strips and mastics.
- B. Joint and Seam Tape: 2" (50 mm) wide; glass-fiber-reinforced fabric.
- C. Tape Sealing System: Woven-fiber tape impregnated with gypsum mineral compound and modified acrylic/silicone activator to react exothermically with tape to form hard, durable, airtight seal.
- D. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant: Flexible, adhesive sealant, resistant to UV light when cured, UL 723 listed, and complying with NFPA requirements for Class 1 ducts.
- E. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant: One-part, non-sag, solvent release curing, polymerized butyl sealant formulated with a minimum of 75 percent solids.
- F. Flanged Joint Mastic: One-part, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric joint sealant complying with ASTM C 920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use O.

- G. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

## 2.4 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

- A. Building Attachments: Concrete inserts, powder-actuated fasteners, or structural-steel fasteners appropriate for construction materials to which hangers are being attached.
  - 1. Use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for standard-weight aggregate concretes or for slabs more than 4" (100 mm) thick.
  - 2. Exception: Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4" (100 mm) thick.
- B. Hanger Materials: Galvanized sheet steel or threaded steel rod.
  - 1. Hangers Installed in Corrosive Atmospheres: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.
  - 2. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for steel sheet width and thickness and for steel rod diameters.
  - 3. Galvanized-steel straps attached to aluminum ducts shall have contact surfaces painted with zinc-chromate primer.
- C. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.
- D. Trapeze and Riser Supports: Steel shapes complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M.
  - 1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
  - 2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel support materials.

## 2.5 RECTANGULAR DUCT FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate ducts, elbows, transitions, offsets, branch connections, and other construction according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" and complying with requirements for metal thickness, reinforcing types and intervals, tie-rod applications, and joint types and intervals.
  - 1. Lengths: Fabricate rectangular ducts in lengths appropriate to reinforcement and rigidity class required for pressure class.
  - 2. Deflection: Duct systems shall not exceed deflection limits according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible."
- B. Transverse Joints: Prefabricated slide-on joints and components constructed using manufacturer's guidelines for material thickness, reinforcement size and spacing, and joint reinforcement.
- C. Formed-On Flanges: Construct according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," Figure 1-4, using corner, bolt, cleat, and gasket details.
  - 1. Duct Size: Maximum 30" (750 mm) wide and up to 2" wg (500 Pa) pressure class.
  - 2. Longitudinal Seams: Pittsburgh lock sealed with noncuring polymer sealant.
- D. Cross Breaking or Cross Beading: Cross break or cross bead duct sides 19" (480 mm) and larger and 0.0359" (0.9 mm) thick or less, with more than 10 sq ft (0.93 sq m) of nonbraced panel area unless ducts are lined.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 DUCT APPLICATIONS

- A. Static-Pressure Classes: Unless otherwise indicated, construct ducts according to the following:
  - 1. Supply Ducts: 1" wg (250 Pa).
  - 2. Supply Ducts (before Air Terminal Units): 3" wg (750 Pa).
  - 3. Supply Ducts (after Air Terminal Units): 1" wg (250 Pa)].
  - 4. Return Ducts (Negative Pressure): 1" wg (250 Pa).
  - 5. Exhaust Ducts (Negative Pressure): 2" wg (500 Pa).
  - 6. All ducts shall be galvanized steel.

### 3.2 DUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Construct and install ducts according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Install ducts with the fewest possible joints.
- C. Install fabricated fittings for changes in directions, size, and shape and for connections.
- D. Install couplings tight to duct wall surface with a minimum of projections into duct. Secure couplings with sheet metal screws. Install screws at intervals of 12" (300 mm), with a minimum of 3 screws in each coupling.
- E. Install ducts, unless otherwise indicated, vertically and horizontally and parallel and perpendicular to building lines; avoid diagonal runs.
- F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.
- G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1" (25 mm), plus allowance for insulation thickness.
- H. Conceal ducts from view in finished spaces. Do not encase horizontal runs in solid partitions unless specifically indicated.
- I. Coordinate layout with suspended ceiling, fire- and smoke-control dampers, lighting layouts, and similar finished work.
- J. Seal all joints and seams. Apply sealant to male end connectors before insertion, and afterward to cover entire joint and sheet metal screws.
- K. Electrical Equipment Spaces: Route ducts to avoid passing through transformer vaults and electrical equipment spaces and enclosures.
- L. Non-Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, conceal spaces between construction openings and ducts or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as ducts. Overlap openings on 4 sides by at least 1½" (38 mm).
- M. Fire-Rated Partition Penetrations: Where ducts pass through interior partitions and exterior walls, install appropriately rated fire dampers, sleeves, and firestopping sealant.
- N. Install ducts with hangers and braces designed to withstand, without damage to equipment, seismic force required by applicable building codes.
- O. Protect duct interiors from the elements and foreign materials until building is enclosed.

- P. Paint interiors of metal ducts, that do not have duct liner, for 24" (600 mm) upstream of registers and grilles. Apply one coat of flat, black, latex finish coat over a compatible galvanized-steel primer.

### 3.3 SEAM AND JOINT SEALING

- A. Seal duct seams and joints according to SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for duct pressure class indicated.
  - 1. For pressure classes lower than 2" wg (500 Pa), seal transverse joints.
- B. Seal ducts before external insulation is applied.

### 3.4 HANGING AND SUPPORTING

- A. Support horizontal ducts within 24" (600 mm) of each elbow and within 48" (1200 mm) of each branch intersection.
- B. Support vertical ducts at maximum intervals of 16 feet (5 m) and at each floor.
- C. Install upper attachments to structures with an allowable load not exceeding one-fourth of failure (proof-test) load.
- D. Install concrete inserts before placing concrete.
- E. Install powder-actuated concrete fasteners after concrete is placed and completely cured.
  - 1. Do not use powder-actuated concrete fasteners for lightweight-aggregate concretes or for slabs less than 4" (100 mm) thick.

### 3.5 CONNECTIONS

- A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors according to other sections of these specifications.
- B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following field tests and inspections according to SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual" and prepare test reports:
  - 1. Disassemble, reassemble, and seal segments of systems to accommodate leakage testing and for compliance with test requirements.
  - 2. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If pressure classes are not indicated, test entire system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.
  - 3. Maximum Allowable Leakage: Comply with requirements for Leakage Class 3 for round and flat-oval ducts, Leakage Class 12 for rectangular ducts in pressure classes lower than and equal to 2" wg (500 Pa) (both positive and negative pressures), and Leakage Class 6 for pressure classes from 2" to 10" wg (500 Pa to 2500 Pa).
  - 4. Remake leaking joints and retest until leakage is equal to or less than maximum allowable.

### 3.7 CLEANING NEW SYSTEMS

- A. Mark position of dampers and air-directional mechanical devices before cleaning, and perform cleaning before air balancing.

- B. Use service openings, as required, for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
  - 1. Create other openings to comply with duct standards.
  - 2. Disconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 3. Remove and reinstall ceiling sections to gain access during the cleaning process.
- C. Vent vacuuming system to the outside. Include filtration to contain debris removed from HVAC systems and locate exhaust down wind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following metal duct systems by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
  - 1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  - 2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  - 3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  - 4. Coils and related components.
  - 5. Return-air ducts, dampers, and actuators except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  - 6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
  - 1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  - 2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
  - 3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
  - 4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet.
  - 5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
- F. Cleanliness Verification:
  - 1. Visually inspect metal ducts for contaminants.
  - 2. Where contaminants are discovered, re-clean and reinspect ducts.

### 3.8 CLEANING EXISTING SYSTEMS

- A. Use service openings, as required, for physical and mechanical entry and for inspection.
  - 1. Use existing service openings where possible.
  - 2. Create other openings to comply with duct standards.
  - 3. Disconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
  - 4. Reseal rigid fiberglass duct systems according to NAIMA recommended practices.
  - 5. Remove and reinstall ceiling sections to gain access during the cleaning process.
- B. Mark position of dampers and air-directional mechanical devices before cleaning, and restore to their marked position on completion.
- C. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:



1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron size (or larger) particles.
  2. When venting vacuuming system to the outside, use filtration to contain debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust down wind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.
- D. Clean the following metal duct systems by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
  2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
  3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
  4. Coils and related components.
  5. Return-air ducts, dampers, and actuators except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
  6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
  7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.
- E. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
  2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
  3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
  4. Clean fibrous-glass duct liner with HEPA vacuuming equipment; do not permit duct liner to get wet. Replace fibrous-glass duct liner that is damaged, deteriorated, or delaminated or that has friable material, mold, or fungus growth.
  5. Clean coils and coil drain pans according to NADCA 1992. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
  6. Provide operative drainage system for washdown procedures.
  7. Biocidal Agents and Coatings: Apply biocidal agents if fungus is present. Apply biocidal agents according to manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.
- F. Cleanliness Verification:
1. Verify cleanliness after mechanical cleaning and before application of treatment, including biocidal agents and protective coatings.
  2. Visually inspect metal ducts for contaminants.
  3. Where contaminants are discovered, re-clean and reinspect ducts.
- G. Gravimetric Analysis: At discretion and expense of Owner, sections of metal duct system, chosen randomly by Owner, may be tested for cleanliness according to NADCA vacuum test gravimetric analysis.
1. If analysis determines that levels of debris are equal to or lower than suitable levels, system shall have passed cleanliness verification.
  2. If analysis determines that levels of debris exceed suitable levels, system cleanliness verification will have failed and metal duct system shall be re-cleaned and re-verified.

- H. Verification of Coil Cleaning: Cleaning must restore coil pressure drop to within 10 percent of pressure drop measured when coil was first installed. If original pressure drop is not known, coil will be considered clean only if it is free of foreign matter and chemical residue, based on thorough visual inspection.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 33 00  
DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Duct accessory hardware.
  - 3. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 4. Filters.
  - 5. Fire dampers.
  - 6. Flexible connectors.
  - 7. Flexible ducts.
  - 8. Louvers.
  - 9. Motorized control dampers.
  - 10. Turning vanes.
  - 11. Volume dampers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Backdraft dampers.
  - 2. Duct accessory hardware.
  - 3. Duct-mounting access doors.
  - 4. Filters.
  - 5. Fire dampers.
  - 6. Flexible connectors.
  - 7. Flexible ducts.
  - 8. Louvers.
  - 9. Motorized control dampers.
  - 10. Turning vanes.
  - 11. Volume dampers.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Special fittings.
  - 2. Manual-volume damper installations.
  - 3. Motorized-control damper installations.
  - 4. Fire-damper, smoke-damper, and combination fire- and smoke-damper installations, including sleeves and duct-mounting access doors.

5. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale and coordinating penetrations and ceiling-mounting items. Show ceiling-mounting access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

#### 2.2 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

- A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Lock-forming quality; complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M and having G60 (Z180) coating designation; ducts shall have mill-phosphatized finish for surfaces exposed to view.
- C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless-steel ducts.
- D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4" (6 mm) minimum diameter for lengths 36" (900 mm) or less; 3/8" (10 mm) minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36" (900 mm).

#### 2.3 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Air Balance, Inc.
  2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  3. Greenheck.
  4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  6. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  8. Ruskin Company.
- B. Description: Multiple-blade, parallel action gravity balanced, with center-pivoted blades of maximum 6" (150 mm) width, with sealed edges, assembled in rattle-free manner with 90-degree stop, steel ball bearings, and axles; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.
- C. Frame: 0.052" (1.3 mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel.

- D. Blades: 0.025" (0.6 mm) thick, roll-formed aluminum.
- E. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
- F. Blade Axles: Non-ferrous
- G. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- H. Return Spring: Adjustable tension.

## 2.4 VOLUME DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Air Balance, Inc.
  - 2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - 3. Greenheck.
  - 4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  - 5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  - 6. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  - 7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - 8. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Description: Factory fabricated, with required hardware and accessories. Stiffen damper blades for stability. Include locking device to hold single-blade dampers in a fixed position without vibration. Close duct penetrations for damper components to seal duct consistent with pressure class.
  - 1. Pressure Classes of 3" wg (750 Pa) or Higher: End bearings or other seals for ducts with axles full length of damper blades and bearings at both ends of operating shaft.
- C. Standard Volume Dampers: Multiple- or single-blade, parallel- or opposed-blade design as indicated, standard leakage rating, with linkage outside air stream and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 1. Steel Frames: Hat-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064" (1.62 mm) thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064" (1.62 mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 3. Aluminum Frames: Hat-shaped, 0.10" (2.5 mm) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls; and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  - 4. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10" (2.5 mm) thick aluminum sheet.
  - 5. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050" (1.2 mm) thick extruded aluminum.
  - 6. Blade Axles: Non-ferrous.
  - 7. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze.
  - 8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Aluminum.
  - 9. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- D. Low-Leakage Volume Dampers: Multiple or single-blade, parallel or opposed blade design as indicated, low-leakage rating, with linkage outside air stream and suitable for horizontal or vertical applications.
  - 1. Steel Frames: U-shaped, galvanized sheet steel channels, minimum of 0.064" (1.62 mm) thick, with mitered and welded corners; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  - 2. Roll-Formed Steel Blades: 0.064" (1.62 mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel.

3. Aluminum Frames: U-shaped, 0.10" (2.5 mm) thick, aluminum sheet channels; frames with flanges where indicated for attaching to walls and flangeless frames where indicated for installing in ducts.
  4. Roll-Formed Aluminum Blades: 0.10" (2.5 mm) thick aluminum sheet.
  5. Extruded-Aluminum Blades: 0.050" (1.2 mm) thick extruded aluminum.
  6. Blade Axles: Non-ferrous.
  7. Bearings: Oil-impregnated bronze thrust or ball.
  8. Blade Seals: Neoprene.
  9. Jamb Seals: Cambered aluminum.
  10. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
- E. Jackshaft: 1" (25 mm) diameter, galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
1. Length and Number of Mountings: Appropriate to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.
- F. Damper Hardware: Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle made of 3/32" (2.4 mm) thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4" (19 mm) hexagon locking nut. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

## 2.5 MOTORIZED CONTROL DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Air Balance, Inc.
  2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  3. Greenheck.
  4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  6. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  8. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Description: AMCA-rated, opposed blade design; minimum of 0.1084" (2.8 mm) thick, galvanized-steel frames with holes for duct mounting; minimum of 0.0635" (1.61 mm) thick, galvanized-steel damper blades with maximum blade width of 8" (203 mm).
1. Secure blades to 1/2" (13 mm) diameter, zinc-plated axles using zinc-plated hardware, with nylon blade bearings, blade-linkage hardware of zinc-plated steel and brass, ends sealed against spring-stainless-steel blade bearings, and thrust bearings at each end of every blade.
  2. Operating Temperature Range: From minus 40°F to plus 200 °F (minus 40°C to 93°C).
  3. Provide closed-cell neoprene edging.

## 2.6 FIRE DAMPERS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Air Balance, Inc.
  2. American Warming and Ventilating.
  3. Greenheck.
  4. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  5. METALAIRE, Inc.
  6. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  7. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.

## 8. Ruskin Company.

- B. Fire dampers shall be labeled according to UL 555.
- C. Fire Rating: 1½hours.
- D. Frame: Curtain type with blades outside air stream fabricated with roll-formed, 0.034" (0.85 mm) thick galvanized steel; with mitered and interlocking corners.
- E. Mounting Sleeve: Factory- or field-installed, galvanized sheet steel.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 0.052" or 0.138" (1.3 mm or 3.5 mm) thick as indicated and of length to suit application.
  - 2. Exceptions: Omit sleeve where damper frame width permits direct attachment of perimeter mounting angles on each side of wall or floor, and thickness of damper frame complies with sleeve requirements.
- F. Mounting Orientation: Vertical or horizontal as indicated.
- G. Blades: Roll-formed, interlocking, 0.034" (0.85 mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel. In place of interlocking blades, use full-length, 0.034" (0.85 mm) thick, galvanized-steel blade connectors.
- H. Horizontal Dampers: Include blade lock and stainless-steel closure spring.
- I. Fusible Links: Replaceable, 165°F (74°C) rated.

## 2.7 TURNING VANES

- A. Fabricate to comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for vanes and vane runners. Vane runners shall automatically align vanes.
- B. Manufactured Turning Vanes: Fabricate 1½" (38 mm) wide, double vane, curved blades of galvanized sheet steel set ¾" (19 mm) o.c.; support with bars perpendicular to blades set 2" (50 mm) o.c. and set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

## 2.8 DUCT-MOUNTING ACCESS DOORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - a. Air Balance, Inc.
  - b. American Warming and Ventilating.
  - c. Greenheck.
  - d. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
  - e. METALAIR, Inc.
  - f. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  - g. Penn Ventilation Company, Inc.
  - h. Ruskin Company.
- B. General Description: Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.
- C. Door: Double wall, duct mounting, and rectangular; fabricated of galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class. Include vision panel where indicated. Include 1" by 1" (25 mm by 25 mm) butt or piano hinge and cam latches.
- D. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
  - a. Provide number of hinges and locks as follows:
    - 1) Less Than 12" (300 mm) Square: Secure with two sash locks.
    - 2) Up to 18"(450 mm) Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.

- 3) Up to 24" by 48" (600 mm by 1200 mm): Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
- 4) Sizes 24" by 48" (600 mm by 1200 mm) and Larger: One additional hinge.

## 2.9 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  2. Duro Dyne Corp.
  3. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  4. Ward Industries, Inc.
- B. General Description: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics, coatings, and adhesives complying with UL 181, Class 1.
- C. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip [3<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>" (89 mm)] [5<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" (146 mm)] wide attached to two strips of 2<sup>3</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" (70-mm-) wide, 0.028" (0.7 mm) thick, galvanized sheet steel or 0.032" (0.8 mm) thick aluminum sheets. Select metal compatible with ducts.
- D. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
  1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq yd (880 g/sq m).
  2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch (84 N/mm) in the warp and 360 lbf/inch (63 N/mm) in the filling.
  3. Service Temperature: Minus 40°F to plus 200°F (Minus 40°C to plus 93°C).

## 2.10 FLEXIBLE DUCTS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  2. Hart & Cooley, Inc.
  3. McGill AirFlow Corporation.
- B. Non-insulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, 2-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  1. Pressure Rating: 10" wg (2500 Pa) positive and 1.0" wg (250 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20.3 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 10°F to plus 160°F (Minus 23°C to plus 71°C).
- C. Noninsulated-Duct Connectors: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire.
  1. Pressure Rating: 4" wg (1000 Pa) positive and 0.5" wg (125 Pa) negative.
  2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm (20.3 m/s).
  3. Temperature Range: Minus 20°F to plus 175°F (Minus 28°C to plus 79°C).
- D. Flexible Duct Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action, in sizes 3" through 18" (75 mm to 450 mm) to suit duct size.

## 2.11 FILTERS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers:
  1. American Air Filter
  2. Farr Filters
  3. Air Filter Manufacturing Co.



- B. Disposable extended area panel filters shall be pleated, reinforced cotton fabric; supported and bonded to welded wire grid; enclosed in cardboard frame; nominal size 24" x 24" x 1" thick; rated 25%-30% dust spot efficiency.
- C. Disposable panel filters shall be 2" thick glass fiber blanket, factory sprayed with flameproof, non-drip, non-volatile adhesive; nominal size 24" x 24" in cardboard frame with perforated metal retainer.
- D. Filter frames shall be galvanized steel or extruded aluminum T-section construction with necessary gasketing between frames and walls.
- E. Filter gauges shall be direct reading dial 3½" inch diameter diaphragm actuated dial in metal case, vent valves, black figures on white background, range 0-2.0" WG, 3% of full scale accuracy.

## 2.12 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

- A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct insulation thickness.
- B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATION AND INSTALLATION

- A. Install duct accessories according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards--Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts.
- B. Provide duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel ducts.
- C. Install backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- D. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches lead from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install at a minimum of two duct widths from branch takeoff.
- E. Provide test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated.
- F. Install fire and smoke dampers, with fusible links, according to manufacturer's UL-approved written instructions.
- G. Install duct access doors to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and terminal units as follows:
  - 1. On both sides of duct coils.
  - 2. Downstream from volume dampers, turning vanes and equipment.
  - 3. Adjacent to fire or smoke dampers, providing access to reset or reinstall fusible links.
  - 4. To interior of ducts for cleaning; before and after each change in direction, at maximum 50 foot (15 m) spacing.
  - 5. On sides of ducts where adequate clearance is available.
- H. Install the following sizes for duct-mounting, rectangular access doors:
  - 1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8" by 5" (200 mm by 125 mm).
  - 2. Two-Hand Access: 12" by 6" (300 mm by 150 mm).

3. Head and Hand Access: 18" by 10" (460 mm by 250 mm).
4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21" by 14" (530 mm by 355 mm).
5. Body Access: 25" by 14" (635 mm by 355 mm).
6. Body Plus Ladder Access: 25" by 17" (635 mm by 430 mm).

- I. Label access doors.
- J. Install flexible connectors immediately adjacent to equipment in ducts associated with fans and motorized equipment supported by vibration isolators.
- K. For fans developing static pressures of 5" wg (1250 Pa) and higher, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.
- L. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12" (300 mm) lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.
- M. Connect diffusers to low pressure ducts directly or with maximum 60" (1500 mm) lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.
- N. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands.
- O. Install duct test holes where indicated and required for testing and balancing purposes.

### 3.2 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust duct accessories for proper settings.
- B. Adjust fire and smoke dampers for proper action.
- C. Final positioning of manual-volume dampers is specified in other sections of these specifications.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 23 34 16  
CENTRIFUGAL FANS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes centrifugal fans and vent sets.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Project Altitude: Base air ratings on actual site elevations.
- B. Operating Limits: Classify according to AMCA 99.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include rated capacities, furnished specialties, and accessories for each type of product indicated and include the following:
  - 1. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
  - 2. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
  - 3. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
  - 4. Material gauges and finishes, including color charts.
  - 5. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring. Differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
  - 2. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 3. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and to supported equipment. Include auxiliary motor slides and rails, and base weights.
- C. Coordination Drawings: Show fan room layout and relationships between components and adjacent structural and mechanical elements. Show support locations, type of support, and weight on each support. Indicate and certify field measurements.
- D. Maintenance Data: For centrifugal fans to include in maintenance manuals specified in other sections of these specifications.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

- B. AMCA Compliance: Products shall comply with performance requirements and shall be licensed to use the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- C. NEMA Compliance: Motors and electrical accessories shall comply with NEMA standards.

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver fans as factory-assembled units, to the extent allowable by shipping limitations, with protective crating and covering.
- B. Disassemble and reassemble units, as required for moving to the final location, according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Lift and support units with manufacturer's designated lifting or supporting points.

#### 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of structural-steel support members.
- B. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one (1) of the following:
  - 1. Acme Engineering & Mfg. Corp.
  - 2. Aerovent; a Twin City Fan Company.
  - 3. Chicago Blower Corp.
  - 4. Cook, Loren Company.
  - 5. Greenheck

#### 2.2 MANUFACTURED UNITS

- A. Description: Factory-fabricated, assembled, tested, and finished, belt driven centrifugal fans consisting of housing, wheel, fan shaft, bearings, motor and disconnect switch, drive assembly, and support structure.

#### 2.3 HOUSINGS

- A. Materials and Fabrication: Formed and reinforced steel panels to make curved scroll housings with shaped cutoff, spun-metal inlet bell, and doors or panels to allow access to internal parts and components. Use galvanized steel to fabricate fans downstream from humidifiers.
  - 1. Panel Bracing: Steel angle or channel iron member supports for mounting and supporting fan scroll, wheel, motor, and accessories.
  - 2. Fabrication Class: AMCA 99, Class I
  - 3. Horizontal Flanged Split Housing: Bolted construction.
- B. Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized.

#### 2.4 WHEELS

- A. Backward-Inclined Fan Wheels: Steel construction with curved inlet flange, back plate, backward-inclined blades welded or riveted to flange and back plate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to back plate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- B. Forward-Curved Fan Wheels: Black-enameled or galvanized steel construction with inlet flange, back plate, shallow blades with inlet and tip curved forward in direction of airflow, mechanically secured to flange and back plate; cast-steel hub swaged to back plate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- C. Airfoil-Fan Wheels: Steel construction with smooth-curved inlet flange; heavy back plate; hollow die-formed, airfoil-shaped blades continuously welded at tip flange and back plate; cast-iron or cast-steel hub riveted to back plate and fastened to shaft with set screws.
- D. Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized.

## 2.5 SHAFTS

- A. Statically and dynamically balanced and selected for continuous operation at maximum rated fan speed and motor horsepower, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
- B. Turned, ground, and polished hot-rolled steel with keyway. Ship with a protective coating of lubricating oil.
- C. Designed to operate at no more than 70 percent of first critical speed at top of fan's speed range.

## 2.6 BEARINGS

- A. Pre-lubricated and Sealed Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type ball bearings.
  - 1. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.
  - 2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.
- B. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, tapered roller bearings with double-locking collars and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
  - 1. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.
  - 2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.
- C. Grease-Lubricated Shaft Bearings: Self-aligning, pillow-block-type, ball or roller bearings with adapter mount and two-piece, cast-iron housing.
  - 1. Ball-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 9,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.
  - 2. Roller-Bearing Rating Life: ABMA 11,  $L_{10}$  of 120,000 hours.

## 2.7 BELT DRIVES

- A. Description: Factory mounted, with final alignment and belt adjustment made after installation.
  - 1. Service Factor Based on Fan Motor: 1.5.
- B. Fan Pulleys: Cast iron or cast steel with split, tapered bushing; dynamically balanced at factory.
- C. Motor Pulleys: Adjustable pitch for use with motors through 5 hp; fixed pitch for use with motors larger than 5 hp. Select pulley so pitch adjustment is at the middle of adjustment range at fan design conditions.
- D. Belts: Oil resistant, non-sparking, and non-static; matched sets for multiple belt drives.
  - 1. Belt Guards: Fabricate to comply with OSHA and SMACNA requirements; 0.1046" (2.7 mm) thick, 3/4" (20 mm) diamond-mesh wire screen welded to steel angle frame or equivalent, prime coated. Secure to fan or fan supports without short circuiting vibration

isolation. Include provisions for adjustment of belt tension, lubrication, and use of tachometer with guard in place.

- E. Motor Mount: Adjustable for belt tensioning.

## 2.8 ACCESSORIES

- A. Scroll Access Doors: Shaped to conform to scroll, with quick-opening latches and gaskets.
- B. Companion Flanges: Galvanized steel, for duct connections.
- C. Variable Inlet Vanes: Steel, with blades supported at both ends with two (2) permanently lubricated bearings. Variable mechanism terminating in single control lever with control shaft for double-width fans.
- D. Discharge Dampers: Heavy-duty steel assembly with opposed blades constructed of two (2) plates formed around and welded to shaft, channel frame, sealed ball bearings, with blades linked outside of air stream to single control lever.
- E. Inlet Screens: Galvanized steel welded grid screen.
- F. Scroll Drain Connection: NPS 1 (DN 25) steel pipe coupling welded to low point of fan scroll.
- G. Shaft Cooler: Metal disk between bearings and fan wheel, designed to dissipate heat from shaft.
- H. Spark-Resistant Construction: AMCA 99.
- I. Shaft Seals: Airtight seals installed around shaft on drive side of single-width fans.
- J. Weather Cover: Enameled-steel sheet with ventilation slots, bolted to housing.

## 2.9 MOTORS

- A. Enclosure Type: Guarded drip proof or totally enclosed, fan cooled as determined by the Engineer for the environment.

## 2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Sound-Power Level Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, "Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data." Factory test fans according to AMCA 300, "Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans." Label fans with the AMCA-Certified Ratings Seal.
- B. Fan Performance Ratings: Establish flow rate, pressure, power, air density, speed of rotation, and efficiency by factory tests and ratings according to AMCA 210, "Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Rating."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install centrifugal fans level and plumb.
- B. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

### 3.2 CONNECTIONS

- A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in other sections of these specifications. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories. Make final duct connections with flexible connectors.
- B. Install ducts adjacent to fans to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Ground equipment.
- D. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Equipment Startup Checks:
  - 1. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
  - 2. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
  - 3. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
  - 4. Disconnect fan drive from motor, verify proper motor rotation direction, and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation. Reconnect fan drive system, align and adjust belts, and install belt guards.
  - 5. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
  - 6. Verify that manual and automatic volume control and fire and smoke dampers in connected ductwork systems are in fully open position.
- B. Starting Procedures:
  - 1. Energize motor and adjust fan to indicated rpm.
  - 2. Measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
- C. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- D. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- E. Shut unit down and reconnect automatic temperature-control operators.
- F. Refer to other sections of these specifications for testing, adjusting, and balancing procedures.
- G. Replace fan and motor pulleys as required to achieve design airflow.
- H. Repair or replace malfunctioning units. Retest as specified above after repairs or replacements are made.

### 3.4 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.
- B. Adjust belt tension.
- C. Lubricate bearings.

### 3.5 CLEANING

- A. On completion of installation, internally clean fans according to manufacturer's written instructions. Remove foreign material and construction debris. Vacuum fan wheel and cabinet.
- B. After completing system installation, including outlet fitting and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, and construction debris and repair damaged finishes.

END OF SECTION



SECTION 233713  
DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
2. Perforated diffusers.
3. Louver face diffusers.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 089000 "Louvers and Vents" for fixed and adjustable louvers and wall vents, whether or not they are connected to ducts.
2. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:

1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from Installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension assembly members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.

4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Duct access panels.

B. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 CEILING DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Refer to Schedules on Drawings.

B. Perforated Diffuser:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Refer to Schedules on Drawings.

### 2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Bar Registers and Grilles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Krueger.
  - b. Nailor Industries Inc.
  - c. Price Industries.
  - d. Titus.
2. Refer to Schedules on Drawings.

## 2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas where diffusers, registers, and grilles are to be installed for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of equipment.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.
- B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.
- C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 237413

## PACKAGED, OUTDOOR, CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes packaged, outdoor, central-station air-handling units (rooftop units) with the following components and accessories:
  - 1. Direct-expansion cooling.
  - 2. Gas furnace.
  - 3. Economizer outdoor- and return-air damper section.
  - 4. Integral, space temperature controls.
  - 5. Roof curbs.
- B. Related Sections include the following:

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each RTU, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  - 1. Roof openings
  - 2. Roof curbs, curb adapter and flashing.

- B. Field quality-control test reports.
- C. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For RTUs to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

#### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fan Belts: One set for each belt-driven fan.
  - 2. Filters: One set of filters for each unit.

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. ARI Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with ARI 203/110 and ARI 303/110 for testing and rating energy efficiencies for RTUs.
  - 2. Comply with ARI 270 for testing and rating sound performance for RTUs.
- B. ASHRAE Compliance:
  - 1. Comply with ASHRAE 15 for refrigeration system safety.
  - 2. Comply with ASHRAE 33 for methods of testing cooling and heating coils.
  - 3. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
- C. ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."
- D. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.
- E. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1995.
- F. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to replace components of RTUs that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Compressors: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Gas Furnace Heat Exchangers: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Solid-State Ignition Modules: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.
4. Warranty Period for Control Boards: Manufacturer's standard, but not less than 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Johnson Controls/York
- B. Carrier
- C. Daikin
- D. Trane

### 2.2 CASING

- A. General Fabrication Requirements for Casings: Formed and reinforced double-wall insulated panels, fabricated to allow removal for access to internal parts and components, with joints between sections sealed.
- B. Exterior Casing Material: Galvanized steel with factory-painted finish, with pitched roof panels and knockouts with grommet seals for electrical and piping connections and lifting lugs.
- C. Casing Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  1. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I.
  2. Thickness: 1 inch (25 mm)
  3. Liner materials shall have air-stream surface coated with an erosion- and temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric.
  4. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
- D. Condensate Drain Pans: Formed sections of stainless-steel sheet, a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) deep, and complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
- E. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

### 2.3 FANS

- A. Belt-Driven Supply-Air Fans: Double width, forward curved, centrifugal; mounted on a common shaft with fixed motor sheaves.

- B. Variable air volume control by factory installed VFD
- C. Condenser-Coil Fan: Propeller, mounted on shaft of permanently lubricated motor.
- D. Fan Motor: Comply with requirements in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."

## 2.4 COILS

- A. Evaporator Coil:
  - 1. Aluminum -plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
  - 2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
  - 3. Coil Split: Interlaced.
  - 4. Condensate Drain Pan: Stainless steel] formed with pitch and drain connections complying with ASHRAE 62.1.
- B. Condenser Coil:
  - 1. Aluminum -plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
  - 2. Polymer strip shall prevent all copper coil from contacting steel coil frame or condensate pan.
  - 3. Baked phenolic coating.

## 2.5 REFRIGERANT CIRCUIT COMPONENTS

- A. Compressor: Hermetic, scroll, mounted on vibration isolators; with internal overcurrent and high-temperature protection, internal pressure relief and crank case heater.
- B. Refrigeration Specialties:
  - 1. Refrigerant: R-454B.
  - 2. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  - 3. Refrigerant filter/dryer.
  - 4. Manual-reset high-pressure safety switch.
  - 5. Automatic-reset low-pressure safety switch.
  - 6. Minimum off-time relay.
  - 7. Automatic-reset compressor motor thermal overload.
  - 8. Brass service valves installed in compressor suction and liquid lines.

## 2.6 AIR FILTRATION

- A. Minimum arrestance according to ASHRAE 52.1, and a minimum efficiency reporting value (MERV) according to ASHRAE 52.2.

1. Pleated: Minimum 90 percent arrestance, and MERV 8.

## 2.7 GAS FURNACE

- A. Description: Factory assembled, piped, and wired; complying with ANSI Z21.47 and NFPA 54.
  1. CSA Approval: Designed and certified by and bearing label of CSA.
- B. Burners: Stainless steel.
  1. Fuel: Natural gas.
  2. Ignition: Electronically controlled electric spark or hot-surface igniter with flame sensor.
- C. Heat-Exchanger and Drain Pan: Stainless steel.
- D. Venting: Gravity vented with vertical extension.
- E. Power Vent: Integral, motorized centrifugal fan interlocked with gas valve with vertical extension.
- F. Safety Controls:
  1. Gas Control Valve: Modulating.
  2. Gas Train: Single-body, regulated, redundant, 24-V ac gas valve assembly containing pilot solenoid valve, pilot filter, pressure regulator, pilot shutoff, and manual shutoff.

## 2.8 DAMPERS

- A. Outdoor-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outdoor air, with motorized damper filter.
- B. Outdoor- and Return-Air Mixing Dampers: Parallel- or opposed-blade galvanized-steel dampers mechanically fastened to cadmium plated for galvanized-steel operating rod in reinforced cabinet. Connect operating rods with common linkage and interconnect linkages so dampers operate simultaneously.
  1. Damper Motor: Modulating with adjustable minimum position.
  2. Relief-Air Damper: Gravity actuated or motorized, as required by ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1, with bird screen and hood.

## 2.9 ELECTRICAL POWER CONNECTION

- A. Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in overcurrent protection.

## 2.10 CONTROLS

- A. Basic Unit Controls:



1. Control-voltage transformer.
2. Wall-mounted thermostat or sensor with the following features:
  - a. Heat-cool-off switch.
  - b. Fan on-auto switch.
  - c. Fan-speed switch.
  - d. Automatic changeover.
  - e. Adjustable deadband.
  - f. Exposed set point.
  - g. Exposed indication.
  - h. Degree F / Degree C indication.
  - i. Unoccupied-period-override push button.
  - j. Data entry and access port to input temperature set points, occupied and unoccupied periods, and output room temperature, supply-air temperature, operating mode, and status.

B. DDC Controller:

1. Controller shall have volatile-memory backup.
2. Safety Control Operation:
  - a. Smoke Detectors: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if smoke is detected. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
  - b. Firestats: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if air greater than 130 deg F (54 deg C) enters unit. Provide additional contacts for alarm interface to fire alarm control panel.
  - c. Fire Alarm Control Panel Interface: Provide control interface
  - d. Low-Discharge Temperature: Stop fan and close outdoor-air damper if supply air temperature is less than 40 deg F (4 deg C).
  - e. Defrost Control for Condenser Coil: Pressure differential switch to initiate defrost sequence.
3. Scheduled Operation: Occupied and unoccupied periods on 365-day clock.
4. Unoccupied Period:
  - a. Heating Setback: 10 deg F (5.6 deg C).
  - b. Cooling Setback: System off.
  - c. Override Operation: Two hours.
5. Supply Fan Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Run fan continuously.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle fan to maintain setback temperature.
6. Refrigerant Circuit Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Cycle or stage compressors, and operate hot-gas bypass to match compressor output to cooling load to maintain room discharge temperature and humidity. Cycle condenser fans to maintain maximum hot-gas pressure. Operate low-ambient control kit to maintain minimum hot-gas pressure.

- b. Unoccupied Periods: Compressors off. Cycle compressors and condenser fans for heating to maintain setback temperature.
  - c. Switch reversing valve for heating or cooling mode on air-to-air heat pump.
- 7. Hot-Gas Reheat-Coil Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Humidistat opens hot-gas valve to provide hot-gas reheat, and cycle compressor.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Reheat not required.
- 8. Gas Furnace Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Modulate burner to maintain room temperature.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Cycle burner to maintain setback temperature.
- 9. Fixed Minimum Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Refer to schedule.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close the outdoor-air damper.
- 10. Economizer Outdoor-Air Damper Operation:
  - a. Occupied Periods: Open to fixed minimum intake, and maximum 100 percent of the fan capacity to comply with ASHRAE Cycle II. Controller shall permit air-side economizer operation when outdoor air is less than 60 deg F (15 deg C). Use outdoor-air temperature to adjust mixing dampers. Start relief-air fan with end switch on outdoor-air damper. During economizer cycle operation, lock out cooling.
  - b. Unoccupied Periods: Close outdoor-air damper and open return-air damper.

## 2.11 ACCESSORIES

- A. Duplex, 115-V, ground-fault-interrupter outlet with 15-A overcurrent protection. Include transformer if required. Outlet shall be energized even if the unit main disconnect is open.
- B. Filter differential pressure switch with sensor tubing on either side of filter. Set for final filter pressure loss.
- C. Coil guards of painted, galvanized-steel wire.
- D. Hail guards of galvanized steel, painted to match casing.

## 2.12 ROOF CURBS

- A. Roof curbs with vibration isolators and wind or seismic restraints are specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
- B. Materials: Galvanized steel with corrosion-protection coating, watertight gaskets, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards.

1. Curb Insulation and Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B.
  - a. Materials: ASTM C 1071, Type I or II.
2. Application: Factory applied with adhesive and mechanical fasteners to the internal surface of curb.
  - a. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.
  - b. Mechanical Fasteners: Galvanized steel, suitable for adhesive attachment, mechanical attachment, or welding attachment to duct without damaging liner when applied as recommended by manufacturer and without causing leakage in cabinet.
  - c. Liner materials applied in this location shall have air-stream surface coated with a temperature-resistant coating or faced with a plain or coated fibrous mat or fabric depending on service air velocity.
  - d. Liner Adhesive: Comply with ASTM C 916, Type I.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of RTUs.
- B. Examine roughing-in for RTUs to verify actual locations of piping and duct connections before equipment installation.
- C. Examine roofs for suitable conditions where RTUs will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

#### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Equipment Mounting:
  1. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation and seismic control devices specified in Section 230548 "Vibration and Seismic Controls for HVAC."
  2. Comply with requirements for vibration isolation devices specified in Section 230548.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC."
- B. Roof Curb: Install on roof structure or concrete base, level and secure, according to NRCA's "Low-Slope Membrane Roofing Construction Details Manual," Illustration "Raised Curb Detail for Rooftop Air Handling Units and Ducts." ARI Guideline B. Install RTUs on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories." Secure RTUs to upper curb rail, and secure curb base to roof framing or concrete base with anchor bolts. Provide curb adapter where required and coordinate installation
- C. Unit Support: Install unit level on structural curbs and/or grade. Coordinate wall penetrations and flashing with wall construction. Secure RTUs to structural support with anchor bolts.

### 3.3 CONNECTIONS

- A. Install condensate drain, minimum connection size, with trap and indirect connection to nearest roof drain or area drain.
- B. Install piping adjacent to RTUs to allow service and maintenance.
  - 1. Gas Piping: Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other HVAC Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  - 1. Install ducts to termination at top of roof curb.
  - 2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  - 3. Connect supply ducts to RTUs with flexible duct connectors specified in Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."
  - 4. Install return-air duct continuously through roof structure.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing. Report results in writing.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing RTUs and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

- B. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, coils, and fans.
  4. Inspect internal insulation.
  5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  8. Verify that filters are installed.
  9. Clean condenser coil and inspect for construction debris.
  10. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
  11. Connect and purge gas line.
  12. Remove packing from vibration isolators.
  13. Inspect operation of barometric relief dampers.
  14. Verify lubrication on fan and motor bearings.
  15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
    - a. Start refrigeration system.
    - b. Do not operate below recommended low-ambient temperature.
    - c. Complete startup sheets and attach copy with Contractor's startup report.
  18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing. Adjust burner for peak efficiency.
    - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    - b. Inspect operation of power vents.
    - c. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    - d. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    - e. Perform flue-gas analysis. Measure and record flue-gas carbon dioxide and oxygen concentration.
    - f. Measure supply-air temperature and volume when burner is at maximum firing rate and when burner is off. Calculate useful heat to supply air.
  21. Calibrate thermostats.
  22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  23. Inspect outdoor-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.
  24. Start refrigeration system and measure and record the following when ambient is a minimum of 15 deg F (8 deg C) above return-air temperature:
    - a. Coil leaving-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - b. Coil entering-air, dry- and wet-bulb temperatures.
    - c. Outdoor-air, dry-bulb temperature.
    - d. Outdoor-air-coil, discharge-air, dry-bulb temperature.

25. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
26. Measure and record the following minimum and maximum airflows. Plot fan volumes on fan curve.
  - a. Supply-air volume.
  - b. Return-air volume.
  - c. Relief-air volume.
  - d. Outdoor-air intake volume.
27. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through condenser coil or from condenser fans to outdoor-air intake.
28. Verify operation of remote panel including pilot-light operation and failure modes. Inspect the following:
  - a. High-temperature limit on gas-fired heat exchanger.
  - b. Low-temperature safety operation.
  - c. Filter high-pressure differential alarm.
  - d. Economizer to minimum outdoor-air changeover.
  - e. Relief-air fan operation.
  - f. Smoke and firestat alarms.
29. After startup and performance testing and prior to Substantial Completion, replace existing filters with new filters.

### 3.6 CLEANING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
- B. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing RTU and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filters.

### 3.7 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain RTUs.

END OF SECTION 237413

## SECTION 260519 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Copper building wire rated 600 V or less.
  - 2. Metal-clad cable, Type MC, rated 600 V or less.
  - 3. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

- B. Related Requirements:

- 1. Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control systems communications cables and Classes 1, 2, and 3 control cables.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RoHS: Restriction of Hazardous Substances.
- B. VFC: Variable-frequency controller.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Product Schedule: Indicate type, use, location, and termination locations.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For manufacturer's authorized service representative.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 COPPER BUILDING WIRE

- A. Description: Flexible, insulated and uninsulated, drawn copper current-carrying conductor with an overall insulation layer or jacket, or both, rated 600 V or less.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  1. Alpha Wire.
  2. Belden Inc.
  3. General Cable Technologies
  4. Okonite Company
  5. Southwire Company
- C. Standards:
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
  2. RoHS compliant.
  3. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."
- D. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.
- E. Conductor Insulation:
  1. Type THHN and Type THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
  2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

### 2.2 METAL-CLAD CABLE, TYPE MC

- A. Description: A factory assembly of one or more current-carrying insulated conductors in an overall metallic sheath.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  1. Alpha Wire.
  2. Belden Inc.
  3. General Cable Technologies
  4. Okonite Company
  5. Southwire Company
- C. Standards:



1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
2. Comply with UL 1569.
3. RoHS compliant.
4. Conductor and Cable Marking: Comply with wire and cable marking according to UL's "Wire and Cable Marking and Application Guide."

D. Circuits:

1. Single circuit and multicircuit with color-coded conductors.
2. Power-Limited Fire-Alarm Circuits: Comply with UL 1424.

E. Conductors: Copper, complying with ASTM B 3 for bare annealed copper and with ASTM B 8 for stranded conductors.

F. Ground Conductor: Insulated.

G. Conductor Insulation:

1. Type TFN/THHN/THWN-2: Comply with UL 83.
2. Type XHHW-2: Comply with UL 44.

H. Armor: Steel, interlocked.

I. Jacket: PVC applied over armor.

## 2.3 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors, splices, and lugs of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated; listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. 3M Electrical Products
2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
3. NSi Industries LLC
4. O-Z/Gedney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation
5. Thomas & Betts Corporation

C. Jacketed Cable Connectors: For steel and aluminum jacketed cables, zinc die-cast with set screws, designed to connect conductors specified in this Section.

D. Lugs: One piece, seamless, designed to terminate conductors specified in this Section.

1. Material: Copper.
2. Type: One hole with standard barrels.
3. Termination: Compression.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: Copper; solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- C. Power-Limited Fire Alarm and Control: Solid for No. 12 AWG and smaller.

### 3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- B. Exposed Feeders: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway.
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: Type THHN/THWN-2, single conductors in raceway or Type XHHW-2, single conductors in raceway.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Complete raceway installation between conductor and cable termination points according to Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" prior to pulling conductors and cables.
- C. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- D. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- E. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- F. Support cables according to Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.
- B. Make splices, terminations, and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches (150 mm) of slack.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each spare conductor at each end with identity number and location of other end of conductor,

and identify as spare conductor.

### 3.6 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors for compliance with requirements.
  - 3. Perform each of the following visual and electrical tests:
    - a. Inspect exposed sections of conductor and cable for physical damage and correct connection according to the single-line diagram.
    - b. Test bolted connections for high resistance using one of the following:
      - 1) A low-resistance ohmmeter.
      - 2) Calibrated torque wrench.
      - 3) Thermographic survey.
    - c. Inspect compression-applied connectors for correct cable match and indentation.
    - d. Inspect for correct identification.
    - e. Inspect cable jacket and condition.
    - f. Insulation-resistance test on each conductor for ground and adjacent conductors. Apply a potential of 500-V dc for 300-V rated cable and 1000-V dc for 600-V rated cable for a one-minute duration.
    - g. Continuity test on each conductor and cable.
    - h. Uniform resistance of parallel conductors.
  - 4. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but before Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner. Correct deficiencies determined during the scan.
    - a. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
    - b. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

5. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

D. Cables will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports to record the following:

1. Procedures used.
2. Results that comply with requirements.
3. Results that do not comply with requirements, and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION 260519

## SECTION 260523 - CONTROL-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CABLES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Category 5e balanced twisted pair cable.
  - 2. Control-circuit conductors.
  - 3. Identification products.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.
- C. Plenum: A space forming part of the air distribution system to which one or more air ducts are connected. An air duct is a passageway, other than a plenum, for transporting air to or from heating, ventilating, or air-conditioning equipment.
- D. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- B. Source quality-control reports.
- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

- 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Flame Travel and Smoke Density in Plenums: As determined by testing identical products according to NFPA 262, by a qualified testing agency. Identify products for installation in plenums with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Travel Distance: 60 inches (1520 mm) or less.
  2. Peak Optical Smoke Density: 0.5 or less.
  3. Average Optical Smoke Density: 0.15 or less.
- C. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Riser Cables in Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1666.
- D. Flame Travel and Smoke Density for Cables in Non-Riser Applications and Non-Plenum Building Spaces: As determined by testing identical products according to UL 1685.
- E. RoHS compliant.

## 2.2 CATEGORY 5e BALANCED TWISTED PAIR CABLE

- A. Description: Four-pair, balanced-twisted pair cable, certified to meet transmission characteristics of Category 5e cable at frequencies up to 100 MHz.
- B. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Belden Inc.
  2. General Cable
  3. Allied Wire & Cable
- C. Standard: Comply with ICEA S-90-661, NEMA WC 63.1, and TIA-568-C.2 for Category 5e cables.
- D. Conductors: 100-ohm, 24 AWG solid copper.
- E. Shielding/Screening: Unshielded twisted pairs (UTP).
- F. Cable Rating: Riser.
- G. Jacket: White thermoplastic.

## 2.3 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
1. Southwire
  2. General Cable
  3. Encore Wire Corp
- B. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- C. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.
- D. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN/THWN-2, complying with UL 83 in raceway.

## 2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.
- B. Factory test twisted pair cables according to TIA-568-C.2.
- C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Test cables on receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of twisted pair cable for open and short circuits.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF RACEWAYS AND BOXES

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for raceway selection and installation requirements for boxes, conduits, and wireways as supplemented or modified in this Section.
  1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.
  2. Outlet boxes for cables shall be no smaller than 4 inches (102 mm) square by 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) deep with extension ring sized to bring edge of ring to within 1/8 inch (3.1 mm) of the finished wall surface.
  3. Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.
- C. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows if possible.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. General Requirements for Cabling:
  1. Comply with TIA-568-C Series of standards.
  2. Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems."
  3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets and terminals.
  4. Cables may not be spliced and shall be continuous from terminal to terminal. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points.
  5. Cables serving a common system may be grouped in a common raceway. Install network cabling and control wiring and cable in separate raceway from power wiring. Do not group conductors from different systems or different voltages.
  6. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
  7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
  8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
  9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Do not use heat lamps for heating.
  10. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIMM, Ch. 5, "Copper Structured Cabling Systems." Monitor cable pull tensions.
  11. Support: Do not allow cables to lie on removable ceiling tiles.
  12. Secure: Fasten securely in place with hardware specifically designed and installed so as to not damage cables.
  13. Provide strain relief.
  14. Keep runs short. Allow extra length for connecting to terminals. Do not bend cables in a radius less than 10 times the cable OD. Use sleeves or grommets to protect cables from vibration at points where they pass around sharp corners and through penetrations.
  15. Ground wire shall be copper, and grounding methods shall comply with IEEE C2. Demonstrate ground resistance.
- C. Installation of Control-Circuit Conductors:

1. Install wiring in raceways.
2. Use insulated spade lugs for wire and cable connection to screw terminals.
3. Comply with requirements specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Suspend copper cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 30 inches (760 mm) apart.
2. Cable shall not be run through or on structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items. Do not run cables between structural members and corrugated panels.

E. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and TIA-569-D recommendations for separating unshielded copper voice and data communications cable from potential EMI sources including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (600 mm).
3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (305 mm).
4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:
  - a. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
  - b. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).
  - c. Electrical Equipment or Circuit Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).



5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or 5 HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

### 3.4 REMOVAL OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Remove abandoned conductors and cables. Abandoned conductors and cables are those installed that are not terminated at equipment and are not identified with a tag for future use.

### 3.5 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

- A. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits; No 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control, and signal circuits; No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm, and signal circuits; No 12 AWG.

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."
- B. Comply with TIA-569-D, Annex A, "Firestopping."
- C. Comply with BICSI TDDMM, "Firestopping" Chapter.

### 3.7 GROUNDING

- A. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.8 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify data and communications system components, wiring, and cabling according to TIA-606-B; label printers shall use label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks complying with UL 969.
- C. Identify each wire on each end and at each terminal with a number-coded identification tag. Each wire shall have a unique tag.

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  1. Visually inspect cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.
  2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and labeling of all components.
  3. Test cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.

- a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
- D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.
- E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 260523

## SECTION 260526 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes grounding and bonding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

- 1. Underground distribution grounding.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans showing dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

- 1. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

- C. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

- 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

- a. Plans showing as-built, dimensioned locations of grounding features specified in "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

- 1) Ground Rods

- 2) Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

- b. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NFPA 70B.

- 1) Tests shall determine if ground-resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if values do not.
- 2) Include recommended testing intervals.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Certified by NETA.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

### 2.2 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
2. ERICO International Corporation.
3. Blackburn
4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

### 2.3 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: Copper or tinned-copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
  1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
  2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
  3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
  4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
  5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
  6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

### 2.4 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.
- C. Bus-Bar Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy, with two wire terminals.
- D. Cable-to-Cable Connectors: Compression type, copper or copper alloy.
- E. Conduit Hubs: Mechanical type, terminal with threaded hub.
- F. Ground Rod Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal with hex head bolt.
- G. Lay-in Lug Connector: Mechanical type, copper rated for direct burial terminal with set screw.

H. Straps: Solid copper, copper lugs. Rated for 600 A.

I. U-Bolt Clamps: Mechanical type, copper or copper alloy, terminal listed for direct burial.

## 2.5 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

A. Ground Rods: Copper-clad steel 3/4 inch by 10 feet (19mm by 3m).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 10 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 8 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare copper conductor, No 2/0 minimum.

1. Bury at least 24 inches (600mm) below grade

C. Isolated Grounding Conductors: Green-colored insulation with continuous yellow stripe. On feeders with isolated ground, identify grounding conductor where visible to normal inspection, with alternating bands of green and yellow tape, with at least three bands of green and two bands of yellow.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.

2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors unless otherwise indicated.

3. Connections to Ground Rods: Bolted connectors.

### 3.2 GROUNDING AT THE SERVICE

A. Equipment grounding conductors and grounding electrode conductors shall be connected to the ground bus. Install a main bonding jumper between the neutral and ground buses.

### 3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.

2. Lighting circuits.

3. Receptacle circuits.

4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.

5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.

6. Flexible raceway runs.

7. Metal-clad cable runs.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Water Heater Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 24 inches (610 mm) below finished floor or final grade unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating if any.
  - 2. Use exothermic welds for all below grade connections.
- C. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
  - 1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
  - 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install bonding so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
  - 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations; if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- D. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- E. Connections: Make connections so possibility of galvanic action or electrolysis is minimized. Select connectors, connection hardware, conductors, and connection methods so metals in direct contact are galvanically compatible.
  - 1. Use electroplated or hot-tin-coated materials to ensure high conductivity and to make contact points closer in order of galvanic series.
  - 2. Make connections with clean, bare metal at points of contact.
  - 3. Make aluminum-to-steel connections with stainless-steel separators and mechanical clamps.
  - 4. Make aluminum-to-galvanized-steel connections with tin-plated copper jumpers and mechanical clamps.
  - 5. Coat and seal connections having dissimilar metals with inert material to prevent future penetration of moisture to contact surfaces.

### 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal.
    - a. Measure ground resistance no fewer than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without

chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.  
b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

4. Prepare dimensioned Drawings locating each ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

D. Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

F. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 kVA and Less: 10 ohms.
2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity of 500 to 1000 kVA: 5 ohms.
3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: 3 ohms.
4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: 1 ohm(s).

G. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 260526

## SECTION 260529 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems.
2. Conduit and cable support devices.
3. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
4. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
5. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:
  - a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
  - b. Clamps.
  - c. Hangers.
  - d. Sockets.
  - e. Eye nuts.
  - f. Fasteners.
  - g. Anchors.
  - h. Saddles.
  - i. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For fabrication and installation details for electrical hangers and support systems.

1. Hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Slotted support systems.
3. Equipment supports.



## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
  - a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.

B. Welding certificates.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.
- B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D 635.

### 2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  - c. ERICO International Corporation.
  - d. GS Metals Corp.
  - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
  - g. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
  3. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
  4. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
  5. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
  6. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  7. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
  8. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
- B. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel and malleable-iron hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- C. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for nonarmored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be made of malleable iron.
- D. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
- E. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:
1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
    - a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      - 1) Hilti, Inc
      - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC
      - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co, Inc.
    - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
  2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector
  - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - 3) Hilti Inc.
  - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
  - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units are similar to MSS Type 18 units and comply with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
  4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58 units are suitable for attached structural element.
  5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
  6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
  7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA 1.
2. NECA 101

- B. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.
- C. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
- D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceways: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as required by NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.
- E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

F. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings, and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

### 3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
  - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
  - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
  - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
  - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.
  - 5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
  - 6. To Steel: Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
  - 7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
  - 8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.
- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

### 3.3 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 260529

## SECTION 260533 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface raceways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior ductbanks, manholes, and underground utility construction.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets: Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:
1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
  2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

- B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.
- C. Source quality-control reports.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

#### A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - b. O-Z/Gedney
  - c. Southwire Company
  - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation
  - e. Wheatland Tube Company.
2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit/
  - a. Comply with NEMA RN 1
  - b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.
6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

#### B. Metal Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - b. O-Z/Gedney
  - c. Southwire Company
  - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation
  - e. Wheatland Tube Company.
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Fittings for EMT:
  - a. Material: Steel.
  - b. Type: Compression.

6. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
  7. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), wither overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.
- C. Joint Compound for GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

## 2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

### A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Products Division.
  - b. Raco Taymac Bell; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
  - c. FRE Composites
  - d. Cantex Inc.
  - e. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Fiberglass:
  - a. Comply with NEMA TC 14.
  - b. Comply with UL 2515 for aboveground raceways.
  - c. Comply with UL 2420 for belowground raceways.
4. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.
5. RNC: **Type EPC-40-PVC**, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
6. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.
7. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
8. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.
9. Coilable HDPE: Preassembled with conductors or cables, and complying with ASTM D 3485.
10. RTRC: Comply with UL 2515A and NEMA TC 14.

### B. Nonmetallic Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. ABB, Electrification Products Division.
  - b. Raco Taymac Bell; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.
  - c. FRE Composites
  - d. Cantex Inc.

- e. Champion Fiberglass, Inc.
- 2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
- 3. Fittings for ENT and RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.
  - a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.
- 4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

### 2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton
  - b. Square-D
  - c. Hoffman
- B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.
  - 1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish

### 2.4 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Hoffman
- B. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Description: Fiberglass polyester, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, without holes or knockouts. Cover shall be gasketed with oil-resistant gasket material and fastened with captive screws treated for corrosion resistance. Connections shall be flanged and have stainless-steel screws and oil-resistant gaskets.
- D. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.



- E. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.
- F. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

## 2.5 SURFACE RACEWAYS

- A. Listing and Labeling: Surface raceways and tele-power poles shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Surface Metal Raceways: Galvanized steel with snap-on covers complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by Architect.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Monosystems, Inc.
- b. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC
- c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.

- C. Surface Nonmetallic Raceways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL 94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- a. Panduit Corp
- b. Wiremold; Legrand North America, LLC
- c. Wiring Device-Kellems; Hubbell Incorporated, Commercial and Industrial.

## 2.6 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

- 1. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
- 2. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
- 3. Hoffman.
- 4. Hubbell Incorporated.
- 5. O-Z/Gedney.
- 6. RACO; Hubbell.
- 7. Robroy Industries.
- 8. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- 9. Wiremold / Legrand.

- B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

- C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.
- D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy Type FD, with gasketed cover.
- E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.
- F. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.
- G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.
- H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.
- I. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.
- J. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep).
- K. Gangable boxes are prohibited.
- L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 12 with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

- 1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- 2. Nonmetallic Enclosures: Plastic.
- 3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

- 1. NEMA 250, Type 1 galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
- 2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
- 3. Key latch to match panelboards.
- 4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
- 5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
- 6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.7 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

- 1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
- 2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Polymer-Concrete Handholes and Boxes with Polymer-Concrete Cover: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with polymer resin, and reinforced with steel, fiberglass, or a combination of the two.

- 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Quazite
- 2. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
- 3. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- 4. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
- 5. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.

6. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
7. Conduit Entrance Provisions: Conduit-terminating fittings shall mate with entering ducts for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
8. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: IMC or EMT.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, direct buried.
4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:

- a. Mechanical rooms.
- b. Apparatus Rooms.

4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Install nonferrous conduit for circuits operating above 60 Hz. Where aluminum raceways are installed for such circuits and pass through concrete, install in nonmetallic sleeve.

F. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

G. Install surface raceways only where indicated on Drawings.

H. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.
- B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum conduits. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.
- C. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.
- D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.
- E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.
- F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.
- G. Install no more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any conduit run except for control wiring conduits, for which fewer bends are allowed. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.
- H. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.
- I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.
- J. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.
- K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:
  - 1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
  - 2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
  - 3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
  - 4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
  - 5. Change from ENT to GRC before rising above floor.
- L. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:
  - 1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
  - 2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.
- M. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of raceway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.
- N. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-Coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.
- O. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.
- P. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.
- Q. Surface Raceways:
  - 1. Install surface raceway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.
  - 2. Secure surface raceway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight raceway section. Support surface raceway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

- R. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- S. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.
- T. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.
- U. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.
- V. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.
- W. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.
- X. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:
  - 1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
  - 2. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
  - 3. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
  - 4. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
  - 5. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
  - 6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.
- Y. Expansion-Joint Fittings:
  - 1. Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
  - 2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:
    - a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    - b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    - c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.

d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
  4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
  5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.
- Z. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 36 inches (915 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semirecessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.
1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
  2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.
- AA. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.
- BB. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.
- CC. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.
- DD. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.
- EE. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

#### A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and

complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
5. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor.

- a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
- b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

6. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.
- C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
- D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line, below grade.
- E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.
- F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

### 3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

### 3.6 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

### 3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.
  1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 260533

## SECTION 260543 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated steel conduit.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Flexible nonmetallic duct.
4. Duct accessories.
5. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.
6. Fiberglass handholes and boxes.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Direct Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials such as concrete.
- B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.
- C. Duct Bank:
1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
  2. Multiple duct banks.
- D. GRC: Galvanized rigid (steel) conduit.
- E. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Include duct, conduits, and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for manholes, handholes, boxes, and other utility structures.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.



5. Include warning planks.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:

- a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
- b. Include duct entry provisions, including locations and duct sizes.
- c. Include cover design.
- d. Include grounding details.
- e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: For duct and duct bank. Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

- 1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
- 2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.

C. Product Certificates: For concrete and steel used in precast concrete manholes and handholes, as required by ASTM C 858.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

B. Furnish cable-support stanchions, arms, insulators, and associated fasteners in quantities equal to 5 percent of quantity of each item installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

- 1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
- 2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without Owner's written permission.

B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is at grade level unless a lower water table is noted on Drawings.

C. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches (900 mm) below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 METAL CONDUIT AND FITTINGS

A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

B. Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated GRC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.

2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. Allied Tube & Conduit

2. O-Z/Geney; a brand of Emerson Industrial Automation

3. Southwire Company

4. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

5. Wheatland Tube Company.

D. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCT

A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.

B. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EB-20 PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 6 & 8, ASTM F 512, and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 9 by same manufacturer as duct.

C. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

1. ARNCO Corp.

2. Beck Manufacturing.

3. Cantex, Inc.

4. CertainTeed Corporation.

5. Condux International, Inc.

6. ElecSys, Inc.

7. Electri-Flex Company.

8. IPEX Inc.

9. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.

10. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.

D. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.3 FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC DUCTS

A. HDPE Duct: Type EPEC-40 HDPE, complying with NEMA TC 7 and UL 651A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. ARNCO Corp.

b. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.

c. National Pipe & Plastics

d. Opti-Com Manufacturing Network Inc. (OMNI)

e. Premier Conduit.

2. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.

## 2.4 DUCT ACCESSORIES

- A. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated, rigid, PVC interlocking spacers; sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.
  1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Allied Tube & Conduit
    - b. CANTEX Inc.
    - c. Carlon; a brand of Thomas & Betts
    - d. IPEX USA LLC
    - e. PenCell Plastics
    - f. Underground Devices, Inc.
- B. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Comply with requirements for underground-line warning tape specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- C. Concrete Warning Planks: Nominal 12 by 24 by 3 inches (300 by 600 by 75 mm) in size, manufactured from 6000-psi (41-MPa) concrete.
  1. Color: Red dye added to concrete during batching.
  2. Mark each plank with "ELECTRIC" in 2-inch- (50-mm-) high, 3/8-inch- (10-mm-) deep letters.

## 2.5 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

- A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: Green.
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

## 2.6 FIBERGLASS HANDHOLES AND BOXES

- A. Description: Molded of fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, with covers made of polymer concrete
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Quazite: Hubbell Power System, Inc.
- C. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.
- D. Color: Green.
- E. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.
- G. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
- H. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "ELECTRIC."
- I. Direct-Buried Wiring Entrance Provisions: Knockouts equipped with insulated bushings or end-bell fittings, selected to suit box material, sized for wiring indicated, and arranged for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- J. Duct Entrance Provisions: Duct-terminating fittings shall mate with entering duct for secure, fixed installation in enclosure wall.
- K. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long (300 mm wide by 600 mm long) and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

## 2.7 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test and inspect precast concrete utility structures according to ASTM C 1037.
- B. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
  - 1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
  - 2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
  - 3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.

- B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct and duct bank will drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.
- C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing." Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to Section 311000 "Site Clearing."

### 3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

- A. Duct for Electrical Feeders 600 V and Less: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Duct for Electrical Branch Circuits: Type EPC-40-PVC RNC, direct-buried unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Bored Underground Duct: Type EPEC-40-HDPE unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks, Driveways and Roadways: Type EPC-40 PVC RNC, encased in reinforced concrete.
- E. Stub-ups: Concrete-encased RNC.

### 3.3 UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURE APPLICATION

- A. Handholes and Boxes for 600 V and Less:
  - 1. Units in Roadways and Other Deliberate Traffic Paths: Precast concrete. AASHTO HB 17, H-20 structural load rating.
  - 2. Units in Driveway, Parking Lot, and Off-Roadway Locations, Subject to Occasional, Non-deliberate Loading by Heavy Vehicles: Polymer concrete, SCTE 77, Tier 15 structural load rating.
  - 3. Units in Sidewalk and Similar Applications with a Safety Factor for Nondeliberate Loading by Vehicles: Polymer concrete units, SCTE 77, Tier 8 structural load rating.
  - 4. Units Subject to Light-Duty Pedestrian Traffic Only: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester resin, structurally tested according to SCTE 77 with 3000-lbf (13 345-N) vertical loading.
  - 5. Cover design load shall not exceed the design load of the handhole or box.

### 3.4 EARTHWORK

- A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.
- B. Restoration: Replace area immediately after backfilling is completed or after construction vehicle traffic in immediate area is complete.
- C. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation, and re-establish original grades unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.
- D. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Section 329200 "Turf and Grasses" and Section 329300 "Plants."
- E. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground duct, duct bank, and underground structures according to "Cutting and Patching" Article in Section 017300 "Execution."

### 3.5 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

- A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct-bank configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.
- B. Install duct according to NEMA TCB 2.
- C. Slope: Pitch duct a minimum slope of 1:300 down toward manholes and handholes and away from

buildings and equipment. Slope duct from a high point between two manholes, to drain in both directions.

D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches (1200 mm), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.

1. Duct shall have maximum of two 90 degree bends or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.

E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent duct do not lie in same plane.

F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct is installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.

G. End Bell Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use end bells, spaced approximately 10 inches (250 mm) o.c. for 5-inch (125-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.

1. Begin change from regular spacing to end-bell spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the end bell, without reducing duct slope and without forming a trap in the line.
2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line direct-buried duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).
3. Grout end bells into structure walls from both sides to provide watertight entrances.

H. Terminator Entrances to Manholes and Concrete and Polymer Concrete Handholes: Use manufactured, cast-in-place duct terminators, with entrances into structure spaced approximately 6 inches (150 mm) o.c. for 4-inch (100-mm) duct, and vary proportionately for other duct sizes.

1. Begin change from regular spacing to terminator spacing 10 feet (3 m) from the terminator, without reducing duct line slope and without forming a trap in the line.
2. Expansion and Deflection Fittings: Install an expansion and deflection fitting in each duct in the area of disturbed earth adjacent to manhole or handhole. Install an expansion fitting near the center of all straight line duct with calculated expansion of more than 3/4 inch (19 mm).

I. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall, without reducing duct line slope away from the building and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for RNC-to-GRC transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

J. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct with pulled cables. Seal spare duct at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.

K. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf- (1000-N-) test nylon cord in empty ducts.

L. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Bank:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Width: Excavate trench 12 inches (300 mm) wider than duct on each side.
3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct on each side.
4. Depth: Install top of duct at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.
5. Set elevation of bottom of duct bank below frost line.
6. Support ducts on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.

7. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than five spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and to ducts to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
8. Install duct with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts for like services and 6 inches (150 mm) between power and communications duct.
9. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct direction unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.
10. Install manufactured GRC elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct.
  - a. Couple RNC duct to GRC with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
  - b. Stub-ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
    - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and minimum 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
  - c. Stub-ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
    - 1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and no less than 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of slab.
11. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches (100 mm) over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.
  - a. Place minimum 3 inches (75 mm) of sand as a bed for duct. Place sand to a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) above top level of duct.
  - b. Place minimum 6 inches (150 mm) of engineered fill above concrete encasement of duct.

M. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground line specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" no less than 12 inches (300 mm) above all concrete-encased duct and duct banks and approximately 12 inches (300 mm) below grade. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches (75 mm) of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional tapes 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.

### 3.6 INSTALLATION OF CONCRETE MANHOLES, HANDHOLES, AND BOXES

#### A. Precast Concrete Handhole and Manhole Installation:

1. Comply with ASTM C 891 unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install units level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

3. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1-inch (25-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

B. Elevations:

1. Manhole Roof: Install with rooftop at least 15 inches (375 mm) below finished grade.
2. Manhole Frame: In paved areas and trafficways, set frames flush with finished grade. Set other manhole frames 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
3. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.
4. Handhole Covers: In paved areas and trafficways, set surface flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.
5. Where indicated, cast handhole cover frame integrally with handhole structure.

C. Drainage: Install drains in bottom of manholes where indicated. Coordinate with drainage provisions indicated.

D. Manhole Access: Circular opening in manhole roof; sized to match cover size.

1. Manholes with Fixed Ladders: Offset access opening from manhole centerlines to align with ladder.
2. Install chimney, constructed of precast concrete collars and rings, to support cast-iron frame to connect cover with manhole roof opening. Provide moisture-tight masonry joints and waterproof grouting for frame to chimney.

E. Waterproofing: Apply waterproofing to exterior surfaces of handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Waterproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071353 "Elastomeric Sheet Waterproofing." After duct has been connected and grouted, and before backfilling, waterproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Waterproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

F. Dampproofing: Apply dampproofing to exterior surfaces of manholes and handholes after concrete has cured at least three days. Dampproofing materials and installation are specified in Section 071113 "Bituminous Dampproofing." After ducts are connected and grouted, and before backfilling, dampproof joints and connections, and touch up abrasions and scars. Dampproof exterior of manhole chimneys after mortar has cured at least three days.

G. Hardware: Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated.

H. Fixed Manhole Ladders: Arrange to provide for safe entry with maximum clearance from cables and other items in manholes.

I. Field-Installed Bolting Anchors in Manholes and Concrete Handholes: Do not drill deeper than 3-7/8 inches (97 mm) for manholes and 2 inches (50 mm) for handholes, for anchor bolts installed in the field. Use a minimum of two anchors for each cable stanchion.

### 3.7 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be



long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

- F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.
- G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring encircling, and in contact with, enclosure and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted earth.

- 1. Concrete: 3000 psi (20 kPa), 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
- 2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep (250 mm wide by 300 mm deep).

### 3.8 GROUNDING

- A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

### 3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

- 1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
- 2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
- 3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

- B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.10 CLEANING

- A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.
- B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.
  - 1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
  - 2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 260543

## SECTION 260544 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 SLEEVES

- A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

- C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:
  - 1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
  - 2. Minimum Metal Thickness:
    - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

## 2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. CALPICO, Inc.
    - c. Metraflex Company (The).
    - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
    - e. Proco Products, Inc.
  - 2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
  - 3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
  - 4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

## 2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

- A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. HOLDRITE

## 2.4 GROUT

- A. Description: Nonshrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.
- B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.
- C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.
- D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## 2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

- A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.
  - 1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.
- B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable penetrations.
- C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:
  - 1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:
    - a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
    - b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.
  - 2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  - 3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
  - 4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.

5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.
- D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:
1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
  2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.
- E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25 mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

### 3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.
- B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

### 3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

- A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.
- B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.
- C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.
- D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 260544

## SECTION 260553 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Color and legend requirements for raceways, conductors, and warning labels and signs.
2. Labels.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Tapes and stencils.
5. Tags.
6. Signs.
7. Cable ties.
8. Paint for identification.
9. Fasteners for labels and signs.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for electrical identification products.
- B. Identification Schedule: For each piece of electrical equipment and electrical system components to be an index of nomenclature for electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
- C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For arc-flash hazard study.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

## 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with ASME A13.1 and IEEE C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.144 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

- D. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.
- E. Comply with NFPA 70E requirements for arc-flash warning labels.
- F. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.
- G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

## 2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

- A. Raceways and Cables Carrying Circuits at 600 V or Less:
  - 1. Black letters on an orange field.
  - 2. Legend: Indicate voltage.
- B. Color-Coding for Phase- and Voltage-Level Identification, 600 V or Less: Use colors listed below for ungrounded feeder and branch-circuit conductors.
  - 1. Color shall be factory applied, if possible, or field applied.
  - 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
    - c. Phase C: Blue.
  - 3. Colors for 240-V Circuits:
    - a. Phase A: Black.
    - b. Phase B: Red.
  - 4. Color for Neutral: White.
  - 5. Color for Equipment Grounds: Green.
  - 6. Colors for Isolated Grounds: Green with white stripe.
- C. Warning Label Colors:
  - 1. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background.
- D. Warning labels and signs shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
  - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
  - 2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES (915 MM)."



## E. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

## 2.3 LABELS

- A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.
- B. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, vinyl flexible label with acrylic pressure-sensitive adhesive.
  1. Self-Lamination: Clear; UV-, weather- and chemical-resistant; self-laminating, protective shield over the legend. Labels sized such that the clear shield overlaps the entire printed legend.
  2. Marker for Labels: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
  3. Marker for Labels: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink recommended by printer manufacturer.
- C. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.
  1. Minimum Nominal Size:
    - a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
    - b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
    - c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

## 2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

- A. Snap-around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters and that stay in place by gripping action.
- B. Heat-Shrink Preprinted Tubes: Flame-retardant polyolefin tubes with machine-printed identification labels, sized to suit diameter and shrunk to fit firmly. Full shrink recovery occurs at a maximum of 200 deg F (93 deg C). Comply with UL 224.

## 2.5 TAPES AND STENCILS

- A. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- B. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; not less than 3 mils (0.08 mm) thick by 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) wide; compounded for outdoor use.
- C. Tape and Stencil: 4-inch- (100-mm-) wide black stripes on 10-inch (250-mm) centers placed diagonally over orange background and are 12 inches (300 mm) wide. Stop stripes at legends.

- D. Floor Marking Tape: 2-inch- (50-mm-) wide, 5-mil (0.125-mm) pressure-sensitive vinyl tape, with yellow and black stripes and clear vinyl overlay.
- E. Underground-Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Seton
    - b. Brady Corporation
    - c. Ideal Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Tape:
    - a. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground electrical and communications utility lines.
    - b. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
    - c. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.
  - 3. Color and Printing:
    - a. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, ANSI Z535.4, and ANSI Z535.5.
    - b. Inscriptions for Red-Colored Tapes: "ELECTRIC LINE, HIGH VOLTAGE".
    - c. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL FIBER CABLE".
  - 4. Tag: Type I:
    - a. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
    - b. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
    - c. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
    - d. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
    - e. Tensile according to ASTM D 882: 30 lbf (133.4 N) and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).
- F. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, black ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be 1 inch (25 mm).

## 2.6 TAGS

- A. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch (50 by 50 by 1.3 mm), with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- B. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags: Polyethylene tags, [0.015 inch (0.38 mm)] [0.023 inch (0.58 mm)] thick, color-coded for phase and voltage level, with factory [screened] [printed] permanent designations; punched for use with self-locking cable tie fastener.
- C. Write-on Tags:

1. Polyester Tags: 0.010 inch (0.25 mm) thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and cable tie for attachment.
2. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.
3. Marker for Tags: Machine-printed, permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by printer manufacturer.

## 2.7 SIGNS

### A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

### B. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:
  - a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
  - b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.
  - c. Engraved legend with black letters on white face.
  - d. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
  - e. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

## 2.8 CABLE TIES

### A. General-Purpose Cable Ties: Fungus inert, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

### B. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black.

### C. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 Deg F (23 Deg C) according to ASTM D 638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
5. Color: Black.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).
- B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.
- C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.
- E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of electrical systems and connected items.
- G. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying electrical identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

- H. System Identification for Raceways and Cables under 600 V: Identification shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place identification of two-color markings in contact, side by side.
  - 1. Secure tight to surface of conductor, cable, or raceway.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, and signal connections.
- J. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.
- K. Accessible Fittings for Raceways: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "PHOTOVOLTAIC POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
- L. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:
  - 1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
- M. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- N. Self-Adhesive Labels:
  - 1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- O. Snap-around Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- P. Heat-Shrink, Preprinted Tubes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- Q. Marker Tapes: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- R. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 1. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches (150 mm) where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding.
- S. Tape and Stencil: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for surface preparation and paint application.

- T. Floor Marking Tape: Apply stripes to finished surfaces following manufacturer's written instructions.
- U. Underground Line Warning Tape:
  - 1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
  - 2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.
  - 3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.
- V. Metal Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.
- W. Nonmetallic Preprinted Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.
- X. Write-on Tags:
  - 1. Place in a location with high visibility and accessibility.
  - 2. Secure using general-purpose cable ties.
- Y. Baked-Enamel Signs:
  - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on minimum 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use signs minimum 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- Z. Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Plastic Signs:
  - 1. Attach signs that are not self-adhesive type with mechanical fasteners appropriate to the location and substrate.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high sign; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.
- AA. Cable Ties: General purpose, for attaching tags, except as listed below:
  - 1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
  - 2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

- A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.
- B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations of high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- C. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits, More Than 30A and 120V to Ground: Identify with self-adhesive raceway labels.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- D. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify the covers of each junction and pull box of the following systems with self-adhesive labels containing the wiring system legend and system voltage. System legends shall be as follows:
  - 1. "PHOTOVOLTAIC POWER."
  - 2. "POWER."
- E. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification, 600 V or Less: For conductors in pull and junction boxes, use self-adhesive wraparound labels to identify the phase.
  - 1. Locate identification at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls and floors, at 50-foot (15-m) maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot (7.6-m) maximum intervals in congested areas.
- F. Control-Circuit Conductor Identification: For conductors and cables in pull and junction boxes, use self-adhesive labels with the conductor or cable designation, origin, and destination.
- G. Control-Circuit Conductor Termination Identification: For identification at terminations, provide self-adhesive labels with the conductor designation.
- H. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source.
- I. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Self-adhesive vinyl tape that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
  - 1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
- J. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical-fiber cable.
- K. Concealed Raceways and Duct Banks, More Than 600 V, within Buildings: Apply floor marking tape to the following finished surfaces:
  - 1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches (300 mm) of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.

2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
  3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.
- L. Workspace Indication: Apply floor marking tape or tape and stencil to finished surfaces. Show working clearances in the direction of access to live parts. Workspace shall comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1926.403 unless otherwise indicated. Do not install at flush-mounted panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- M. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels, including the color code for grounded and ungrounded conductors.
- N. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: [elf-adhesive labels.
1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
  2. For equipment with multiple power or control sources, apply to door or cover of equipment, including, but not limited to, the following:
    - a. Power-transfer switches.
    - b. Controls with external control power connections.
- O. Arc Flash Warning Labeling: Self-adhesive labels.
- P. Operating Instruction Signs: Self-adhesive labels.
- Q. Equipment Identification Labels:
1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine plastic sign.
  2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated acrylic or melamine sign.
  3. Equipment to Be Labeled:
    - a. Panelboards: Typewritten directory of circuits in the location provided by panelboard manufacturer. Panelboard identification shall be in the form of a self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    - b. Enclosures and electrical cabinets.
    - c. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
    - d. Transformers: Label that includes tag designation indicated on Drawings for the transformer, feeder, and panelboards or equipment supplied by the secondary.
    - e. Enclosed controllers.
    - f. Contactors.

END OF SECTION 260553



## SECTION 260923 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Time switches.
2. Photoelectric switches
3. Indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
4. Switchbox-mounted occupancy sensors.
5. Lighting contactors.

- B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for wall-box dimmers, non-networkable wall-switch occupancy sensors, and manual light switches.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

- B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show installation details for the following:
  - a. Occupancy sensors.
  - b. Vacancy sensors.
2. Interconnection diagrams showing field-installed wiring.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and elevations, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
3. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

- a. Luminaires.
  - b. Air outlets and inlets.
  - c. Speakers.
  - d. Sprinklers.
  - e. Access panels.
  - f. Control modules.
- B. Field quality-control reports.
- C. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranties.

## 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of lighting control device to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace lighting control devices that fail(s) in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Faulty operation of lighting control devices.
  - 2. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TIME SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
- 1. Tork, Intermatic
- B. Electromechanical-Dial Time Switches: Comply with UL 917.
- 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Contact Configuration: DPST.
  - 3. Contact Rating: 30-A inductive or resistive, 240-V ac.
  - 4. Circuitry: Allows connection of a photoelectric relay as a substitute for the on-off function of a program.
  - 5. Astronomic time dial.
  - 6. Eight-Day Program: Uniquely programmable for each weekday and holidays.
  - 7. Skip-a-day mode.
  - 8. Wound-spring reserve carryover mechanism to keep time during power failures, minimum of 16 hours.

## 2.2 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Tork, Intermatic (nipple-type or twist-lock)
- B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800W incandescent or 1800 VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A, and compatible with ballasts and LED lamps.
  - 1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 2. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc (16.14 to 108 lux), with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range.
  - 3. Time Delay: Fifteen-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
  - 4. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor.
  - 5. Mounting: Twist lock complies with NEMA C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.
  - 6. Failure Mode: Luminaire stays ON.

## 2.3 INDOOR OCCUPANCY AND VACANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: As listed on Drawings. If manufacturer not listed on drawings, acceptable manufacturers include Sensor Switch, Leviton, or Wattstopper. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors:
  - 1. Wall or Ceiling-mounted, solid-state indoor occupancy and vacancy sensors.
  - 2. Passive infrared, Ultrasonic or Dual technology as shown on drawings.
  - 3. Integrated or Separate power pack as required by device.
  - 4. Hardwired connection to switch.
  - 5. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  - 6. Operation:
    - a. Occupancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn them off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - b. Vacancy Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, lights are manually turned on and sensor turns lights off when the room is unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
    - c. Combination Sensor: Unless otherwise indicated, sensor shall be programmed to turn lights on when coverage area is occupied and turn them off when unoccupied, or to turn off lights that have been manually turned on; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  - 7. Sensor Output: Sensor is powered from the power pack.
  - 8. Power: Line voltage and Low voltage as required by device.

9. Power Pack: Dry contacts rated for 20-A LED load at 120-V ac and for 1 hp at 120-V ac. Sensor has 24-V dc, 150-mA, Class 2 power source, as defined by NFPA 70.
  10. Mounting:
    - a. Sensor: Suitable for mounting in any position on a standard outlet box.
    - b. Relay: Externally mounted through a 1/2-inch (13-mm) knockout in a standard electrical enclosure.
    - c. Time-Delay and Sensitivity Adjustments: Recessed and concealed behind hinged door.
  11. Indicator: Digital display, to show when motion is detected during testing and normal operation of sensor.
  12. Bypass Switch: Override the "on" function in case of sensor failure.
  13. Automatic Light-Level Sensor: Adjustable from 2 to 200 fc (21.5 to 2152 lux); turn lights off when selected lighting level is present.
- A. PIR Type: Wall or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area by their heat and movement.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm).
  2. Detection Coverage (Room, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere in a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Corridor, Ceiling Mounted): Detect occupancy within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet (110 square meters) when mounted 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.
- B. Ultrasonic Type: Wall or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area through pattern changes of reflected ultrasonic energy.
1. Detector Sensitivity: Detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
  2. Detection Coverage (Small Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 600 sq. ft. (56 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
  3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
  4. Detection Coverage (Large Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 2000 sq. ft. (186 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
  5. Detection Coverage (Corridor): Detect occupancy anywhere within 90 feet (27.4 m) when mounted on a 10-foot- (3-m-) high ceiling in a corridor not wider than 14 feet (4.3 m).
  6. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet (110 square meters) when mounted 84 inches (2100 mm) above finished floor.
- C. Dual-Technology Type: Wall or Ceiling mounted; detect occupants in coverage area using PIR and ultrasonic detection methods. The particular technology or combination of technologies that control on-off functions is selectable in the field by operating controls on unit.

1. Sensitivity Adjustment: Separate for each sensing technology.
2. Detector Sensitivity: Detect occurrences of 6-inch- (150-mm-) minimum movement of any portion of a human body that presents a target of not less than 36 sq. in. (232 sq. cm), and detect a person of average size and weight moving not less than 12 inches (305 mm) in either a horizontal or a vertical manner at an approximate speed of 12 inches/s (305 mm/s).
3. Detection Coverage (Standard Room): Detect occupancy anywhere within a circular area of 1000 sq. ft. (93 sq. m) when mounted on a 96-inch- (2440-mm-) high ceiling.
4. Detection Coverage (Room, Wall Mounted): Detect occupancy anywhere within a 180-degree pattern centered on the sensor over an area of 1000 square feet (110 square meters) when mounted 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.

## 2.4 SWITCHBOX-MOUNTED OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Manufacturers: As listed on Drawings. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. General Requirements for Sensors: Automatic-wall-switch occupancy sensor with manual on-off switch, suitable for mounting in a single gang switchbox, using hardwired connection.
  1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
  2. Occupancy Sensor Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, turn lights on when coverage area is occupied, and turn lights off when unoccupied; with a time delay for turning lights off, adjustable over a minimum range of 1 to 15 minutes.
  3. Operating Ambient Conditions: Dry interior conditions, 32 to 120 deg F (0 to 49 deg C).
  4. Switch Rating: Not less than 800-VA LED load at 120 V.
- C. Wall-Switch Sensor:
  1. Standard Range: 180-degree field of view, field adjustable from 180 to 40 degrees; with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft. (84 sq. m).
  2. Sensing Technology: Dual technology - PIR and ultrasonic.
  3. Switch Type: SP, field-selectable automatic "on," or manual "on," automatic "off."
  4. Capable of controlling load in three-way application.
  5. Voltage: Dual voltage - 120 and 277 V.
  6. Ambient-Light Override: Concealed, field-adjustable, light-level sensor from 10 to 150 fc (108 to 1600 lux). The switch prevents the lights from turning on when the light level is higher than the set point of the sensor.
  7. Concealed, field-adjustable, "off" time-delay selector at up to 30 minutes.
  8. Color: White.
  9. Faceplate: Color matched to switch.

## 2.5 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Eaton
  - 2. Square D
- B. Description: Electrically operated and mechanically held, combination-type lighting contactors with nonfused disconnect, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.
  - 1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less THD of normal load current).
  - 2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
  - 3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
  - 4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

## 2.6 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- B. Classes 2 and 3 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 18 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."
- C. Class 1 Control Cable: Multiconductor cable with stranded-copper conductors not smaller than No. 14 AWG. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine lighting control devices before installation. Reject lighting control devices that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.
- B. Examine walls and ceilings for suitable conditions where lighting control devices will be installed.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 SENSOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.

- B. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression systems, and partition assemblies.
- C. Install and aim sensors in locations to achieve not less than 90-percent coverage of areas indicated. Do not exceed coverage limits specified in manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads to eliminate structure-borne vibration unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

### 3.4 WIRING INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Wiring Method: Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size is 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- C. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
  - 2. Identify circuits or luminaires controlled by occupancy sensors at each sensor.
- B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Operational Test: After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper unit operation.
  2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Lighting control devices will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months from date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting lighting control devices to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.
1. For occupancy and motion sensors, verify operation at outer limits of detector range. Set time delay to suit Owner's operations.

### 3.8 DEMONSTRATION

- A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain lighting control devices.

END OF SECTION 260923



## SECTION 262416 - PANELBOARDS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Distribution panelboards.
  - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.
- C. SPD: Surge protective device.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.
  - 1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
  - 2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
  - 2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
  - 3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
  - 4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
  - 5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
  - 6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
  - 7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
  - 8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
  - 9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

10. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- A. Panelboard Schedules: Typed panelboard schedules for installation in the project's panelboards shall be provided at the end of construction after load balancing to be installed by the Contractor.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
  1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
  2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
  2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
  3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or 9002 certified.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407, NEMA PB 1.

## 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

### A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F (minus 5 deg C) to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
  - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

### B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

### C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Construction Manager's written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

## 1.11 WARRANTY

### A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: 18 months from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PANELBOARD COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- C. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Enclosures: Surface-mounted, dead-front cabinets.
  - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
    - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R
    - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
    - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
  - 2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
  - 3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
  - 5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
  - 6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
  - 7. Finishes:
    - a. Panels and Trim: Steel and galvanized steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
    - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
    - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
- F. Incoming Mains:
  - 1. Location: Convertible between top and bottom.
  - 2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.
- G. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
    - a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
    - b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.
  - 2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
  - 3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
  - 4. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

- H. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
  - 1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
  - 2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
  - 3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
  - 4. Main and Neutral Lugs: Compression type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  - 5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Compression type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
  - 6. Feed-Through Lugs: Compression type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
  - 7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
  - 8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Compression type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
- I. NRTL Label: Panelboards shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.
- J. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
  - 1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: Five percent.
- K. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.
  - 1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.

## 2.2 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: As listed on Drawings. If manufacturer not listed on drawings, acceptable manufacturers include Eaton, General Electric, or Square D. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.
  - A. Mains: As listed on Drawings.
  - B. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.
- C. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

## 2.3 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. Manufacturers: Compatible with Panelboard Manufacturer. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
  - 1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:
    - a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    - b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
  - 2. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
  - 3. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
  - 4. MCCB Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    - b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    - c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
    - d. Lugs: Compression style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    - e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.
    - f. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    - g. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    - h. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than 150 amperes shall have interchangeable rating plugs or electronic adjustable trip units.
    - i. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing with a single handle.
    - j. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in off position.
    - k. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in on position.
- C. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.
  - 1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
  - 2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:
    - a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
    - b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.

## 2.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.
- B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.
- C. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.
  - 1. Circuit directory shall identify specific purpose with detail sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

## 2.5 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.
- B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407, NEMA PB 1.1.
- C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.
- D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

## 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

- B. Comply with NECA 1.
- C. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407, NEMA PB 1.1.
- D. Equipment Mounting:
  - 1. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- F. Mount top of trim 90 inches (2286 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.
- H. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- I. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports 5/8 inch (16 mm) in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.
- J. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
  - 1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
  - 2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.
- K. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.
- L. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- M. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future.
- N. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties.
- O. Mount spare fuse cabinet in accessible location.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Create a typewritten directory to indicate installed circuit loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside panelboard door.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."



- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections.
  - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
  - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
  - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- D. Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers. Do not perform optional tests. Certify compliance with test parameters.
  - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
- E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.
  - 1. Measure loads during period of normal facility operations.

2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

### 3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 262416

## SECTION 262726 - WIRING DEVICES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Standard-grade receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 2. GFCI receptacles, 125 V, 20 A.
  - 3. Toggle switches, 120/277 V, 20 A.
  - 4. Wall plates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- B. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field quality-control reports.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing-label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL WIRING-DEVICE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Wiring Devices, Components, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. RoHS compliant.
- D. Comply with NEMA WD 1.
- E. Devices that are manufactured for use with modular plug-in connectors may be substituted under the following conditions:
  - 1. Connectors shall comply with UL 2459 and shall be made with stranding building wire.
  - 2. Devices shall comply with requirements in this Section.
- F. Device Color:
  - 1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: White unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
- G. Wall Plate Color: For plastic covers, match device color.
- H. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate from single source from single manufacturer.

### 2.2 STANDARD-GRADE RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A:

- A. Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
    - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
    - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
    - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
  - 2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
  - 3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
  - 4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.

B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and FS W-C-596.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

C. Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacle, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" Article.

D. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Standards: Comply with UL 498.
5. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

## 2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES, 125 V, 20 A

### A. Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Non-feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.

### B. Tamper-Resistant Duplex GFCI Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-20R.
4. Type: Non-feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498, UL 943 Class A, and FS W-C-596.
6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" Article.

### C. Tamper- and Weather-Resistant, GFCI Duplex Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Description: Integral GFCI with "Test" and "Reset" buttons and LED indicator light. Two pole, three wire, and self-grounding. Integral shutters that operate only when a plug is inserted in the receptacle. Square face.
3. Configuration: NEMA WD 6, Configuration 5-15R.
4. Type: Non-feed through.
5. Standards: Comply with UL 498 and UL 943 Class A.

6. Marking: Listed and labeled as complying with NFPA 70, "Tamper-Resistant Receptacles" and "Receptacles in Damp or Wet Locations" articles.

## 2.4 TOGGLE SWITCHES, 120/277 V, 20 A

### A. Single-Pole Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - a. Eaton (Arrow Hart)
  - b. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Devices – Kellems
  - c. Leviton Manufacturing Co., Inc.
  - d. Pass & Seymour/Legrand (Pass & Seymour)
2. Standards: Comply with UL 20 and FS W-S-896.

## 2.5 WALL PLATES

### A. Single Source: Obtain wall plates from same manufacturer of wiring devices.

### B. Single and combination types shall match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: Steel with white baked enamel, suitable for field painting.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Thermoplastic with spring-loaded lift cover, and listed and labeled for use in wet and damp locations.

### C. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with Type 3R, weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Comply with NECA 1, including mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise indicated.

#### B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Protect installed devices and their boxes. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes, and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

## C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until right before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall comply with NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:
  - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
  - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
  - c. Pigtail existing conductors is permitted, provided the outlet box is large enough.

## D. Device Installation:

1. Replace devices that have been in temporary use during construction and that were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, two-thirds to three-fourths of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device-mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

## E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles down, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the right.

## F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

## G. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

## H. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.



### 3.2 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. Install non-feed-through GFCI receptacles where protection of downstream receptacles is not required.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
- B. Identify each receptacle with panelboard identification and circuit number. Use hot, stamped, or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.
- C. Essential Electrical System: Mark receptacles supplied from the essential electrical system to allow easy identification using a self-adhesive label.

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
- B. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- C. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with NFPA 99.
  - 2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
  - 3. Test Instrument for Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated digital-display indicators of measurement.
- D. Tests for Receptacles:
  - 1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
  - 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is unacceptable.
  - 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
  - 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
  - 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
  - 6. Tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault-current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- E. Wiring device will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 262726

## SECTION 262813 - FUSES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600 V ac and less for use in the following:
  - a. Switchboards.
  - b. Disconnect Switches
2. Spare-fuse cabinets.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:
  1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.
    - a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    - b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature adjustment calculations are based.
  2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
  3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
  4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
  5. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

## 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse used on the Project. Submit in electronic format suitable for use in coordination software and in PDF format.
4. Coordination charts and tables and related data.

#### 1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

#### 1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F (5 deg C) or more than 100 deg F (38 deg C), apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Bussmann or as listed on Drawings. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

#### 2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

- A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, current-limiting, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.
  1. Type RK-1: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  2. Type RK-5: 250-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  3. Type CC: 600-V, zero- to 30-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  4. Type CD: 600-V, 31- to 60-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  5. Type J: 600-V, zero- to 600-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
  6. Type L: 600-V, 601- to 6000-A rating, 200 kAIC, time delay.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

- C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

## 2.3 SPARE-FUSE CABINET

- A. Characteristics: Wall-mounted steel unit with full-length, recessed piano-hinged door and key-coded cam lock and pull.
  - 1. Size: Adequate for storage of spare fuses specified with 15 percent spare capacity minimum.
  - 2. Finish: Gray, baked enamel.
  - 3. Identification: "SPARE FUSES" in 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high letters on exterior of door.
  - 4. Fuse Pullers: For each size of fuse, where applicable and available, from fuse manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.
- B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.
- C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.
- D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.
- E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

- A. Cartridge Fuses:
  - 1. Feeders: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 2. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 3. Large Motor Branch (601-4000 A): Class L, time delay.
  - 4. Other Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
  - 5. Provide open-fuse indicator fuses or fuse covers with open fuse indication.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.
- B. Install spare-fuse cabinet(s) in location shown on the Drawings or as indicated in the field by Owner.

### 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information inside of door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 262813

## SECTION 262816 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Enclosures.

## 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of enclosed switch, circuit breaker, accessory, and component indicated. Include nameplate ratings, dimensioned elevations, sections, weights, and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.
  1. Enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
  2. Current and voltage ratings.
  3. Short-circuit current ratings (interrupting and withstand, as appropriate).
  4. Include evidence of a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) listing for series rating of installed devices.
  5. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and auxiliary components.
  6. Include time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.
- B. Shop Drawings: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
  2. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

## 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
    - a. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
    - b. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Provide in PDF electronic format.

### 1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
  - 2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.
  - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

### 1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F (minus 30 deg C) and not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
  - 2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2010 m).

### 1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single manufacturer.
- B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for enclosed switches and circuit breakers, including clearances between enclosures, and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.

### 2.2 FUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Eaton, General Electric, Square-D or as listed on Drawings. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Type HD, Heavy Duty:
  - 1. Single throw.
  - 2. Three pole.
  - 3. 240 or 600-V ac.
  - 4. 200 A and smaller.
  - 5. UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, with clips or bolt pads to accommodate specified fuses.
  - 6. Lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- C. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Class R Fuse Kit: Provides rejection of other fuse types when Class R fuses are specified.
  - 5. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  - 6. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  - 7. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.



## 2.3 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers: Eaton, General Electric, Square-D or as listed on Drawings. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- A. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Three Pole, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.
- B. Accessories:
  - 1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
  - 2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 3. Isolated Ground Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
  - 4. Hookstick Handle: Allows use of a hookstick to operate the handle.
  - 5. Lugs: Compression type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.
  - 6. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.

## 2.4 ENCLOSURES

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: UL 489, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.
- B. Enclosure Finish: The enclosure shall be finished with gray baked enamel paint, electrodeposited on cleaned, phosphatized galvanized steel (NEMA 250 Types 3R, 12).
- C. Conduit Entry: NEMA 250 Types 4, 4X, and 12 enclosures shall contain no knockouts.
- D. Operating Mechanism: The circuit-breaker operating handle shall be externally operable with the operating mechanism being an integral part of the box, not the cover. The cover interlock mechanism shall have an externally operated override. The override shall not permanently disable the interlock mechanism, which shall return to the locked position once the override is released. The tool used to override the cover interlock mechanism shall not be required to enter the enclosure in order to override the interlock.
- E. Enclosures designated as NEMA 250 Type 4, 4X stainless steel, 12, or 12K shall have a dual cover interlock mechanism to prevent unintentional opening of the enclosure cover when the circuit breaker is ON and to prevent turning the circuit breaker ON when the enclosure cover is open.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  - 1. Commencement of work shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the areas and conditions as satisfactory.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:
  - 1. Notify Owner no fewer than seven days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
  - 2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
  - 3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
  - 4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

### 3.3 ENCLOSURE ENVIRONMENTAL RATING APPLICATIONS

- A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: Provide enclosures at installed locations with the following environmental ratings.
  - 1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
  - 2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
  - 3. Indoor, Wet or Damp Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
  - 4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting of eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.
- D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

- E. Comply with NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

### 3.5 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
  - 1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
  - 2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

### 3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- B. Perform tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative.
- C. Tests and Inspections for Switches:
  - 1. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:
    - a. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
    - b. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
    - c. Verify that the unit is clean.
    - d. Verify blade alignment, blade penetration, travel stops, and mechanical operation.
    - e. Verify that fuse sizes and types match the Specifications and Drawings.
    - f. Verify that each fuse has adequate mechanical support and contact integrity.
    - g. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the two following methods:
      - 1) Use a low-resistance ohmmeter.
        - a) Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from those of similar bolted connections by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
      - 2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method in accordance with manufacturer's published data or NETA ATS Table 100.12.
        - a) Bolt-torque levels shall be in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use NETA ATS Table 100.12.
    - h. Verify correct phase barrier installation.
    - i. Verify lubrication of moving current-carrying parts and moving and sliding surfaces.
  - 2. Electrical Tests:

- a. Perform resistance measurements through bolted connections with a low-resistance ohmmeter. Compare bolted connection resistance values to values of similar connections. Investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - b. Measure contact resistance across each switchblade fuseholder. Drop values shall not exceed the high level of the manufacturer's published data. If manufacturer's published data are not available, investigate values that deviate from adjacent poles or similar switches by more than 50 percent of the lowest value.
  - c. Perform insulation-resistance tests for one minute on each pole, phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with switch closed, and across each open pole. Apply voltage in accordance with manufacturer's published data. In the absence of manufacturer's published data, use Table 100.1 from the NETA ATS. Investigate values of insulation resistance less than those published in Table 100.1 or as recommended in manufacturer's published data.
  - d. Measure fuse resistance. Investigate fuse-resistance values that deviate from each other by more than 15 percent.
  - e. Perform ground fault test according to NETA ATS 7.14 "Ground Fault Protection Systems, Low-Voltage."
- D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
1. Test procedures used.
  2. Include identification of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker tested and describe test results.
  3. List deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

### 3.7 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 262816

## SECTION 265119 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
  - 1. Downlight.
  - 2. Recessed, linear.
  - 3. Surface mount, linear.
  - 4. Suspended, linear.
  - 5. Strip Light
- B. Related Requirements:
  - 1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. LED: Light-emitting diode.
- F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
  - 1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
  - 2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.

3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
  4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
  5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
    - a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
- B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

## 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which equipment or luminaires will be attached.
  5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Sprinklers.
    - e. Access panels.
    - f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
  7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Sample warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
- B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Ambient Temperature: 41 to 104 deg F (5 to 40 deg C).
  1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.

- B. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

## 2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.
  - 1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:
    - a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
    - b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
    - c. CCT and CRI.
- C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

## 2.3 DOWNLIGHT

- A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
  - 1. Minimum lumens: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule.
  - 2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
  - 3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
  - 4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  - 5. Internal driver.
  - 6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. Powder-coat painted finish.
  - 3. Universal mounting bracket.
  - 4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.



## F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Fixed lens.
2. Medium light distribution.
3. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

## 2.4 RECESSED, LINEAR

A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

## C. Lamp:

1. Minimum lumens: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule.
2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
5. Internal driver.
6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat painted finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

## 2.5 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR

A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

## C. Lamp:

1. Minimum lumens: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule.
2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
5. Internal driver.
6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat painted finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.6 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

- A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.
- C. Lamp:
  - 1. Minimum lumens: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule.
  - 2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
  - 3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
  - 4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
  - 5. Internal driver.
  - 6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Housings:
  - 1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
  - 2. Powder-coat painted finish.
  - 3. With integral mounting provisions.
- E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- F. Diffusers and Globes:
  - 1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  - 2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Standards:
  - 1. ENERGY STAR certified.
  - 2. RoHS compliant.
  - 3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.7 STRIP LIGHT

- A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.
- B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.

## C. Lamp:

1. Minimum lumens: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule.
2. CRI of minimum 80. CCT of 4000 K.
3. Rated lamp life of 50,000 hours to L70.
4. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
5. Internal driver.
6. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat painted finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

## E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

## 2.8 MATERIALS

## A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

## B. Steel:

1. ASTM A 36/A 36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A 568/A 568M for sheet steel.

## C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A 240/240 M.

- D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A 653/A 653M.
- E. Aluminum: ASTM B 209.

## 2.9 METAL FINISHES

- A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.10 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.
- C. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641 M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).
- D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

- A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Secured to outlet box.
  - 2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
  - 3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.
- F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Provide flush mounted box supported off of structural members in wall.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
  - 3. Install per manufacturer's recommendations.
- G. Ceiling-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Install per manufacturer's recommendations.
- H. Suspended Luminaires:
  - 1. Ceiling Mount:
    - a. Two 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
    - b. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports adjustable to 10 feet (3 m) in length.
    - c. Hook mount.
  - 2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
  - 3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
  - 4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
  - 5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

## I. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

## J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

## 3.4 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

## 3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

## A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

## B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

## C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

## 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265119

## SECTION 265213 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Emergency lighting units.
  - 2. Exit signs.
  - 3. Luminaire supports.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.
- C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.
- D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.
  - 1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
  - 2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
  - 3. Battery and charger for light units.
  - 4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
  - 5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.



- a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.
  1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
  2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Product Schedule:
  1. For emergency lighting units. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.
  2. For exit signs. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Luminaires.
  2. Suspended ceiling components.
  3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
  4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.
  5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
  6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:
    - a. Other luminaires.
    - b. Air outlets and inlets.
    - c. Speakers.
    - d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
    - e. Sprinklers.
    - f. Access panels.
  7. Moldings.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

## 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
  - 1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

## 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every 20 emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
  - 4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

## 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.
- B. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

## 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

## 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: Five years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining four years.
2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Two years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.
- D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.
- E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.
- F. Lamp Base: Comply with ANSI C81.61.
- G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.
- H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body and compatible with driver.
  1. Emergency Connection: Operate one lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
    - b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
    - c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
    - d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).

4. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.
    - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  5. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  6. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
  7. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  8. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.
- I. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate one LED lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire.
  2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
  3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
  4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
  5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
  6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the emergency power unit manufacturer, whichever is less.
  7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
  8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
  9. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
  10. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

## 2.2 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

- A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

## B. Emergency Luminaires:

1. Emergency Lighting Unit: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.

## 2.3 EXIT SIGNS

## A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

## B. Exit Lighted Signs:

1. Exit Lighting Unit: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.

## 2.4 MATERIALS

## A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

## B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

## C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
2. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

## D. Housings:

1. Molded impact-resistant thermoplastic.

## E. Conduit: Electrical metallic tubing, minimum 3/4 inch (21 mm) in diameter.

## 2.5 METAL FINISHES

## A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

## 2.6 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Support Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.
- B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.
- C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Supports:
  - 1. Sized and rated for luminaire and emergency power unit weight.
  - 2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
  - 3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power unit without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
  - 4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:
  - 1. Attached to a minimum 20-gage backing plate attached to wall structural members.
  - 2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.
- F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

- B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

### 3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

- A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge emergency power units and batteries minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.

### 3.6 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjustments: Within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, emergency power units, batteries, exit signs, or luminaires that are defective.

- a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 265213



## SECTION 265619 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

## PART 1 - GENERAL

## 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

## 1.2 SUMMARY

## A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

## B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

## 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.
- B. CRI: Color rendering index.
- C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."
- D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.
- E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

## 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

## A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

1. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
  - b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.
2. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
3. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
  1. Luminaires.
  2. Structural members to which luminaires will be attached.
  3. Building features.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:
  1. Luminaire.
- D. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- E. Source quality-control reports.
- F. Sample warranty.

#### 1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
  1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

#### 1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

#### 1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.
- B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.
- C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.
- D. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

#### 1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

#### 1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.
- B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

#### 1.11 WARRANTY

- A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
    - b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
    - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: 2 year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 and listed for wet location.
- C. L70 lamp life of 50,000 hours.
- D. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
- E. Nominal Operating Voltage: 120 V ac.
- F. In-line Fusing: Separate in-line fuse for each luminaire.
- G. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for outdoor use.

### 2.2 LUMINAIRE TYPES

- A. Manufacturers: As listed in the Interior Luminaire Fixture Schedule. Alternate manufacturers shall submit a request two weeks prior to bid and include a written list of deviations from this specification to be considered for approval.

### 2.3 MATERIALS

- A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- B. Sheet Metal Components: Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.
- D. Diffusers and Globes:
  1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
  2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

## 2.4 FINISHES

- A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.
- B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

## 2.5 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
- C. Install lamps in each luminaire.
- D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.
- E. Supports:
1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
  2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
  3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
  4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.
- F. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

- G. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.
- H. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.
- I. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming. Include adjustment of photoelectric device to prevent false operation of relay by artificial light sources, favoring a north orientation.
- J. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

### 3.2 CORROSION PREVENTION

- A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.
- B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

### 3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

### 3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.
- B. Perform the following tests and inspections:
  - 1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
  - 2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.
- C. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- D. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

### 3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 265619